

PRINTRONIX®

User's Manual



T5000 Thermal Printer

Software License Agreement

CAREFULLY READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CONDITIONS BEFORE USING THIS PRINTER. USING THIS PRINTER INDICATES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRINTER AND ALL ACCOMPANYING HARDWARE AND WRITTEN MATERIALS TO THE PLACE YOU OBTAINED THEM, AND YOUR MONEY WILL BE REFUNDED.

Definitions.

"Software" shall mean the digitally encoded, machine-readable data and program. The term "Software Product" includes the Software resident in the printer and its documentation. The Software Product is licensed (not sold) to you, and Printronix, Inc. either owns or licenses from other vendors who own, all copyright, trade secret, patent and other proprietary rights in the Software Product.

License.

1. Authorized Use. You agree to accept a non-exclusive license to use the Software resident in the printer solely for your own customary business or personal purposes.
2. Restrictions.
 - a. To protect the proprietary rights of Printronix, Inc., you agree to maintain the Software Product and other proprietary information concerning the typefaces in strict confidence.
 - b. You agree not to duplicate or copy the Software Product.
 - c. You shall not sublicense, sell, lease, or otherwise transfer all or any portion of the Software Product separate from the printer, without the prior written consent of Printronix, Inc.
 - d. You may not modify or prepare derivative works of the Software Product.
 - e. You may not transmit the Software Product over a network, by telephone, or electronically using any means; or reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the Software.
 - f. You agree to keep confidential and use your best efforts to prevent and protect the contents of the Software Product from unauthorized disclosure or use.
3. Transfer. You may transfer the Software Product with the printer, but only if the recipient agrees to accept the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Your license is automatically terminated if you transfer the Software Product and printer.



Limited Software Product Warranty

Printronic, Inc. warrants that for ninety (90) days after delivery, the Software will perform in accordance with specifications published by Printronix, Inc. Printronix, Inc. does not warrant that the Software is free from all bugs, errors and omissions.

Remedy

Your exclusive remedy and the sole liability of Printronix, Inc. in connection with the Software is replacement of defective software with a copy of the same version and revision level.

Disclaimer of Warranties and Limitation of Remedies

1. THE PARTIES AGREE THAT ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND MERCHANTABILITY ARE EXCLUDED. Printronix, Inc. does not warrant that the functions contained in the Software will meet your requirements or that the operation of the Software will be uninterrupted or error free. Printronix, Inc. reserves the right to make changes and/or improvements in the Software without notice at any time.
2. IN NO EVENT WILL PRINTRONIX, INC. BE LIABLE FOR LOST PROFITS, LOST DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTIONS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS PRODUCT, EVEN IF PRINTRONIX, INC. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE ABUSE OR MANIPULATION OF THE SOFTWARE. SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.
3. Printronix, Inc. will not be liable for any loss or damage caused by delay in furnishing a Software Product or any other performance under this Agreement.
4. Our entire liability and your exclusive remedies for our liability of any kind (including liability for negligence except liability for personal injury caused solely by our negligence) for the Software Product covered by this Agreement and all other performance or nonperformance by us under or related to this Agreement are limited to the remedies specified by this Agreement.
5. California law governs this Agreement.

Termination of License Agreement

This License shall continue until terminated. This license may be terminated by agreement between you and Printronix, Inc. or by Printronix, Inc. If you fail to comply with the terms of this License and such failure is not corrected within thirty (30) days after notice. When this License is terminated, you shall return to the place you obtained them, the printer and all copies of the Software and documentation.

U.S. Government Restricted Rights

Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at FAR 242.227-7013, subdivision (b) (3) (ii) or subparagraph (c) (1) (ii), as appropriate. Further use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions applicable to restricted rights software as set forth in FAR 52.227-19 (c) (2).

Acknowledgement of Terms and Conditions

YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS AGREEMENT, UNDERSTAND IT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ITS TERMS AND CONDITIONS. NEITHER PARTY SHALL BE BOUND BY ANY STATEMENT OR REPRESENTATION NOT CONTAINED IN THIS AGREEMENT. NO CHANGE IN THIS AGREEMENT IS EFFECTIVE UNLESS WRITTEN AND SIGNED BY PROPERLY AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVES OF EACH PARTY. BY USING THIS PRINTER, YOU AGREE TO ACCEPT THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Communication Notices

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statement: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. Printronix is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canadian Department of Communications Compliance Statement: This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes du ministère des Communications du Canada: Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à norme NMB-003 du Canada.

European Community (EC) Conformity Statement:

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. Printronix cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a non-recommended modification of the product, including the fitting of non-Printronix option cards.

German Conformity Statement:

Zulassungsbescheinigung Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) vom 30. August 1995

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt in Übereinstimmung mit dem deutschen das EG-Konformitätszeichen - CE - zu führen.

Der Aussteller der Konformitätserklärung ist die Printronix.....(1)

Informationen in Hinsicht EMVG Paragraph 3 Abs. (2) 2:

Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 55024 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

EN 55022 Klasse A Geräte bedürfen folgender Hinweise:

Nach dem EMVG: "Geräte dürfen an Orten, für die sie nicht ausreichend entstört sind, nur mit besonderer Genehmigung des Bundesministers für Post und Telekommunikation oder des Bundesamtes für Post und Telekommunikation betrieben werden. Die Genehmigung wird erteilt, wenn keine elektromagnetischen Störungen zu erwarten sind." (Auszug aus dem EMVG, Paragraph 3, Abs. 4) Dieses Genehmigungsverfahren ist nach Paragraph 9 EMVG in Verbindung mit der entsprechenden Kostenverordnung (Amtsblatt 14/93) kostenpflichtig.

EN 55022: Dieses ist eine Kategorie A Vorrichtung. Betrieb in den Wohnbereichen kann elektrische Störung verursachen. Es ist die Verantwortlichkeit des Benutzers, passende Gegenmaßnahmen zu ergreifen.

EN 55024: Begrenzung Werte für Gebrauch in bevölkerten Bereiche, kommerziellen und Industriegebieten sind in Übereinstimmung mit den spezifizierten Anforderungen Hinsichtlich Störfreiheit.

Anmerkung: Um die Einhaltung des EMVG sicherzustellen sind die Geräte, wie in den Handbüchern angegeben, zu installieren und zu betreiben.

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for Class A Information Technology Equipment according to European Standard EN 55022. The limits for Class A equipment were derived for commercial and industrial environments to provide reasonable protection against interference with licensed communication equipment.

Warning

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

警告使用者：
這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

注意

この装置は、第一種情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

VCCI-A

此为A级产品。在生活环境中，该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下，可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。



Trademark Acknowledgements

Printronix, IGP, IGP/Auto Label Mapping, LinePrinter Plus, PGL, and PrintNet are registered trademarks of Printronix, Inc.

ThermaLine is a trademark of Printronix.

HP is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

PCL is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Code V is a trademark of QMS, Inc.

QMS is a registered trademark of Quality Micro Systems, Inc.

IBM is registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.

MS-DOS and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Centronics is a registered trademark of Genicom Corporation.

IEEE is a registered service mark of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.

ANSI is a registered trademark of American National Standards Institute, Inc.

EIA is a registered service mark of Electronic Industries Association.

Copyright 2002, Printronix, Inc.

IMPORTANT WARRANTY INFORMATION

PRINTER WARRANTY

Printronix[®] warrants to purchaser that under normal use and service, this printer (excluding the thermal printhead) purchased hereunder shall be free from defects in material and workmanship for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of shipment from Printronix.

Consumable items such as media and ribbons are not covered under this warranty. This warranty does not cover equipment or parts that have been misused, altered, or used for purposes other than those for which they were manufactured. This warranty also does not cover loss, shipping damage, damage resulting from accident or damages resulting from unauthorized service.

THERMAL PRINTHEAD

Printronix warrants the printhead for a period of one hundred eighty (180) days, or 1,000,000 linear inches for Direct Thermal use, or 2,000,000 linear inches for Thermal Transfer use, whichever comes first. The warranty does not cover printheads that have been misused, damaged due to improper cleaning, or damaged due to use of improper ribbons or media.

SUPPLIES

For the number of the nearest Printronix full-service distributor that carries Printronix genuine supplies, please call 1-800-733-1900 or fax (714)-368-2354. Supplies design, specification, and selection are critical and integral to the development of any computer imaging system. Printronix's extensive manufacturing and research capabilities, along with years of experience in the design of printers and their applications, assures that you will receive the exact materials that you require to maximize the performance of your Printronix printer. Further information can be obtained by calling the Printronix Customer Solutions Center at (714) 368-2686 or from the Printronix Web page at <http://www.primtronix.com>.

ON-SITE MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Printronix offers on-site support services in the United States. Please contact the Printronix Maintenance Contracts Group at (714) 368-2798 for detailed service agreement information.

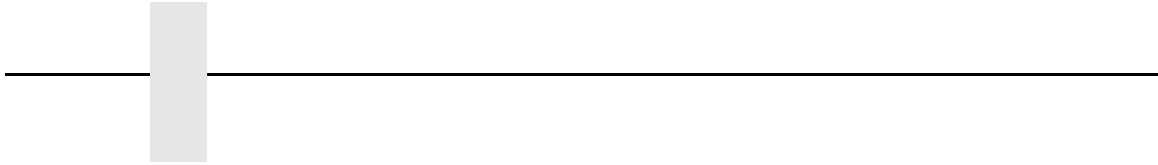




Table of Contents

1	Introduction.....	17
	Printronix Customer Solutions Center	17
	Training Available On Printronix Products	17
	Warnings And Special Information	18
	Manual Conventions	18
	The T5000 Series Label Printer	19
	Standard Features	19
	Optional Features.....	20
	Thermal Printer Technology	22
	The Printing Process.....	22
	Dynamic Print Control	22
	Thermal Consumables.....	23
	Media Selection.....	23
	Ribbons	23
	Setting Up The Printer	24
	Unpacking The Printer	24
	Installation	26
2	Operation.....	29
	Controls And Indicators	29
	Power Switch	29
	Control Panel	29
	Powering On The Printer.....	33
	Operating Modes.....	33
	Media Handling Modes	33
	Loading Media And Ribbon	34
	Loading Roll Media	35
	Loading Fanfold Media.....	41
	Loading Ribbon	45
	Removing The Media Guide.....	48
	Using The Optional Internal Rewinder.....	49
	Batch Rewind Mode	49
	Label Peel-Off	55

Printing Adjustments.....	59
Printhead Pressure Adjustment	59
Printhead Pressure Block Adjustments.....	60
Positioning The Media Sensor	61
Sensing Different Media Types	62
Running Auto Calibrate	63
Running Media Profile.....	64
Running Manual Calibrate.....	66
Cleaning.....	67
General Cleaning	67
Printhead Cleaning.....	67
3 Configuring The Printer.....	69
Overview.....	69
Setting Printer Configuration Parameters	69
Moving Within The Configuration Menu	70
Selecting A Menu Option	71
Changing Printer Settings	71
Saving A Configuration	72
Specifying A Power-Up Configuration.....	73
Modifying A Saved Configuration.....	74
Printing A Configuration	75
Menu Overview.....	78
Main Menu	79
VALIDATOR	84
VALIDATOR Submenus.....	86
CONFIG. CONTROL	91
CONFIG. CONTROL Submenus	92
MEDIA CONTROL.....	94
MEDIA CONTROL Submenus	96
CALIBRATE CTRL	108
CALIBRATE CTRL Submenus.....	109
PRINTER CONTROL	114
PRINTER CONTROL Submenus.....	116
EMULATIONS	124
Overview	124
COAX SETUP.....	128
TWINAX SETUP.....	131
SPC COAX SETUP	134
SPC TWINAX SETUP	135
IPDS SETUP	136
TN5250 SETUP	138

IGP/PGL SETUP	140
IGP/VGL SETUP	142
P-SERIES SETUP	145
P-SER XQ SETUP.....	148
SER MATRIX SETUP	150
PROPRINTER SETUP	152
EPSON FX SETUP.....	154
Emulation Submenus.....	156
DIAGNOSTICS	200
DIAGNOSTICS Submenus	201
PARALLEL PORT.....	204
PARALLEL PORT Submenus	205
SERIAL PORT	208
SERIAL PORT Submenus	209
C/T PORT	216
C/T PORT Submenus	216
ETHERNET PARAMS	218
ETHERNET PARAMS Submenus.....	220
Downloading Emulation And Operating System Software	223
Flash Memory	223
Downloading Software Through The Serial Or Parallel Port.....	224
Downloading Software Through The Network Interface Card (NIC).....	227
Downloading Optional Font Files To Flash Memory	229
Downloading True Type Fonts	232
4 Interfaces	233
Overview	233
Auto Switching	233
Centronics Parallel Interface.....	234
Centronics Parallel Interface Signals	235
IEEE 1284 Parallel Interface.....	235
Compatibility Mode.....	235
Nibble Mode	236
Byte Mode	236
Signals	236
Terminating Resistor Configurations	238
RS-232 And RS-422 Serial Interfaces	239
RS-232	239
RS-422	240

5	Diagnostics And Troubleshooting	241
	Printer Self-Test.....	241
	Printing Test Labels	241
	Troubleshooting Common Situations.....	241
	Improving Processing Time.....	242
	Data Exchange.....	242
	Controlling Print Quality	244
	Determining Printhead Wear	245
	Replacing The Printhead	245
	Prepare The Printer.....	245
	Replace The Printhead	246
	Restore The Printer To Operation.....	248
	Solving Other Printer Problems	249
	Printer Alarms	256
	Fault Messages	256
A	Specifications	269
	Print Method.....	269
	Media	270
	Ribbon.....	272
	Indicators And Switches.....	272
	Memory	272
	Host Interfaces	273
	Power	273
	Environmental	274
	Physical.....	274
	Acoustic Specifications	274
B	Printer Options	275
	Hardware Options.....	275
	Interface Options.....	276
	Supplies And Accessories	277
	Genuine Printronix Thermal Transfer Ribbons.....	277
	Genuine Printronix Media.....	278
	Accessories	280
C	ASCII Control Codes	281

D	Standard And Heavy-Duty Media Cutter	
	Installation	283
	Prepare The Printer	283
	Installing The Standard Cutter	284
	Restore The Printer To Operation	284
	Installing The Heavy-Duty Cutter	286
	Restore The Printer To Operation	286
	Removing The Media Cutter	287
E	Media Cutter Tray Installation	289
	Assembling The Media Cutter Tray	289
	Installing The Media Cutter Tray	290
F	Glossary	293



Table of Contents

1

Introduction

Printronix Customer Solutions Center

The Printronix Customer Solutions Center offers technical support with:

- Installation
- Configuration and setup
- Operation and supplies loading
- Specification of the proper media and ribbon
- Post sales service support questions.

Call the Printronix Customer Solutions Center at (714) 368-2686 or visit the Printronix Web page at **www.primtronix.com**.

Training Available On Printronix Products

Printronix offers Product Maintenance Training Classes designed to enhance the knowledge of your service personnel. Led by Printronix' staff of highly trained, experienced instructors, these structured classes include:

- Hands-on work with the product
- Theory of operation
- Diagnosis of equipment failures
- Preventive and corrective maintenance requirements and procedures.

Customized classes designed to meet your specific needs are available upon request.

Call Customer Training at (714) 368-2332 or visit the Printronix Web page at **www.primtronix.com**.

Warnings And Special Information

For your safety and to protect valuable equipment, it is very important that you read and comply with all information highlighted under special headings:

WARNING Conditions that could harm you and damage the equipment.

WARNING Achten Sie auf folgendes, um keine Personen in Gefahr zu bringen bzw. das Gerät zu beschädigen.

WARNING Condiciones que pueden causar daños a personas y equipos.

WARNING Conditions à respecter pour éviter tout danger corporel et dommage matériel.

WARNING Condizioni che possono arrecare danni alle persone e alle apparecchiature.

CAUTION Conditions that could damage the printer or related equipment.

IMPORTANT Information vital to proper operation of the printer.

NOTE: Information and helpful tips about printer operation.

Manual Conventions

- Operator panel keys are printed in uppercase letters.
Example: Press the PAUSE key and then press ENTER.
- Operator panel keys are often shown by their symbol or icon (located on the control panel directly below the key).
Example: Press the ↵ key for ENTER.
- Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) messages are printed in uppercase letters inside quotation marks (" ").
Example: When "OFFLINE" appears on the LCD, you may release the PAUSE key.
- LCD fault messages display the specific fault in uppercase letters on the top line. A corrective action in upper and lowercase letters displays on the bottom line.
Example: PAPER OUT
Load Paper
- Key combinations are indicated by the + (plus) symbol.
Example: Press ↑ + ↓ means *Press the Up ↑ key and the Down ↓ key at the same time.*

The T5000 Series Label Printer

NOTE: As used in this manual, the terms “T5000” and “printer” refer to all models within the T5000 series.

The T5000 series consists of a family of high quality, direct thermal and thermal transfer printers specifically designed for printing labels and tags from any MS-DOS®, Windows®, ASCII, or EBCDIC (with the Coax/Twinax option) based compatible computer.

The T5000 series is comprised of the products detailed in Table 1.

Table 1. The T5000 Series

Model	Max Print Speed (ips)	Printing Density (dpi)	Max Print Width (inches)
T5204	10	203	4.1
T5204-DT*	10	203	4.1
T5304	8	300	4.1
T5304-DT*	8	300	4.1
T5206	10	203	6.6
T5306	8	300	6.6
T5208	8	203	8.5
T5308	6	300	8.5

* Direct Thermal only 4 inch models (no ribbon transfer support)

Standard Features

- Your thermal printer has the standard LinePrinter Plus® (LP+) emulation which provides direct compatibility with Printronix P-series printers. In addition, the printer has co-resident IGP®/PGL® and IGP/VGL emulations which provide printer system commands for text, barcodes, graphics, lines, and boxes.
- Direct thermal printing and thermal transfer (thermal transfer not supported on 4 inch DT models).
- Standard interfaces:
 - Serial: RS-232 and RS-422
 - Parallel: Centronics®-compatible parallel, IEEE® 1284 compliant parallel

NOTE: The interface cable needed to connect the printer to the host device is supplied by the user.

- Supports over 20 types of bar codes.

- Download forms, fonts, and graphics to printer memory.
- High resolution printhead for sharp graphics and text.
- Label Taken Sensor for detecting removal of labels in Tear-Off mode (and in Peel-Off mode when optional rewinder is installed).
- Tear-Off mode for positioning the label at the tear-off position and detecting its removal before printing the next label.
- Tear-Off Strip mode for printing a specified number of labels and positioning the last label at the tear-off position.
- 8MB DRAM memory.
- 4MB Flash memory.
- Auto Label Mapping[®] for compatibility with programs written for Printronix Line Matrix printers.

Optional Features

Ask your authorized representative about the following options which can enhance the versatility of your printer:

- **Fonts:** A selection of fonts is available to extend the capabilities of the standard resident fonts.
- **Internal Label Rewinder:** In label peel-off mode, peels off labels one at a time before printing the next label and rewinds the liner into a discardable roll. In batch rewind mode, rewinds printed labels into a removable roll.
- **Memory Expansion (for non-IPDS printers only):**
 - 16MB DRAM SIMM - Provides additional memory to accommodate long label formats.
 - 10MB Flash SIMM - Provides additional memory to accommodate IPDS.
- **Media Cutter:** The cutter is used to automatically cut printed media when the media exits the printer.
- **Media Cutter Tray:** This option is used with the Media Cutter option to catch the cut media in a bin.
- **Coax/Twinax Host Interface:** This provides connection to an IBM host computer system using a coax or twinax interface.
- **Network Interface Card (NIC):** This option allows you to attach the printer to a LAN (Local Area Network) rather than attaching it directly to a host computer.

The printer may be ordered with this option installed and the required hardware to support it, or it can be field installed by an authorized service representative at a later date. The parallel port is no longer accessible when the NIC option is installed.

NOTE: In this manual, the terms “Network Interface Card” (or “NIC”) and “Ethernet” are used interchangeably.

- **IPDS:** IPDS is available for Coax/Twinax or a NIC or a combination of both. The printer may be ordered with this option installed and the required hardware to support it, or it can be field installed by an authorized service representative at a later date. The printer must have a Coax/Twinax interface or NIC, 300 DPI Printhead, 16 MB DRAM, and 10 MB Flash, installed to support this field-installed option.
- **TN5250:** The TN5250 feature enables your printer to communicate with an IBM host through a NIC using the 5250 datastream. This feature allows you to use an application generated for the Twinax emulation to be printed through the NIC.
- **Online Barcode Validator:** This option provides online validation of printed barcodes. The most important consideration when printing a bar code is to ensure the bar code will be scanned properly. The best way to ensure this is to incorporate a bar code quality procedure in the printing process. If properly implemented, this procedure will increase overall bar code quality, reduce waste from misprinted bar codes, and achieve high, first-time read rates. Such a procedure is an increasingly important factor in newer, more efficient systems, where manually entered data is not acceptable as a back up function. Validation also minimizes the cost of returned products due to poor reading or unaccountable bar codes.

Printronix offers an integrated online validation system as an option for the T5000 printer. Other validation tools, such as hand-held models, may be obtained from the RJS company.

RJS designs and manufactures the world's most complete line of bar code validation products, including their portable Inspector and Laser Inspector models, On-Line Inspector and AutoScan II series. For more information, visit the RJS Website at **www.rjs1.com**.

For more information about printer options, see Appendix B.

Thermal Printer Technology

Quiet and fast, with excellent print quality, your multifunction thermal printer uses an inline thermal printhead. The thermal printer operates differently from a line matrix or laser printer, because the thermal printer uses a printhead with heating elements and special paper or ribbon.

The Printing Process

The thermal printhead allows two modes of operation:

- **Direct Thermal**

During *direct* thermal printing, the thermal printhead selectively heats small, rectangular *thermal* dots. When these contact the coated thermal paper, the dyes and developers in the coating react to the heat and develop an image. This mode of printing is generally used for short-term labeling applications.

- **Thermal Transfer**

During thermal *transfer* printing, the heated thermal dots contact a thermal ribbon. The heat reacts with the ribbon and bonds the image to the paper. This method is used especially for abrasive, long-storage applications and for specialized applications, such as in extreme environmental conditions or where tamper-proofing is required.

NOTE: Thermal transfer is not supported on 4 inch DT model printers.

Dynamic Print Control

Dynamic Print Control is a unique feature of your thermal printer that provides excellent print quality. This feature prevents unevenness of print density, which is usually caused by the stored heat from previous dots.

Print quality largely depends on how the thermal paper or the thermal ribbon and thermal transfer paper responds to the heat of the thermal printhead. During printing, the thermal printhead must reach a set temperature in the shortest possible time. Then it must cool down to the original temperature in the shortest possible time after printing. Thus print quality is dependent on the precise control of the energy supplied to the thermal dots.

The Dynamic Print Control is a method for predicting the quantity of heat required to print dots based on the results of the previous printing. This prevents unevenness of print density and results in the printing of narrow-ladder bar codes or vertical grid lines that are straight from the microscopic viewpoint.

Thermal Consumables

Media Selection

Since there are two print modes of operation, there are two kinds of thermal media:

- Direct thermal media
- Thermal transfer media

Direct thermal media is paper coated with special chemicals that act as an accelerator, acceptor dye, and binder. During direct thermal mode, the heat from the thermal printhead contacts the paper and causes a chemical reaction to take place.

Thermal transfer media requires ribbon. A wide range of Printronix thermal transfer media is available, such as film or synthetic paper substitutes. Most of these media options can be die-cut for easy label applications. The wide selection of media sizes and face stocks have been tested with Printronix ribbons for print quality and usage. Consult your Genuine Printronix Supplies Catalog or contact the factory. You can obtain further information by calling the Printronix Customer Solutions Center at (714) 368-2686 or accessing the Printronix Web page at **www.primtronix.com**.

NOTE: The term “media” used in this manual refers to all the different kinds of paper or tag stock that can be used in the printer.

See “Genuine Printronix Media” on page 278 for more information.

Ribbons

Printronix offers a wide range of ribbons that have been specifically engineered to enhance printing capabilities and to prevent premature printhead wear. Therefore, you should use a Genuine Printronix Thermal Ribbon in your printer.

See “Genuine Printronix Thermal Transfer Ribbons” on page 277 for more information.

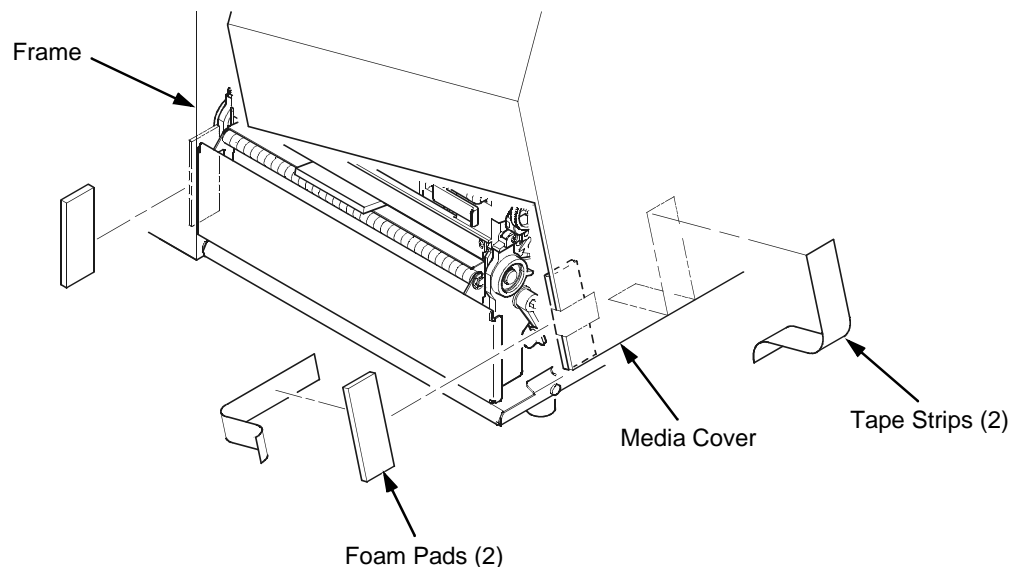
Setting Up The Printer

Unpacking The Printer

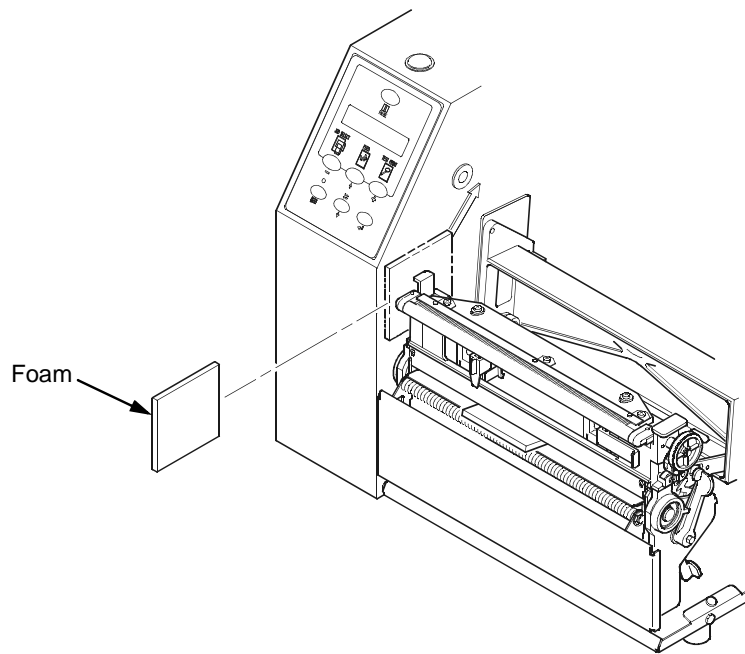
The printer is shipped in a carton and protective bag. The top lid of the carton has instructions on how to remove the internal packing material from the printer. Keep all packing material in case shipping is required.

CAUTION Avoid touching the electrical connectors to prevent electrostatic discharge damage while setting up the printer. The discharge of accumulated electrostatic energy can damage or destroy the printhead or electronic components used in this device.

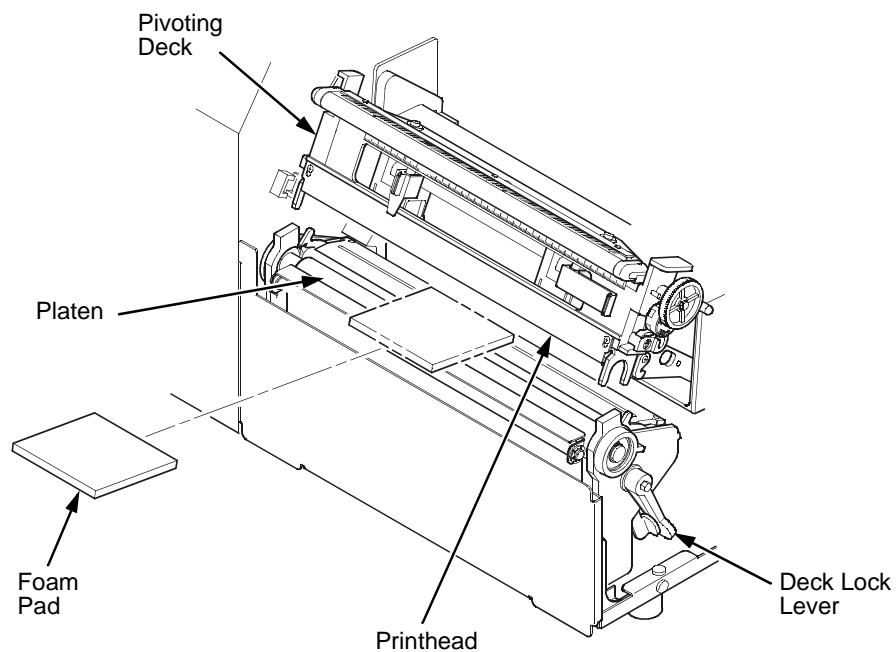
CAUTION Damage to the printer interface connector may result from placing the printer on its backside during unpacking or handling.



1. Remove the tape strips from the media cover. Lift open the media cover.
2. Remove the tape securing the foam pad to the inside of the media cover.
3. Remove the foam pad between the front door and the frame.



4. Remove the foam pad between the pivoting deck and the frame.



5. Open the pivoting deck by rotating the blue deck lock lever fully clockwise.
6. Remove the foam pad from between the printhead and the platen (rubber roller).
7. Close the pivoting deck and media cover.

Installation

The following sections will guide you through the installation of the printer.

1. Place the printer in a suitable location on a flat level surface that allows easy access to all sides of the printer.

CAUTION The printer should never be operated while resting on its side or upside down.

2. Check that the printer power switch is in the OFF (O) position.

WARNING Failure to properly ground the printer may result in electric shock to the operator.

In compliance with international safety standards this printer has been equipped with a three-pronged power cord. When inserted in a correctly wired power outlet the ground conductor will ensure that the printer chassis is at ground (earth) potential. Do not use adapter plugs or remove the grounding prong from the cable plug. If an extension cord is required, ensure that a three-wire cable with a properly grounded plug is used.

3. Attach the AC power cord to the AC power receptacle in the back of the printer.

CAUTION Verify the required voltage on the printer's model number label on the rear of the printer.

4. Attach the AC power cord to a grounded (three prong) electrical outlet of the proper voltage.

5. Attach Interface:

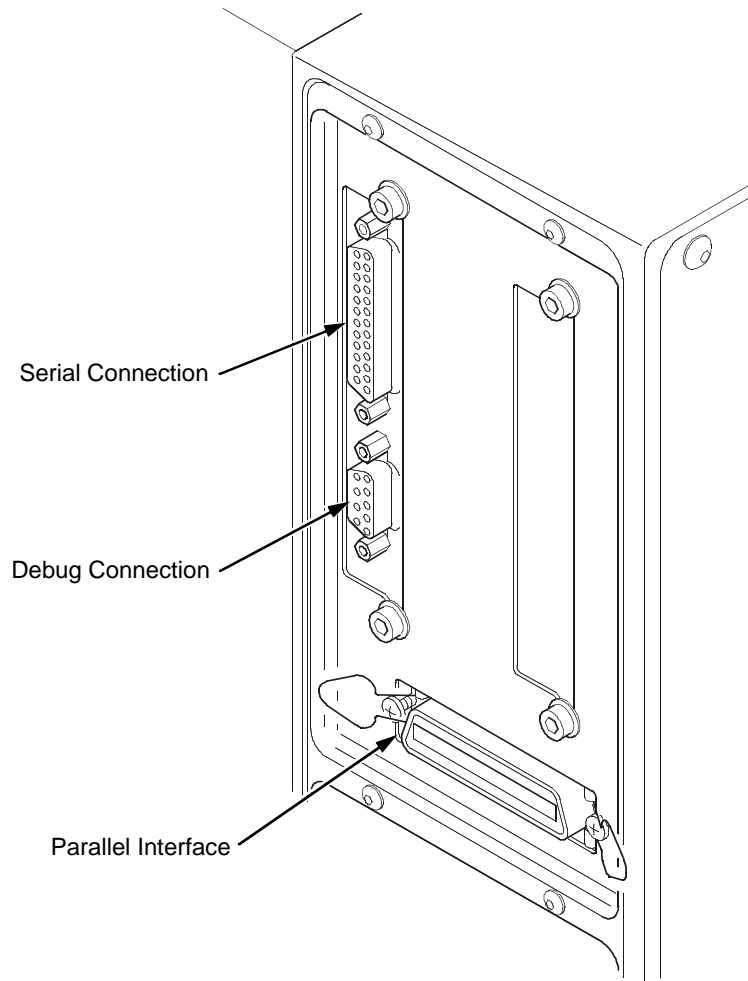
a. Parallel Interface

Attach a suitable parallel printer cable from the computer to the Centronics/IEEE 1284 interface connector at the back of the printer. Snap the bail locks to the Centronics connector to secure the interface cable to the printer.

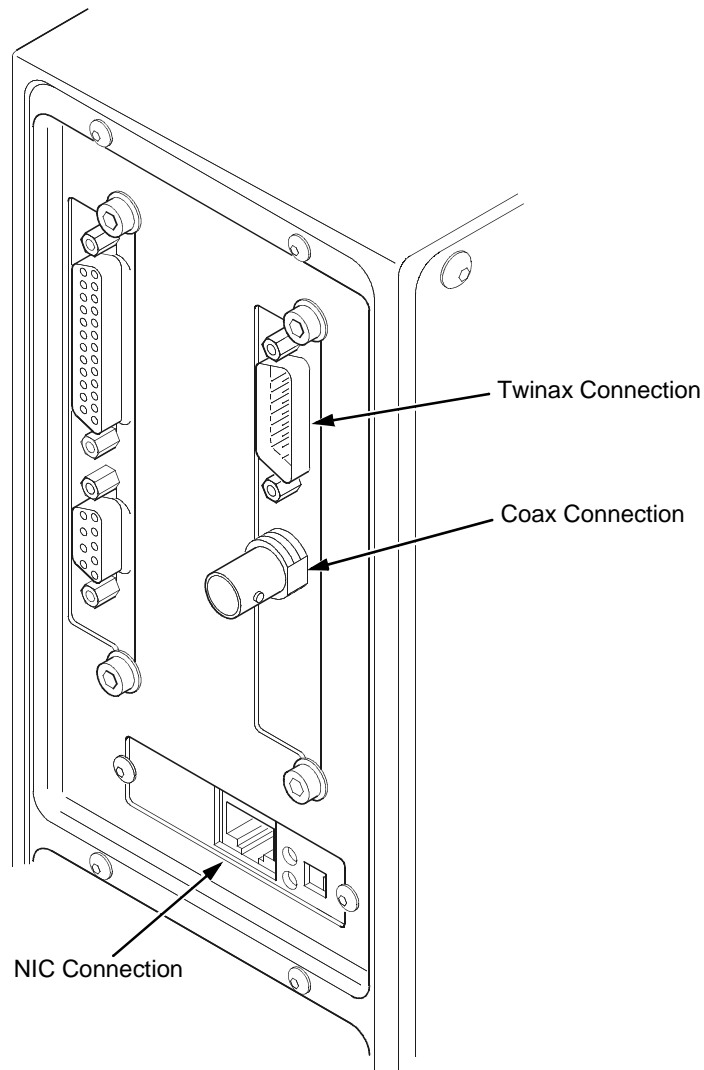
b. Serial Interface

Attach a suitable serial printer cable from the computer to the DB-25 RS-232 Serial interface connector at the back of the printer. For additional information on serial cable wiring, refer to “Diagnostics And Troubleshooting” on page 241.

NOTE: The printer supports simultaneous connection of the Parallel and Serial interfaces using the Auto Switching feature. Auto Switching is described on page 233.



If your printer is equipped with the Coax/Twinax and Network Interface Card (NIC) interfaces, the rear I/O panel will look like the picture below.



c. Coax Connection

Attach a suitable coaxial cable from the computer to the coax connector located in the I/O plate in the back of the printer.

d. Twinax Connection

Attach a suitable twinax cable from the computer to the twinax connector located in the I/O plate in the back of the printer.

e. NIC Connection

Insert a suitable NIC cable from your hub or switch to the NIC connector located in the I/O panel in the rear of your printer.

2

Operation

Controls And Indicators

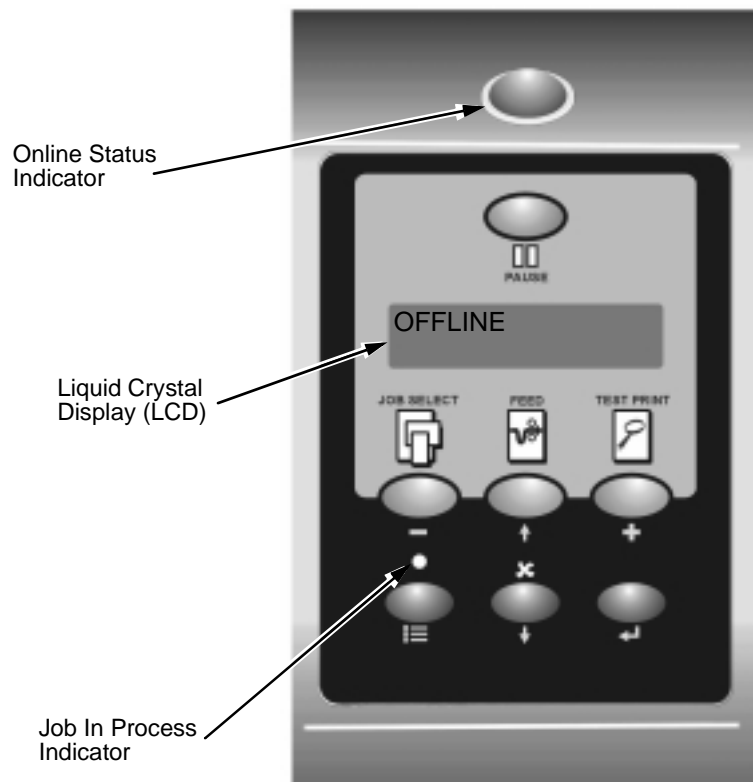
Power Switch

The power switch is located on the bottom back panel of the printer. To apply power, place the switch in the | (ON) position. When you first power on the printer, a series of initialization messages will appear on the control panel Liquid Crystal Display (LCD).

To remove power, place the power switch in the O (OFF) position.

Control Panel








The control panel is located on the front of the printer and includes an LCD, indicators, and control keys (buttons). These are described in the following tables. (Also refer to Chapter 3.)







Status and Display Indicators

Indicator	Description	Function in Online Mode	Function in Offline Mode	Function in Menu Mode
Online Status	Indicates when the printer is online, offline, or when there is a fault condition.	Stays lit when the printer is online, ready to print, and accept data from the host. Flashes during a fault condition.	Off when the printer is offline. Flashes during a fault condition.	Off. Flashes during a fault condition.
Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)	A backlighted Liquid Crystal Display with two rows of 16 characters each.	Displays "ONLINE," the interface type, and emulation in use. During a fault condition, displays the specific fault message and the corrective action.	Displays "OFFLINE." During a fault condition, displays the specific fault message and the corrective action.	Displays "OFFLINE" and a main menu, submenu, or option. During a fault condition, displays the specific fault message and the corrective action.
Job In Process	Indicates when the printer is receiving or processing data.	Flashes when receiving data. Stays lit when data has been processed and is waiting to be printed. Off when no data is being received or when no data remains in the buffer.	Flashes when receiving data. Stays lit when data has been processed and is waiting to be printed. Off when no data is being received or when no data remains in the buffer.	None

Control Panel Keys

Button	Description	Function in Online Mode	Function in Offline Mode	Function in Menu Mode
 PAUSE	PAUSE Key Toggles the printer between online and offline modes.	Sets printer to Offline Mode.	Sets printer to Online Mode.	Sets printer to Offline Mode.
 JOB SELECT 	JOB SELECT Key DECREMENT Key in Menu Mode	None	Selects a pre-stored printer configuration.	Scrolls left through main menus. Decrements option values within submenus.
 FEED 	FEED Key UP Key in Menu Mode	Advances the media one label length.	Advances the media one label length.	Scrolls the current menu selection one level up.
 TEST PRINT 	TEST PRINT Key Pressing the ↵ (ENTER) key with a Diagnostic Test displayed initiates the test. Pressing the ↵ (ENTER) key again terminates the test. INCREMENT Key in Menu Mode	None	Scrolls through the Test Print patterns.	Scrolls right through main menus. Increments option values within submenus.

Control Panel Keys (cont.)

Button	Description	Function in Online Mode	Function in Offline Mode	Function in Menu Mode
 	<p>CANCEL Key When the CANCEL key is enabled, pressing it will clear all data in the printer buffer and prevent printing of that data. Note: The factory default = Disable. However, when the Coax/Twinax interface option is installed, the factory default = Enable.</p> <p>DOWN Key in Menu Mode</p>	None	Clears all data in the printer data buffer when enabled.	Scrolls the current menu selection one level down.
	MENU Key	Takes the printer Offline and selects the Menu mode.	Selects the Menu mode.	Scrolls between main menu selections.
	<p>ENTER Key Pressing the ↵ (ENTER) key in Menu Mode selects the displayed option or value. An asterisk then appears next to the option or value indicating it has been selected. Note: If the ENTER key is locked, "ENTER SWITCH LOCKED" displays on the LCD for one second. Press the ↓ (DOWN) and ↵ (ENTER) keys at the same time to unlock the ENTER key and select an option or value.</p>	None	None	Selects the current menu value and displays an asterisk (*) next to the value.

Powering On The Printer

When you power on the printer, it executes a self-test. During the self-test, the LCD momentarily displays the DPI resolution (203 or 300 DPI) of the installed printhead. The default power-on state is online. Once the printer has successfully initialized, the ONLINE status indicator light illuminates, and the LCD indicates the communication interface selected and the type of emulation installed.

If there is a fault during the self-test, the ONLINE status indicator flashes, and a fault message appears on the display. The alarm may also sound, if it is configured to do so.

Operating Modes

The current operating mode can be selected through the control panel keys or can result from routine operations such as powering on the printer.

Online: In online mode, the printer can receive and print data sent from the host. Pressing the PAUSE key toggles the printer between the online and offline mode. The ONLINE status indicator is lit in online mode.

Offline: In offline mode, you can perform operator functions such as loading media or changing ribbon. Pressing the PAUSE key toggles the printer from offline to online mode. The ONLINE status indicator is not illuminated in offline mode.

Menu: In menu mode, you can navigate through the configuration menus to make changes or verify option settings. Pressing the PAUSE key toggles the printer from menu to offline mode. The ONLINE status indicator is not illuminated in menu mode.

Fault: In fault mode, a fault condition exists that must be cleared before printing can continue. The ONLINE status indicator flashes, the alarm beeps (if configured to do so), and a descriptive fault message displays.

The fault must be corrected first and then the message cleared by pressing the PAUSE key before normal printing can continue.

Media Handling Modes

Before you load media, you must decide which media handling mode to use as described below:

- **Continuous.** Printer prints on the media and sends it out the front. When the optional internal rewinder is installed, use Continuous for Batch Rewind mode (see page 49).
- **Tear-Off Strip.** Prints on media and sends it out the front until the print buffer is empty, then positions the last label over the tear bar for removal.
- **Tear-Off.** After each label is printed, the printer positions the label over the front edge of the tear bar and waits for you to tear-off the label before printing the next one (on-demand printing). A "Remove Label" message will display to remind you to remove the label before the next one can be printed.

- **Peel-Off.** Prints and peels die-cut labels from the liner without assistance. The printer waits for you to take away the label before printing the next one (on-demand printing). The label liner is rewound on the optional internal rewinder. A “Remove Label” message will display to remind you to remove the label before the next one can be printed. For Label Peel-off information, see page 55.
- **Cut.** When the optional media cutter is installed, it automatically cuts media after each label is printed or can cut after a specified number of labels have been printed using a software cut command.

Once you have decided on the mode, configure the printer. See Chapter 3 for more information.

Loading Media And Ribbon

NOTE: This section describes the procedures for loading various types of media and ribbon. You can also refer to instructions on the printer itself, on a label on the inside of the media cover.

The term “media” used in this manual refers to all the different kinds of paper, label, or tag stock material that can be printed on by the printer. This section explains how to load roll media, fanfold media, and transfer ribbon.

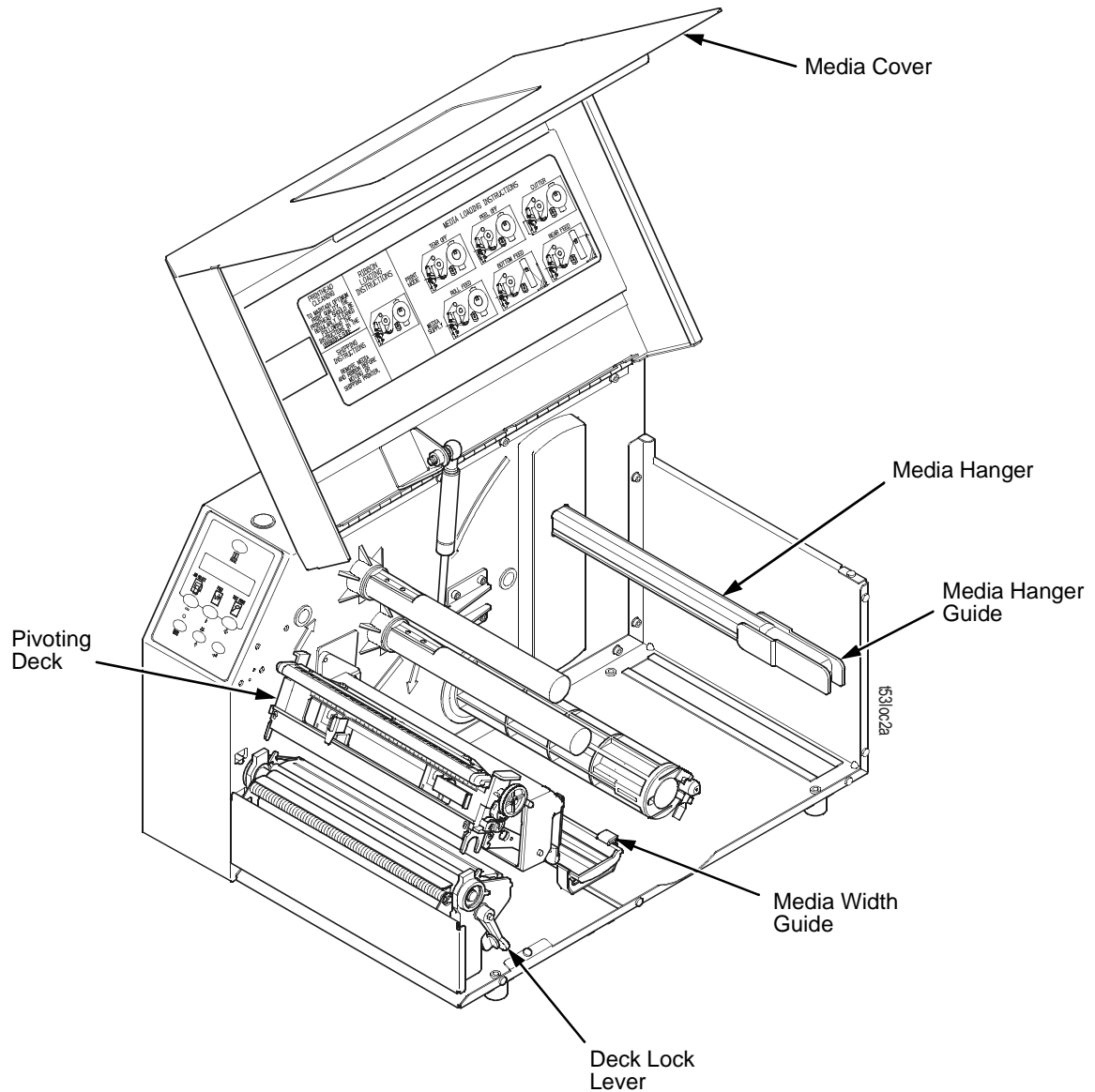
Your thermal printer can print on continuous paper, adhesive backed labels, or non-adhesive tags packaged in roll or fanfold form.

CAUTION **DO NOT TOUCH the printhead or the electronic components under the printhead assembly. The discharge of electrostatic energy that accumulates on the surface of the human body or other surfaces can damage or destroy the printhead or electronic components used in this device.**

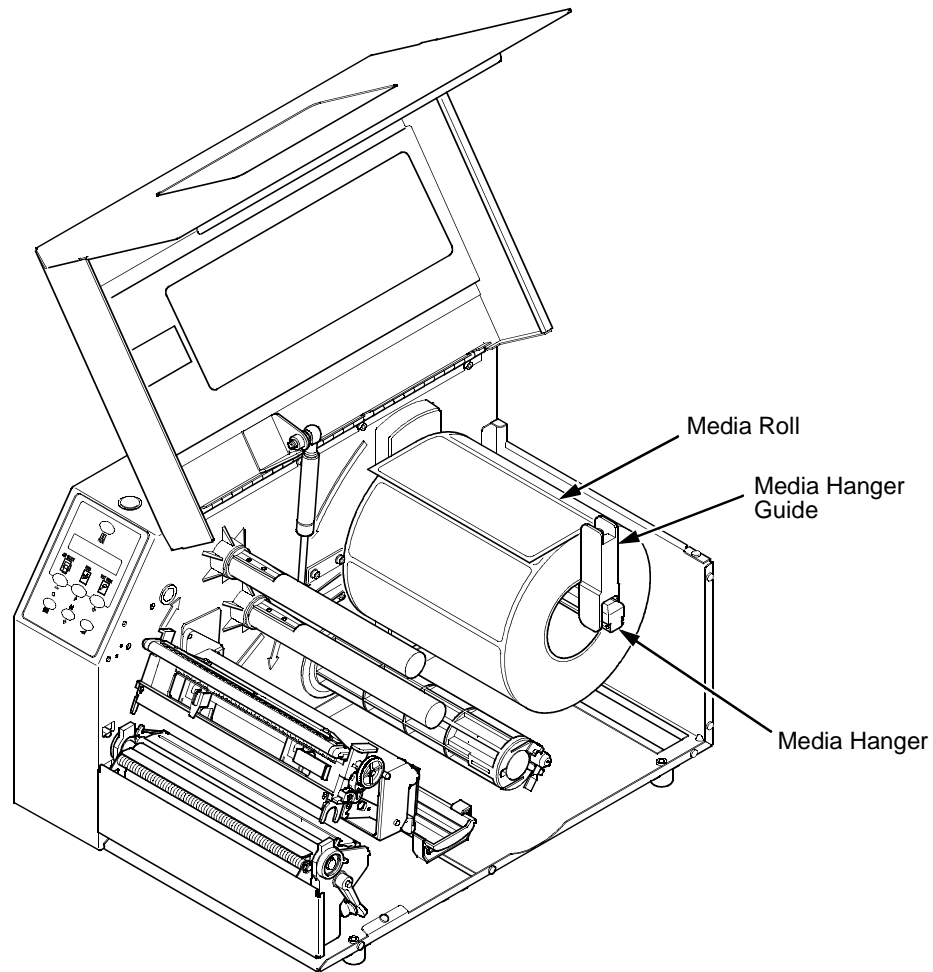
IMPORTANT **Adhesive backed labels that DO NOT lay flat on the backing liner can jam the printer. This can cause the label to peel off the liner. The exposed edges can stick to the label guides and rollers inside the printer.**

If you run out of labels while printing, do not turn the power switch to the OFF position while reloading labels, because you can lose data.

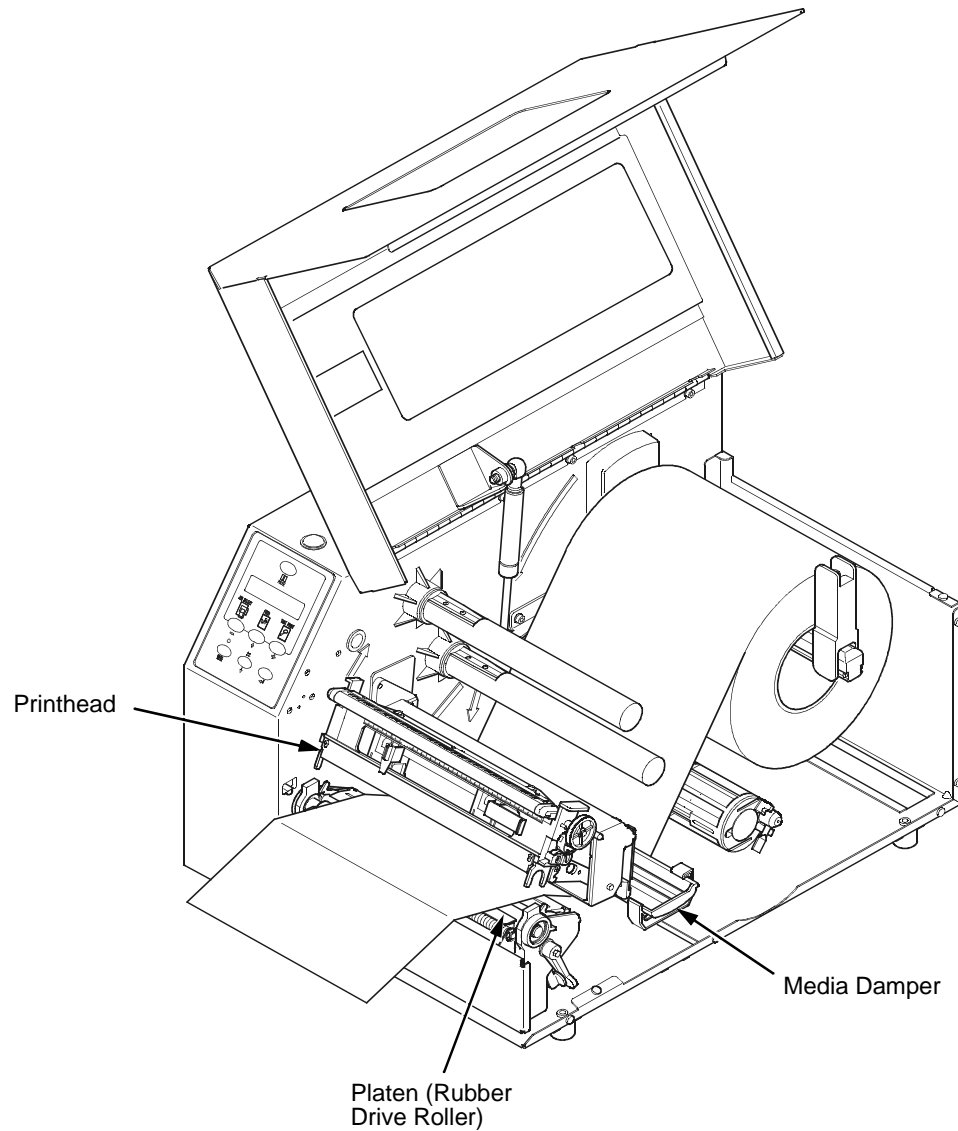
Loading Roll Media



1. Open the media cover.
2. Slide the blue media hanger guide outward to the end of the media hanger, and flip it down horizontally.
3. Open the pivoting deck by rotating the blue deck lock lever fully clockwise.
4. Slide the blue media width guide close to the outside end of the media damper.

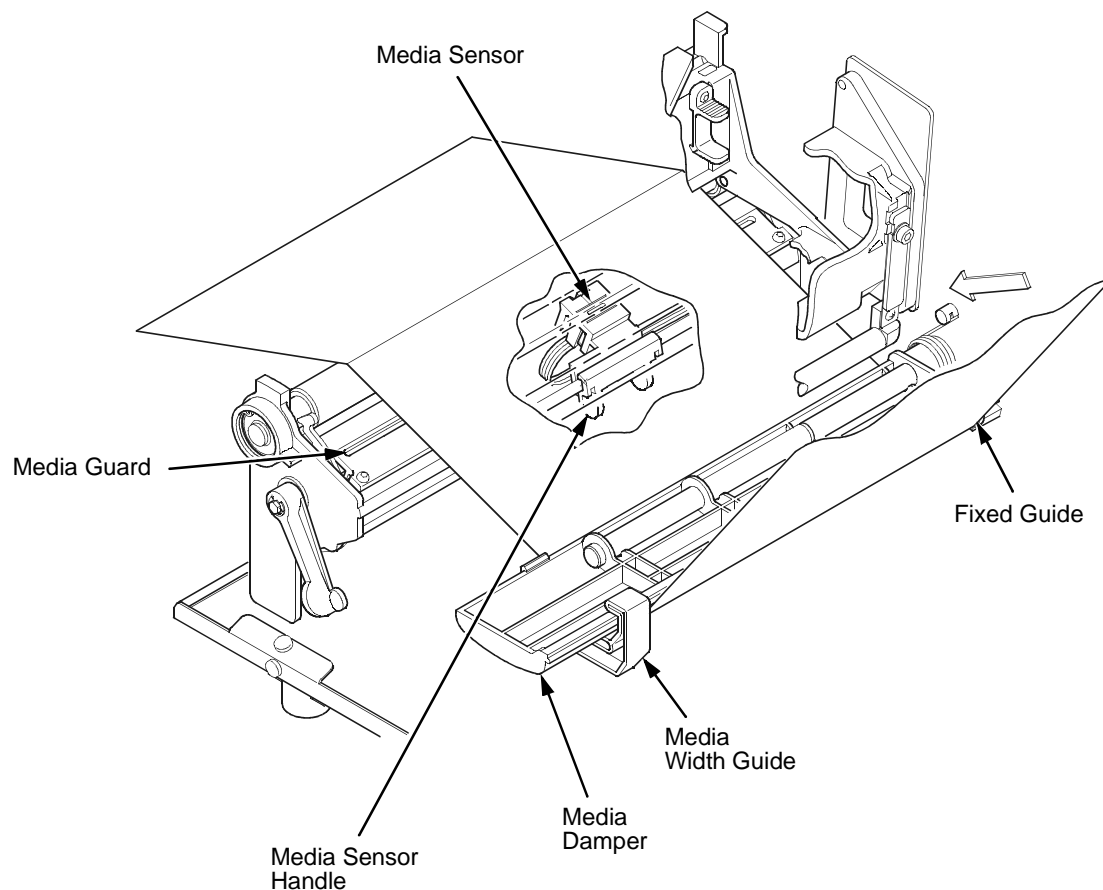


5. Slide a roll of media onto and towards the back of the media hanger. The media feeds from the top of the roll and towards the front of the printer.
6. Flip up the media hanger guide, and slide it in against the outer edge of the media roll.

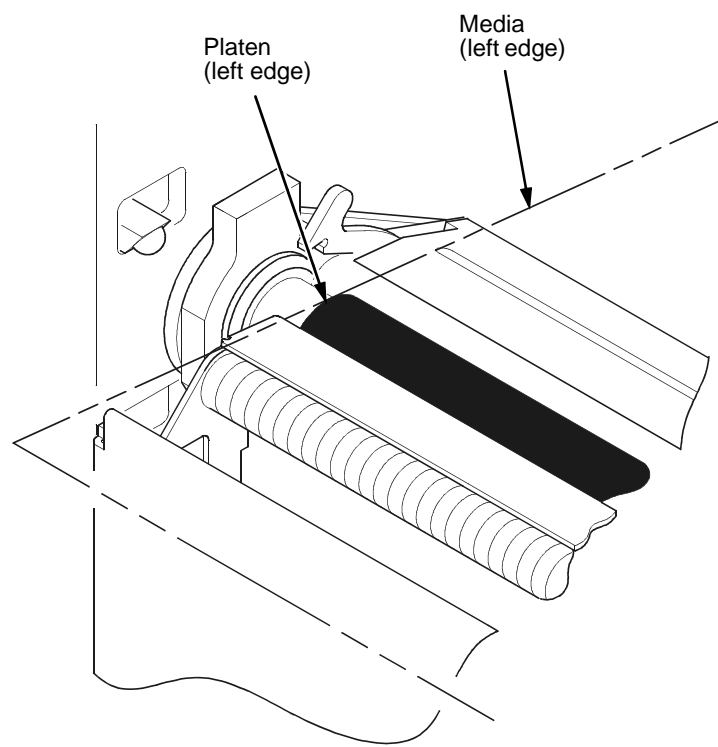


7. Thread the media under the media damper and then between the platen (rubber drive roller) and the printhead.

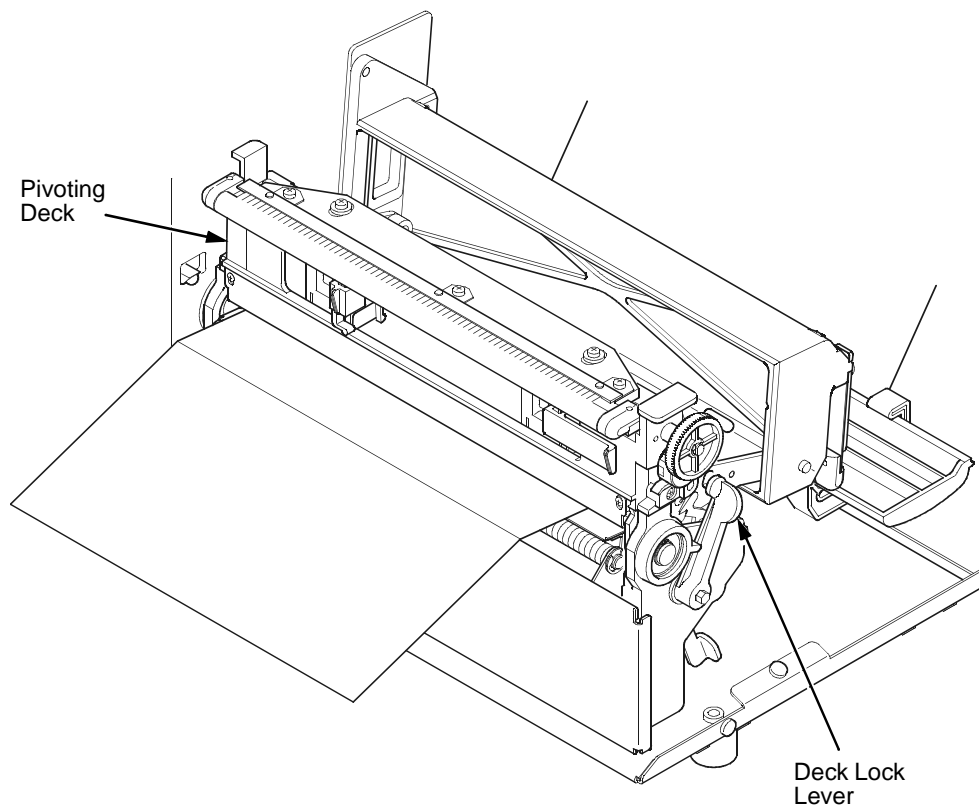
You can also refer to the arrows on the printer frame or to the label inside the media cover for media loading instructions.



8. Verify that the left (inside) edge of the media is against the fixed guide on the bottom of the media damper.
9. Push the blue media width guide in until it is flush with the outer edge of the media.
10. Check the horizontal position of the media sensor (it is blue and located under the media guard), and refer to "Positioning The Media Sensor" on page 61.



11. Align the left (inside) edge of the media with the left straight edge of the platen (rubber drive roller).



12. Close the printhead by pressing down on both sides of the pivoting deck and rotating the deck lock lever fully counterclockwise.

IMPORTANT

Ensure the pivoting deck is down and locked before attempting to advance media or print. Failure to do so will cause the “PRINTHEAD UP” fault message to display.

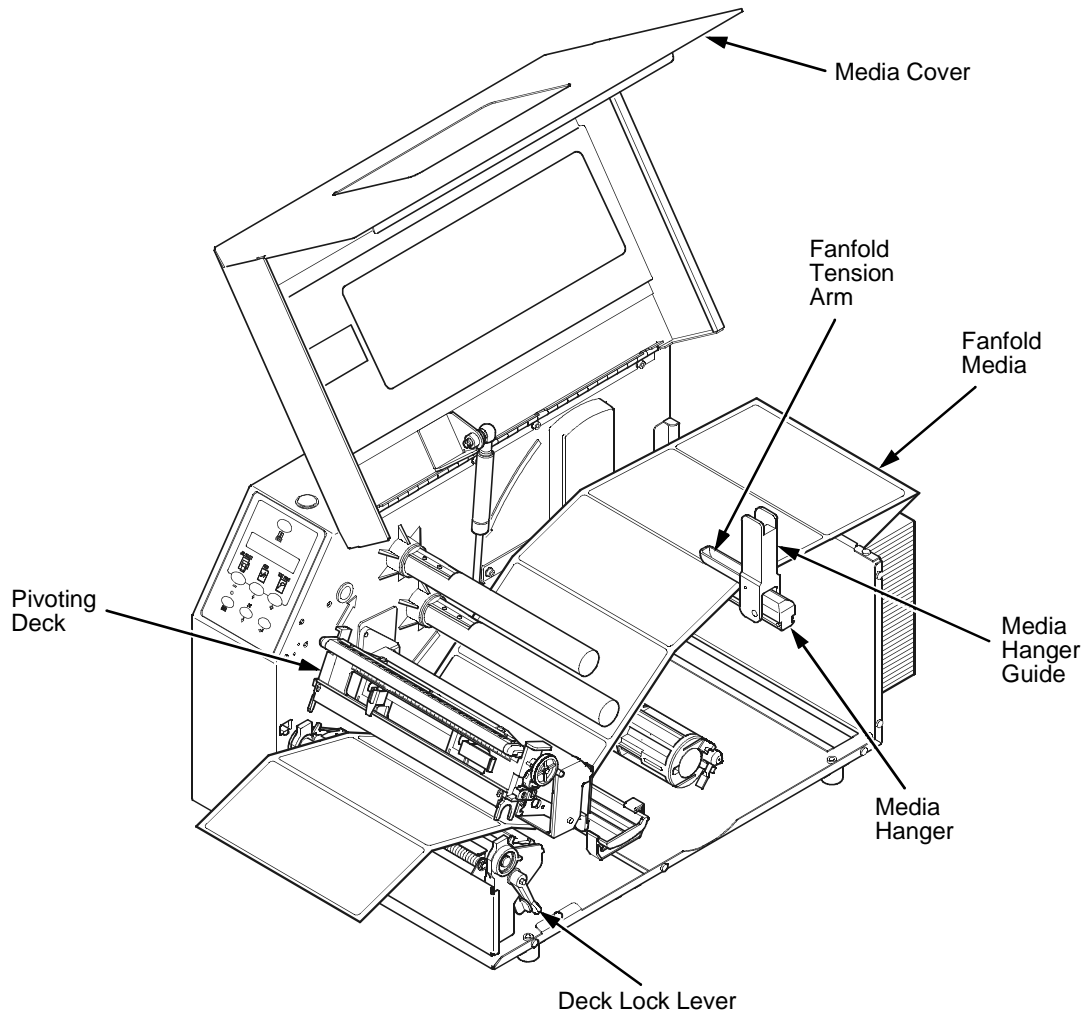
13. Verify that Print Mode in the Printer Configuration Menu is set for the media type installed (Direct or Transfer). The Print Mode submenu is located in the MEDIA CONTROL menu. See “Main Menu” on page 79 for details.

For direct thermal operation (no ribbon required) close the media cover and go to step 14.

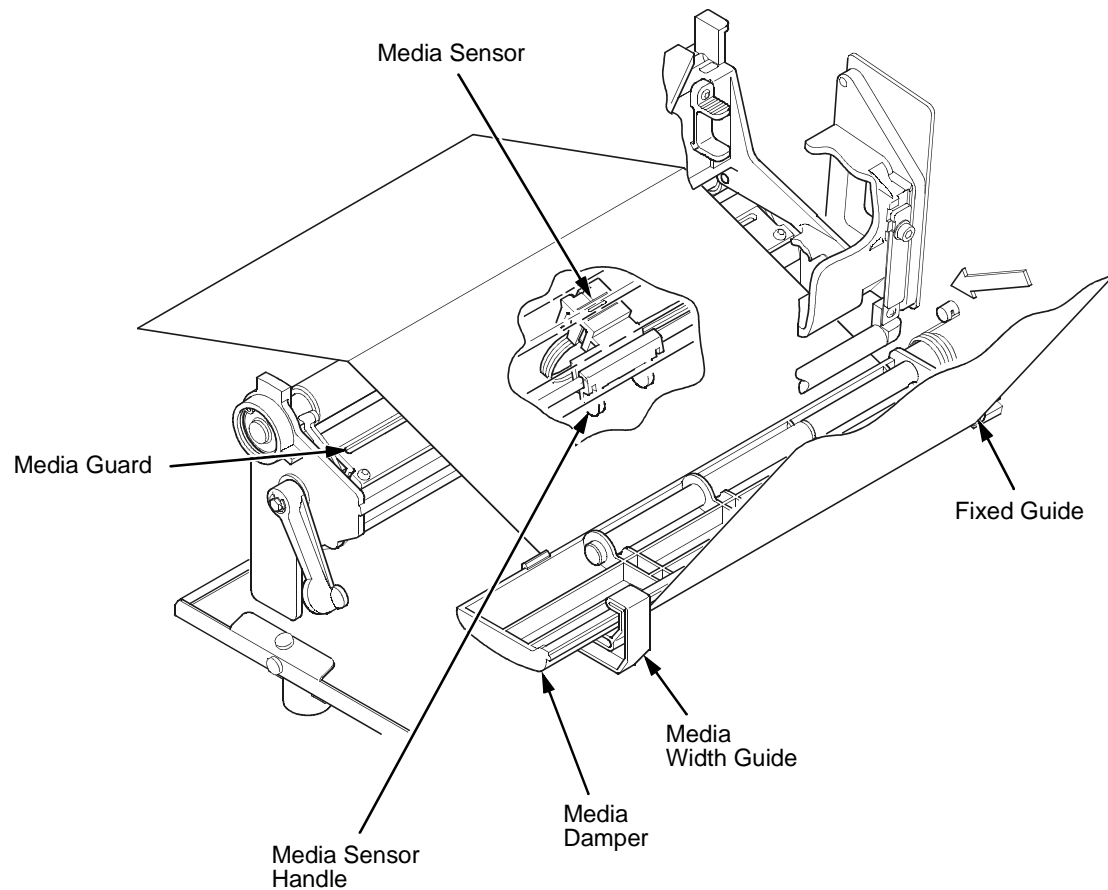
For thermal transfer operation (which uses a ribbon) complete the ribbon loading procedure (see “Loading Ribbon” on page 45).

14. Press the FEED key once to verify that the media advances.
15. Press the PAUSE key to place the printer online. The printer is now ready for printing.

Loading Fanfold Media

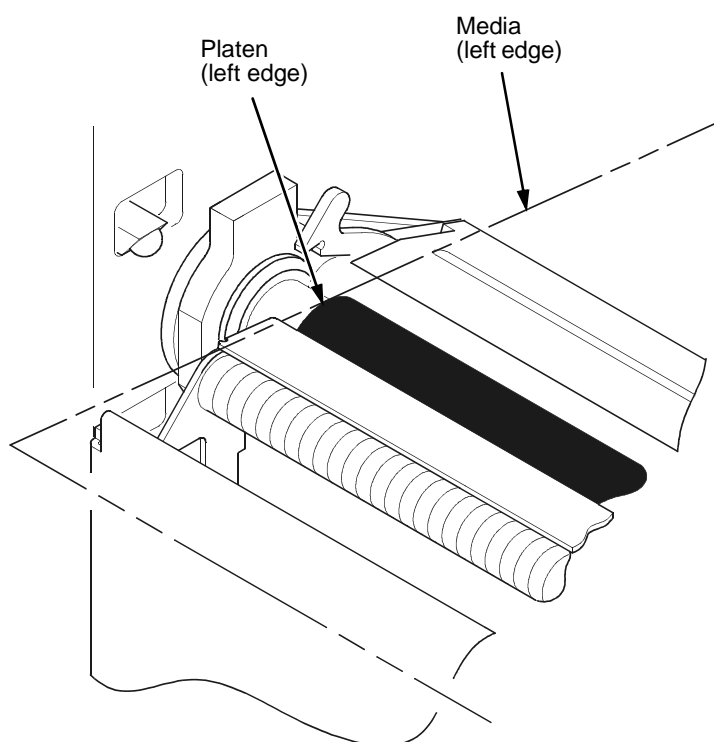


1. Open the media cover.
2. Slide the media hanger guide outward to the end of the media hanger, and rotate it downward to a horizontal position to remove any roll media.
3. Place the fanfold media either behind or beneath the printer, depending on the desired fanfold supply location. Insert the first few labels through either the rear or bottom panel opening.
4. Place the media over the media hanger, flush against the back of the printer.
5. Flip up the media hanger guide and slide it in against the outer edge of the fanfold media.
6. Flip the fanfold tension arm down by pushing on it through the opening at the top of the media hanger guide.
7. Open the pivoting deck by rotating the deck lock lever fully clockwise until the deck swings upward.

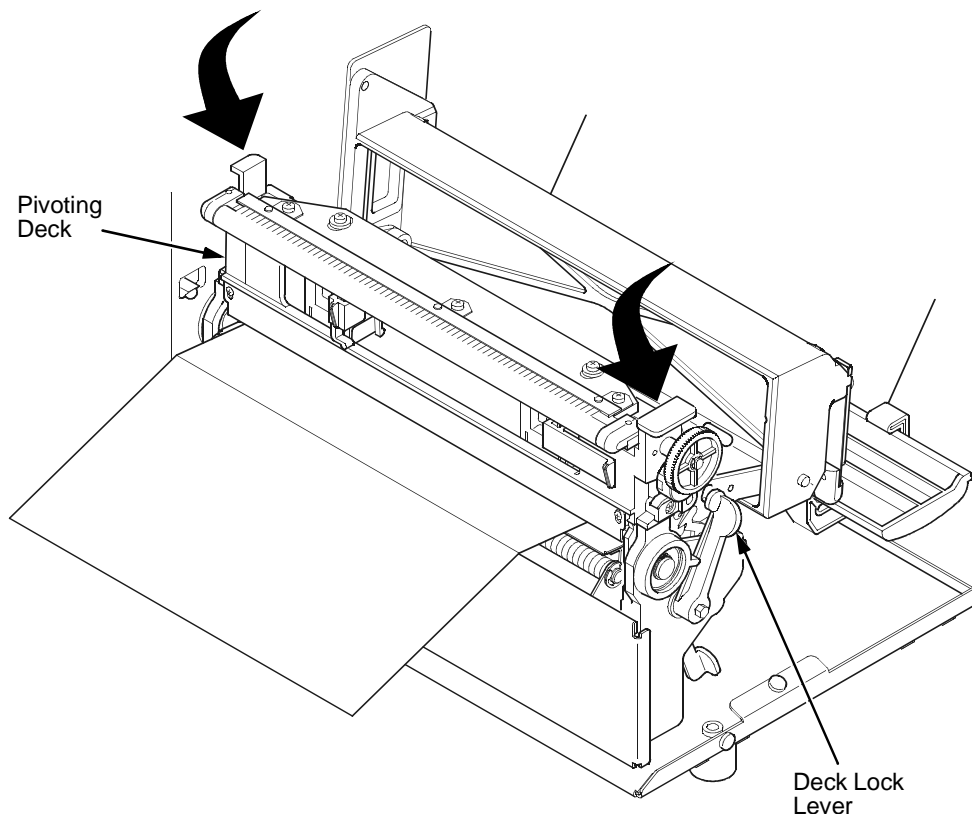


8. Slide the media width guide outward to the end of the media damper.
9. Thread the media under the media damper and then between the platen (rubber drive roller) and the printhead. You can also refer to the arrows on the printer frame or to the label inside the media cover for media loading instructions.

Verify that the left (inside) edge of the media is against the fixed guide on the bottom of the media damper.
10. Slide the media width guide inward against the outer edge of the media.
11. Check the horizontal position of the media sensor (it is blue and located under the media guard), and refer to "Positioning The Media Sensor" on page 61.



12. Align the left (inside) edge of the media with the left straight edge of the platen (rubber drive roller).



13. Close the printhead by pressing down on both sides of the pivoting deck and rotating the deck lock lever fully counterclockwise. This locks the pivoting deck and printhead assembly into the printing position.

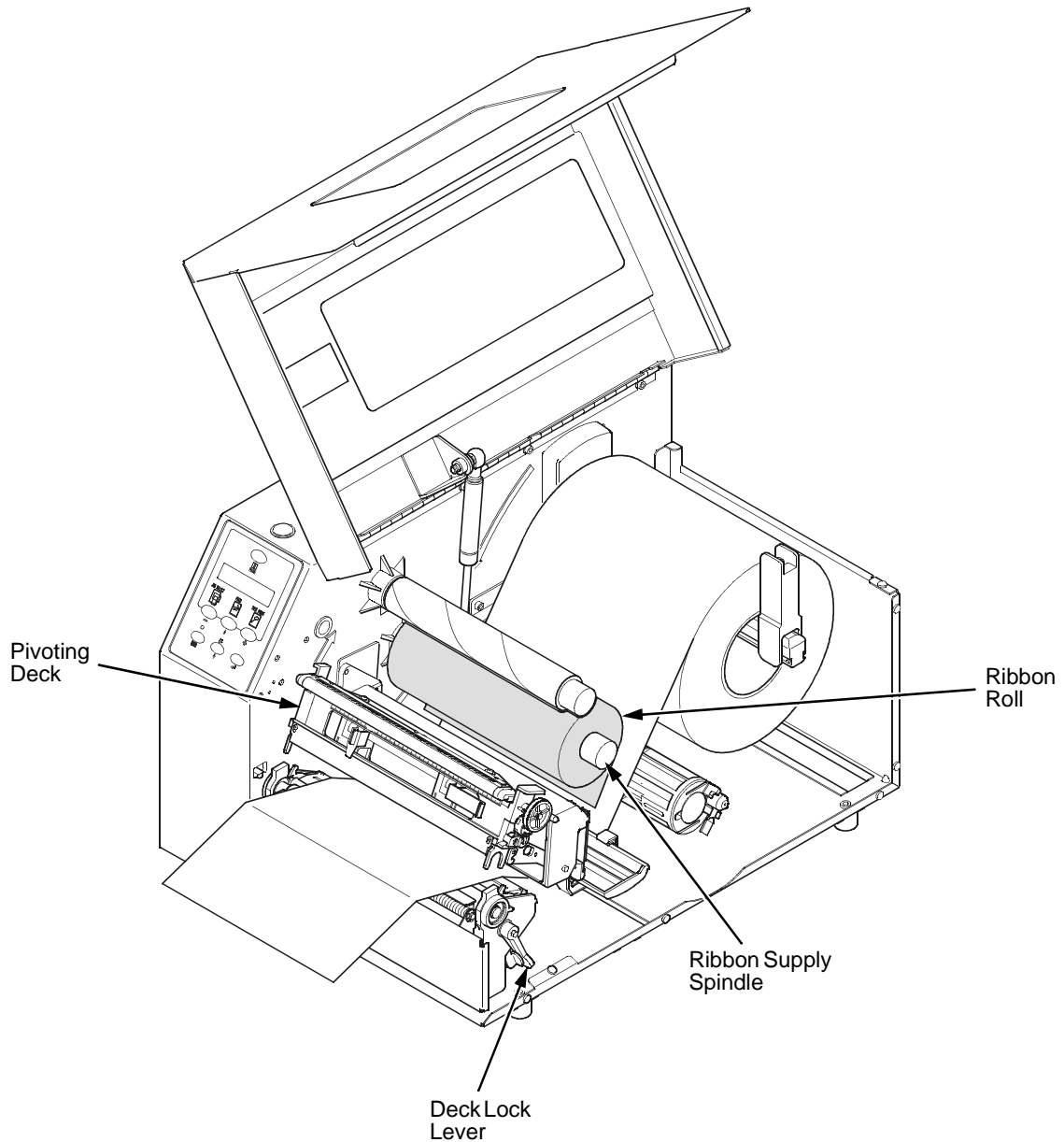
Verify that Print Mode in the Printer Configuration Menu is set for the media type installed (Direct or Transfer). If Thermal Transfer media is installed, see “Loading Ribbon” on page 45. The Print Mode submenu is located in the MEDIA CONTROL menu. See “Main Menu” on page 79 for more information.

IMPORTANT Ensure the pivoting deck is down and locked before attempting to advance media or print. Failure to do so will cause the “PRINTHEAD UP” fault message to display.

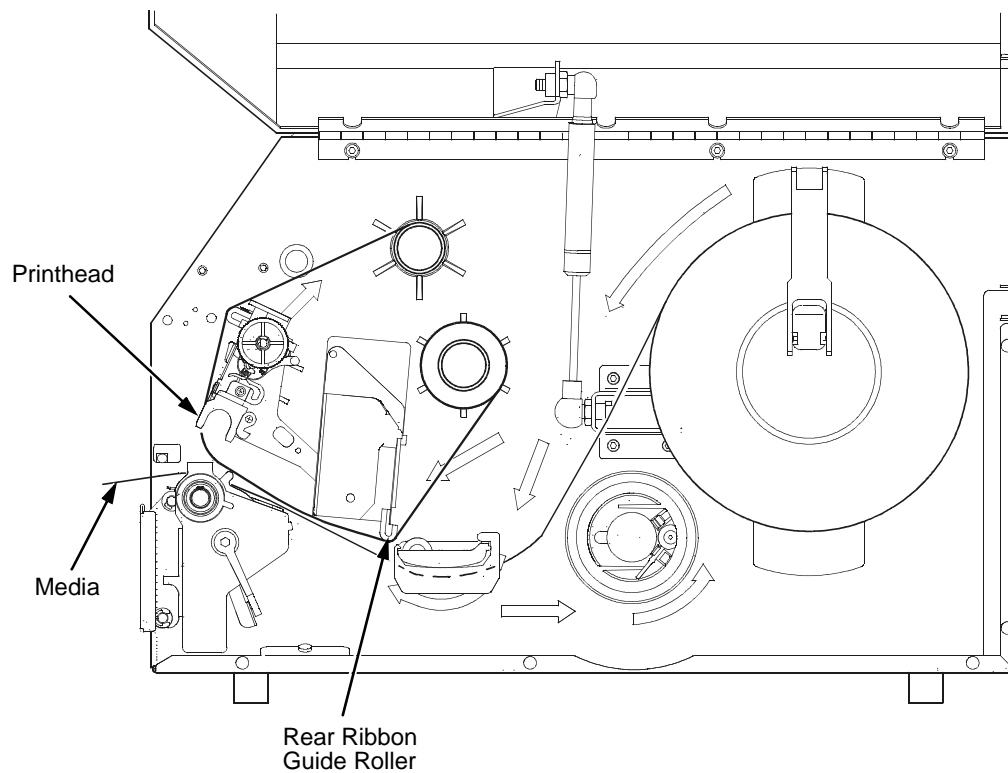
14. Press the FEED key once to verify that the labels advance.
15. Press the PAUSE key to place the printer online.
The printer is now ready for printing.

Loading Ribbon

Skip this section for 4 inch DT models or when using direct thermal printing.

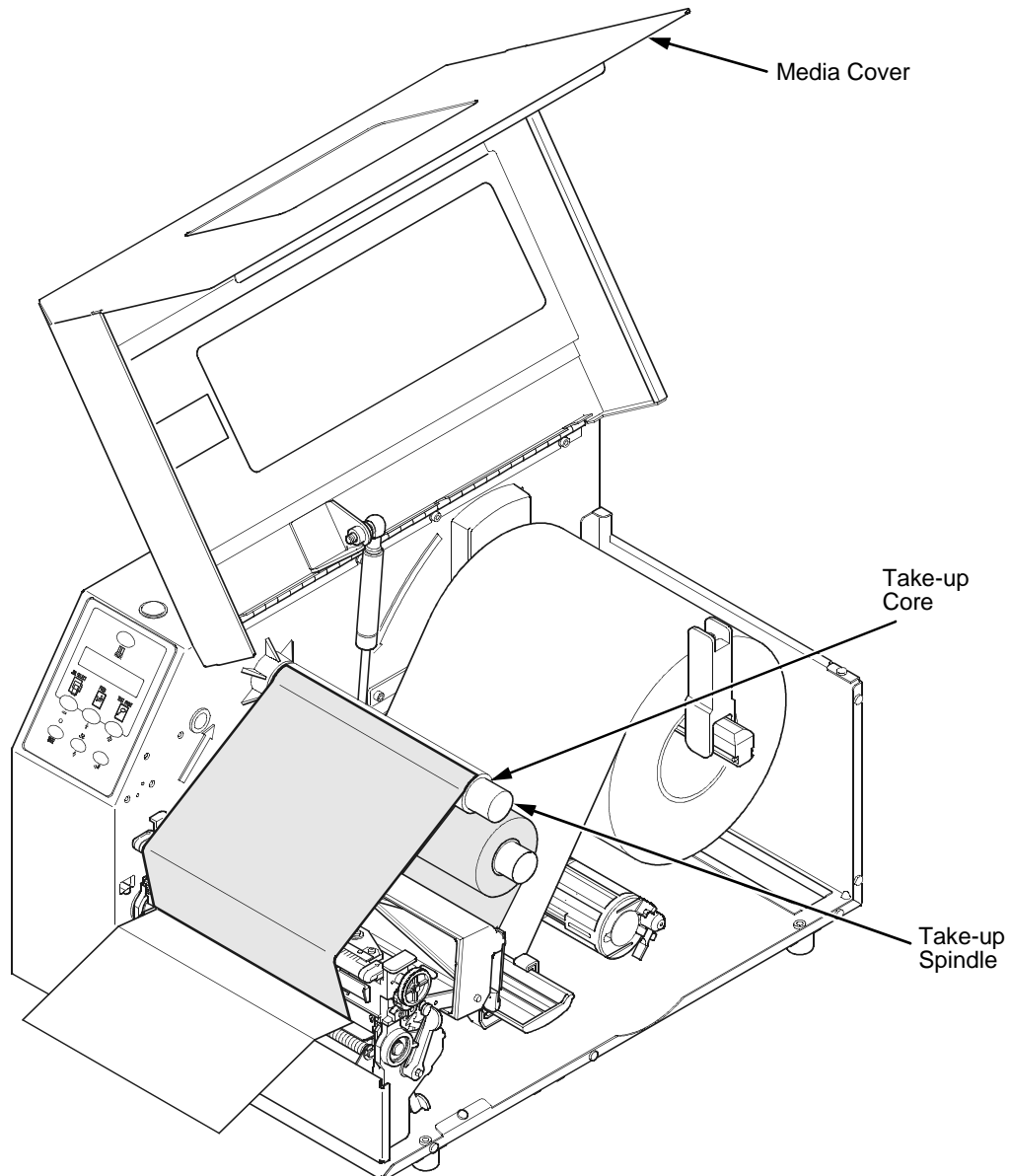


1. Install the empty supply core on the take-up spindle.
2. Slide the ribbon roll onto the ribbon supply spindle until it stops against the spindle flange.
3. Open the pivoting deck by rotating the deck lock lever fully clockwise until the deck swings upward.



4. Thread the end of the ribbon under the rear ribbon guide roller, then between the platen and the printhead.

You can also refer to the arrows on the printer frame or to the label inside the media cover for media loading instructions.



5. Wrap the ribbon from the front of the printhead assembly to the front of the ribbon take-up spindle. Attach the ribbon to the fiberboard core on the ribbon take-up spindle with tape.

When installing a new roll of ribbon, attach the ribbon leader adhesive strip to the ribbon take-up core. Manually rotate the spindle clockwise to feed the unusable portion of the ribbon leader around the take-up spindle.

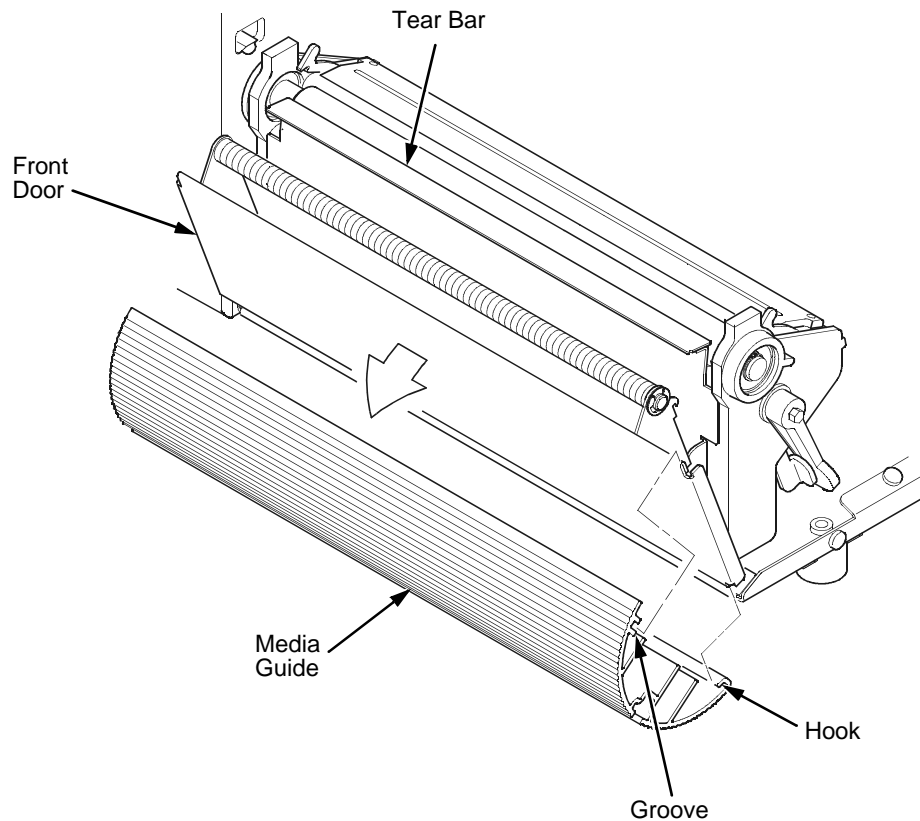
IMPORTANT Do not attach the ribbon to the ribbon take-up spindle without a core installed. Proper ribbon tension and ribbon removal is based on the use of a fiberboard core.

6. Close the pivoting deck (see page 44).
7. Close the printer media cover if the rewinder is not needed.

8. Verify that Print Mode is set for Transfer in the Print Mode submenu located in the MEDIA CONTROL Main Configuration menu. See “Main Menu” on page 79 for more information.
9. The printer is now ready to print.

Removing The Media Guide

Remove the media guide from the front door when using Tear-Off or Tear-Off Strip media handling, because you will need to tear the label downward against the tear bar.



1. Open the front door by pulling it upward, then forward.
2. Grasp the upper right corner of the media guide and pry it off of the top of the front door.
3. After removing the media guide, close the front door.
4. Open the pivoting deck and load paper and ribbon normally (see “Loading Media And Ribbon” on page 34.)

Using The Optional Internal Rewinder

The printer can be set up to rewind labels after they have been printed (Batch Rewind Mode) or to automatically peel labels from their backing and dispense them one at a time while rewinding the liner (Peel-Off Mode). Both modes require use of an internal rewinder. The internal rewinder is available as a factory installed option only.

Batch Rewind Mode

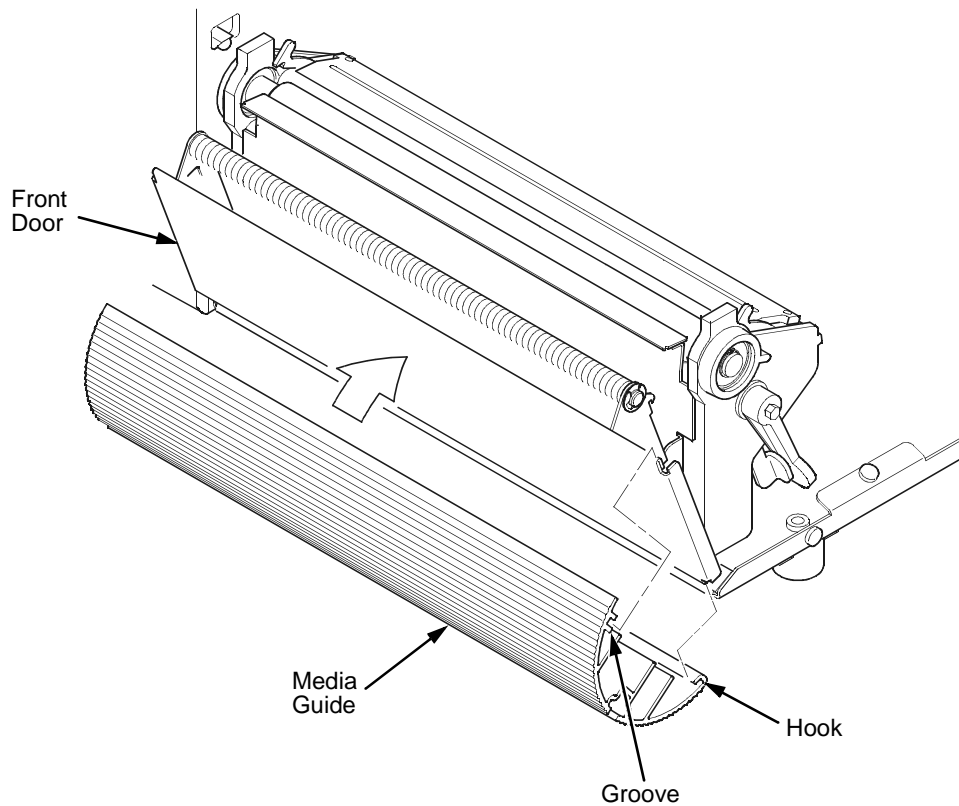
Batch Rewind allows you to automatically rewind printed labels into a roll using the optional internal rewinder.

Configuring the Printer Menu

1. Set Media Handling to “Continuous” under the MEDIA CONTROL Main Menu. (See Chapter 3, “Configuring The Printer” for more information.)
2. Press the PAUSE key until “OFFLINE” displays.

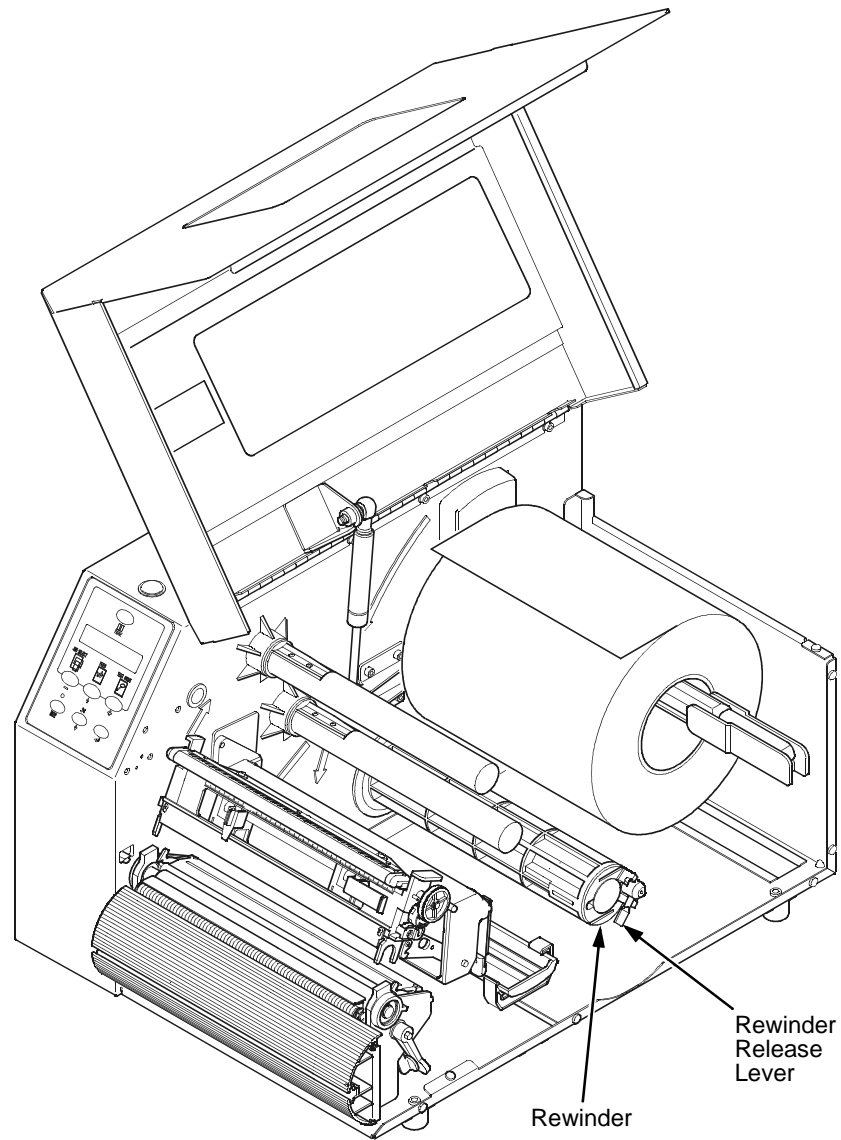
Installing The Media Guide

The media guide must be installed on the front door when using Batch Rewind mode. To install the media guide:

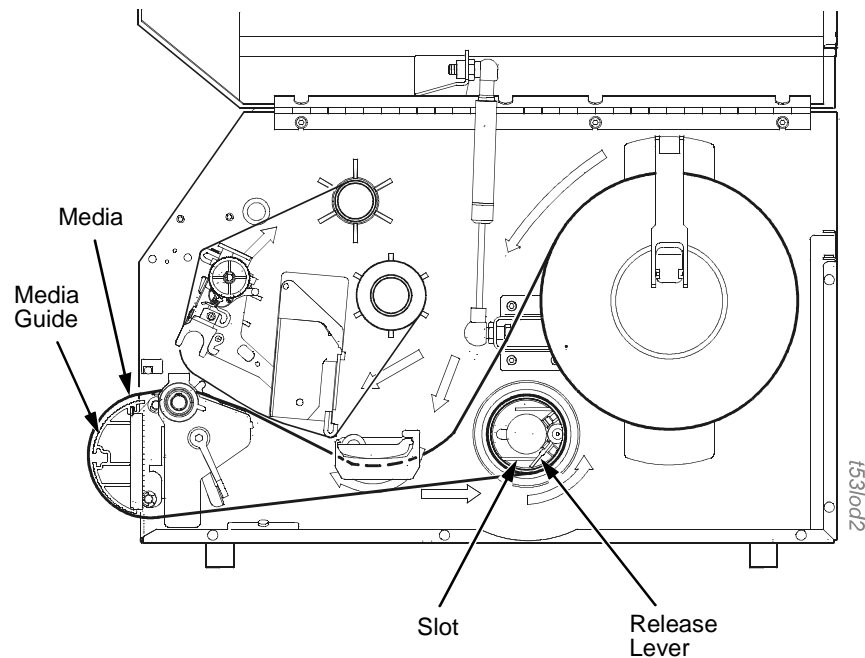


1. Open the front door by pulling it upwards, then forward.
2. The bottom of the plastic media guide is shaped like a hook and the top has a groove:
 - a. Hook the bottom of the media guide under the bottom edge of the front door.
 - b. Snap the groove on the media guide to the top edge of the front door.
3. Close the front door.

Loading Media

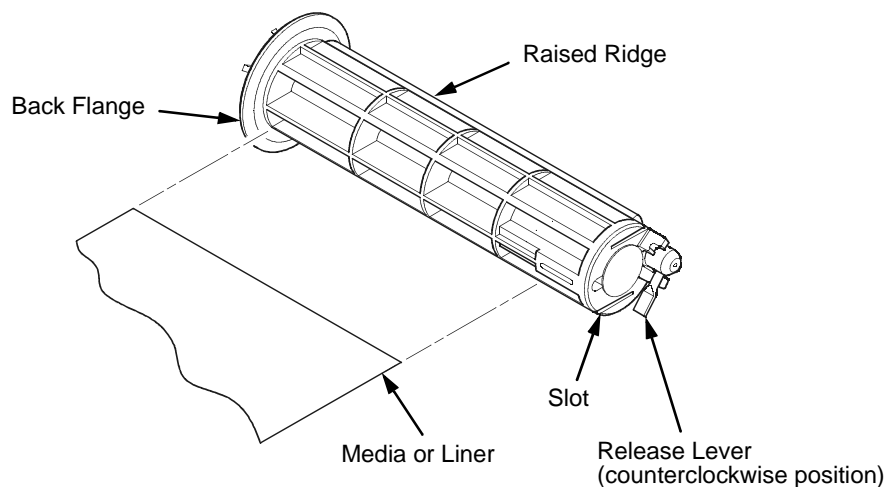


1. To load media, refer to “Loading Roll Media” on page 35 and complete steps 1 through 10.

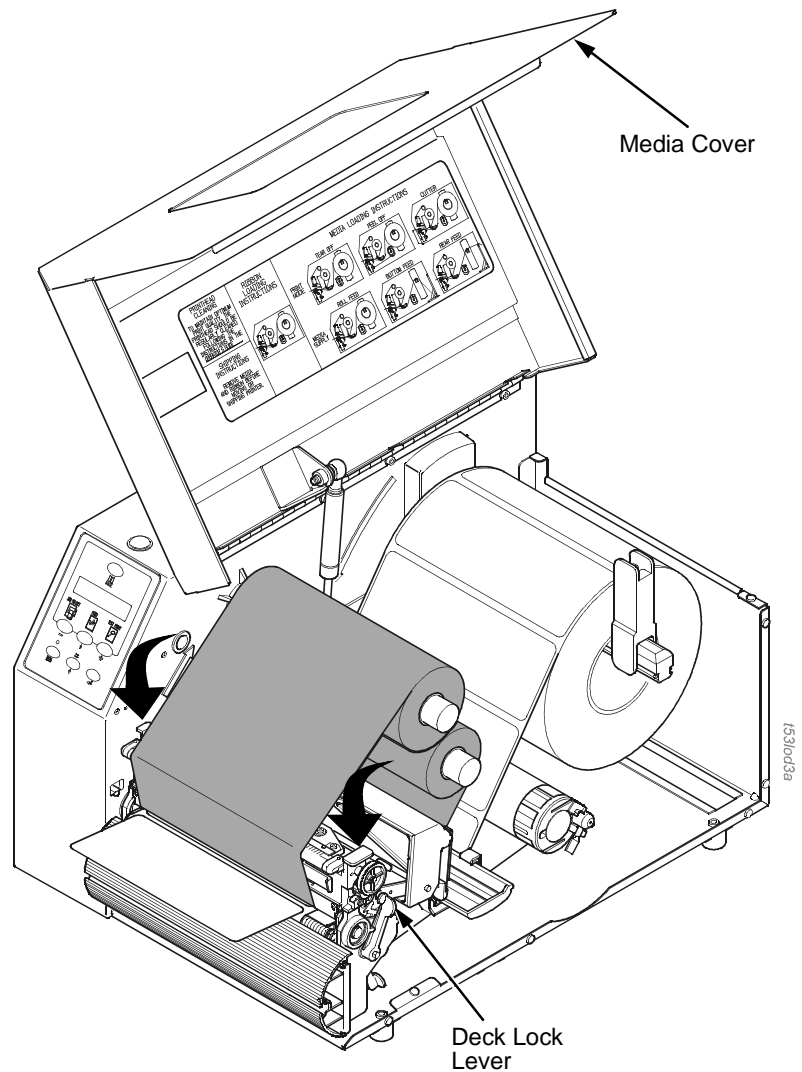


2. Thread the media over the front of the media guide and through the opening under the front door toward the internal rewriter.

IMPORTANT If you do not complete the following step, it will be extremely difficult to remove the printed labels from the rewriter.



3. Turn the release lever on the rewriter counterclockwise and lock it in place. This forms a raised ridge along the width of the rewriter.
4. Insert the leading edge of the media into the closest slot of the rewriter, and slide the media against the back flange.
5. Hold the media edge in the slot and manually rotate the rewriter one full revolution counterclockwise until the media is taut.

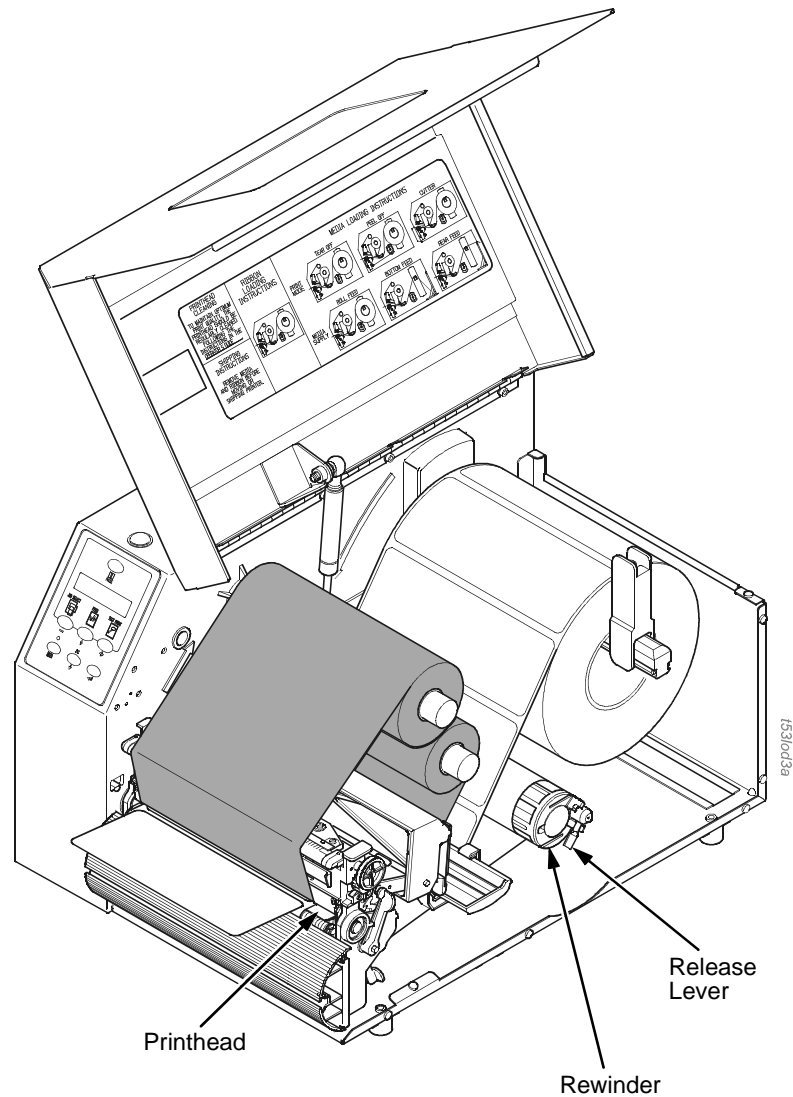


6. Press down on both sides of the pivoting deck and rotate the deck lock lever counterclockwise against its stop to place the printhead assembly into the printing position.
7. Press the FEED key to advance the media to the next TOF (Top-of-Form) position.
8. Press the PAUSE key until "ONLINE" displays.
9. Close the media cover.

IMPORTANT

The rewinder supports a maximum diameter of 5 inches of printed labels. Exceeding this diameter can cause the printed labels to rub on the bottom pan.

Removing Printed Media from the Rewinder



1. Open the media cover.
2. Press the FEED key to advance the last printed label past the printhead, and tear the liner from behind the last printed label.
3. Manually rewind the remaining printed labels onto the rewriter by turning the rewriter counterclockwise.
4. Turn the release lever on the rewriter clockwise.
5. Slide the roll of printed labels off the rewriter.

Label Peel-Off

You can set up the printer to automatically peel die-cut labels off their liner (backing) and dispense them one at a time while rewinding the liner.

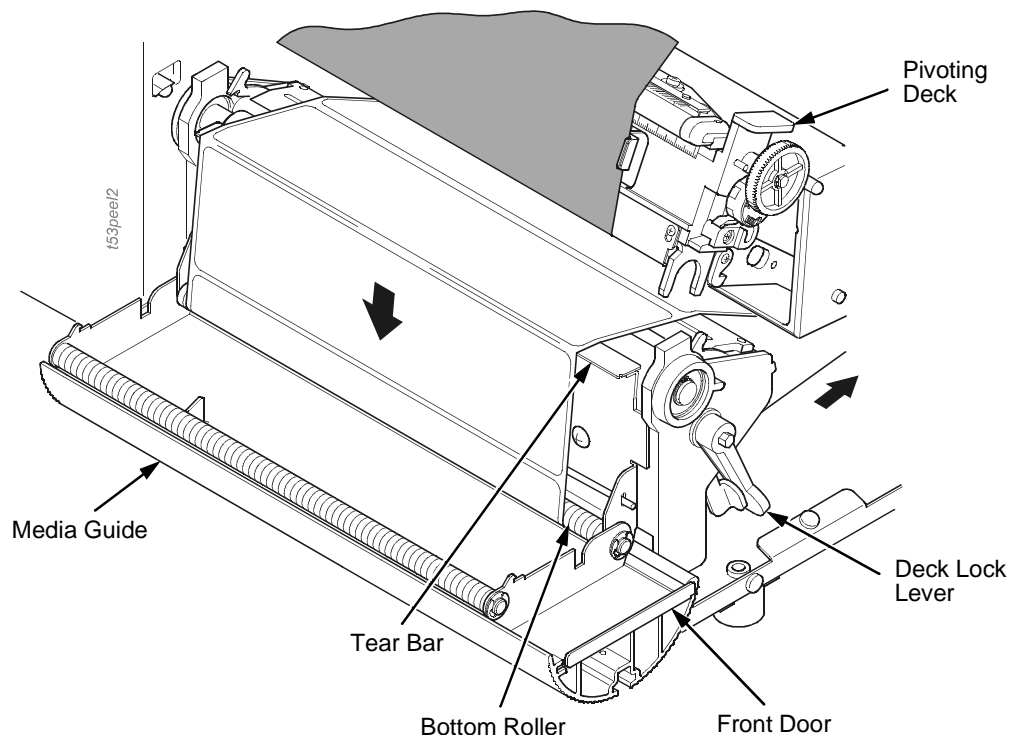
You can install the media guide to prevent long labels from accidentally adhering to the front door assembly, but it is normally not needed when using labels less than two inches long (see “Installing The Media Guide” on page 50).

Configuring the Printer Menu

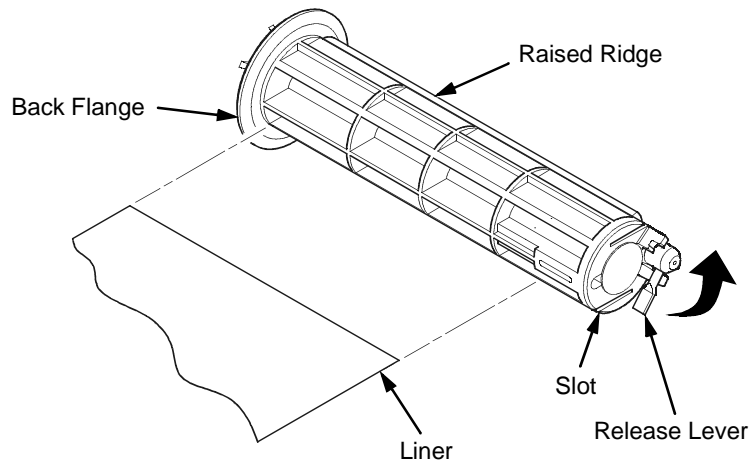
1. Set Media Handling to “Peel-Off” under the MEDIA CONTROL Main Menu. (See Chapter 3, “Configuring The Printer” for more information.)
2. Press the PAUSE key until “OFFLINE” displays.

Loading Media

1. If you want to install the media guide to print long labels, do so now by completing the steps listed in “Installing The Media Guide” on page 50.
2. Open the media cover and refer to the Label Peel-Off illustration on the Ribbon and Media Loading instruction label on the inside of the cover.

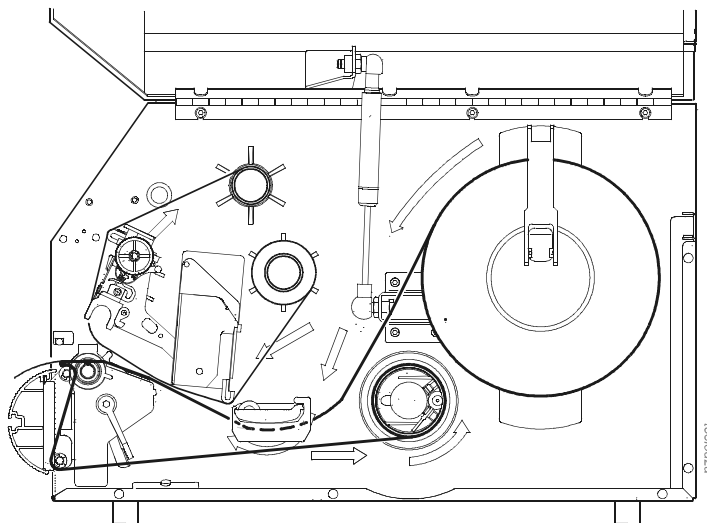


3. Open the front door by pulling it upward, then forward.
4. Open the pivoting deck by rotating the deck lock lever clockwise until the deck swings upward.
5. Thread the media (label and liner) over the tear bar and around the bottom roller, then through the opening at the bottom of the front door and into the printer.

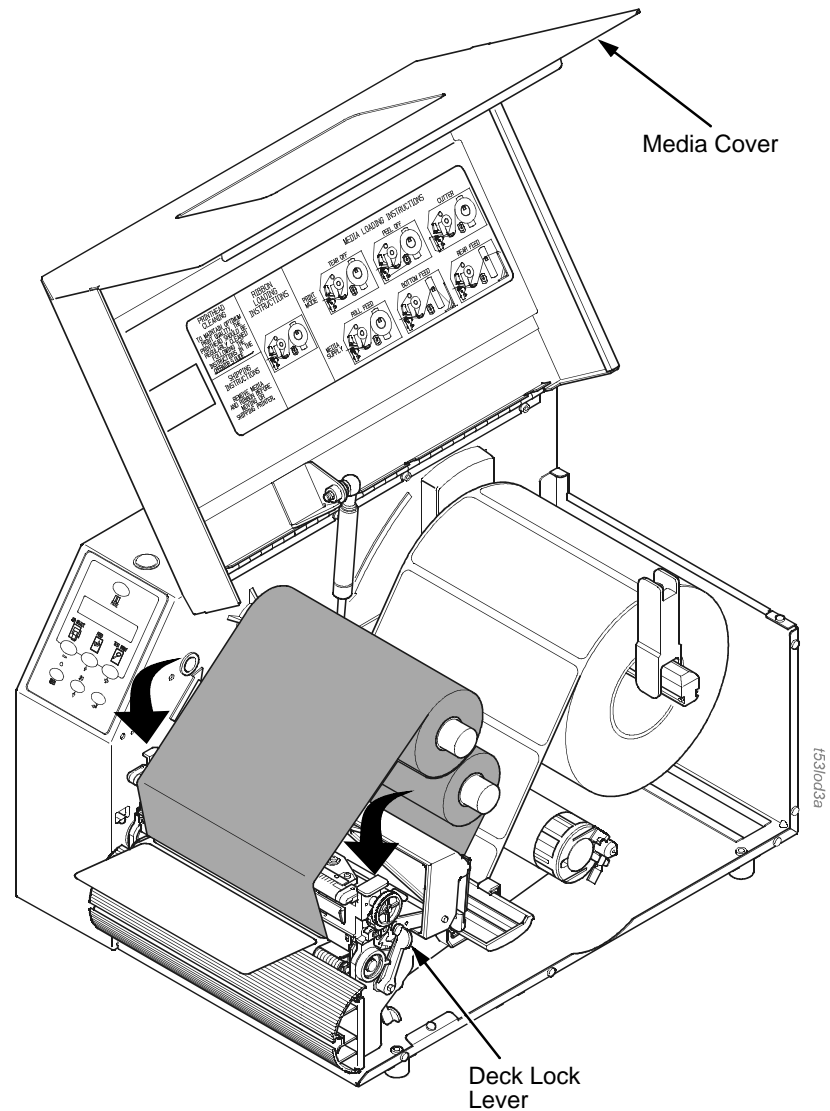


IMPORTANT If you do not complete the following step, it will be difficult to remove the liner from the rewinder.

6. Turn the release lever on the rewinder counterclockwise and lock it in place. This forms a raised ridge along the width of the rewinder.
7. Insert the leading edge of the media into the closest slot of the rewinder, and slide the media against the back flange.
8. Hold the media in the slot and rotate the rewinder one full revolution counterclockwise until the media is taut.
9. Remove labels from the liner so that behind the tear bar the liner is void of labels for about 1.5 inches and below the tear bar for about 2 inches.
10. Close the front door.



11. Complete the media routing as shown above.



12. Press down on both sides of the pivoting deck and rotate the deck lock lever fully counterclockwise.
13. Press the FEED key. The label advances to the peel-off position, and "Remove Label" displays on the LCD.
14. Manually remove the peeled label from the printer.
15. Press the PAUSE key until "ONLINE" displays.
16. Close the media cover.

IMPORTANT

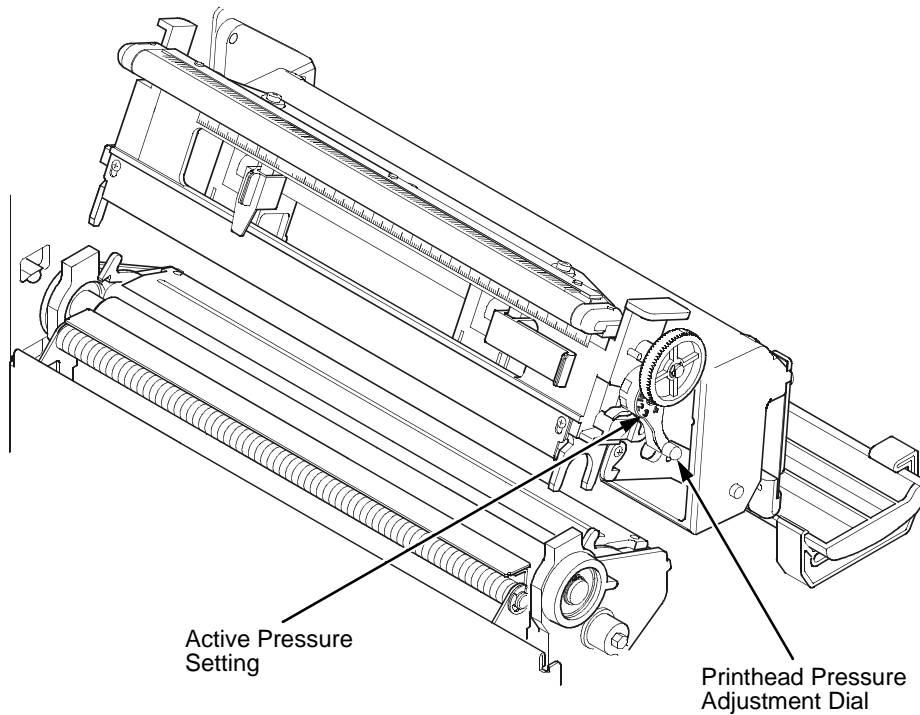
The rewinder supports a maximum diameter of 5 inches of liner. Exceeding this diameter can cause the liner to rub on the bottom pan. The rewinder is designed to support the full amount of liner from a standard 8-inch diameter media roll.

Removing Label Liner from the Rewinder

1. Open the media cover.
2. Open the front door.
3. Tear the liner at the tear bar.
4. Manually rewind the remaining liner onto the rewriter by turning the rewriter counterclockwise.
5. Turn the release lever on the rewriter clockwise.
6. Slide the roll of label liner off the rewriter and discard.

Printing Adjustments

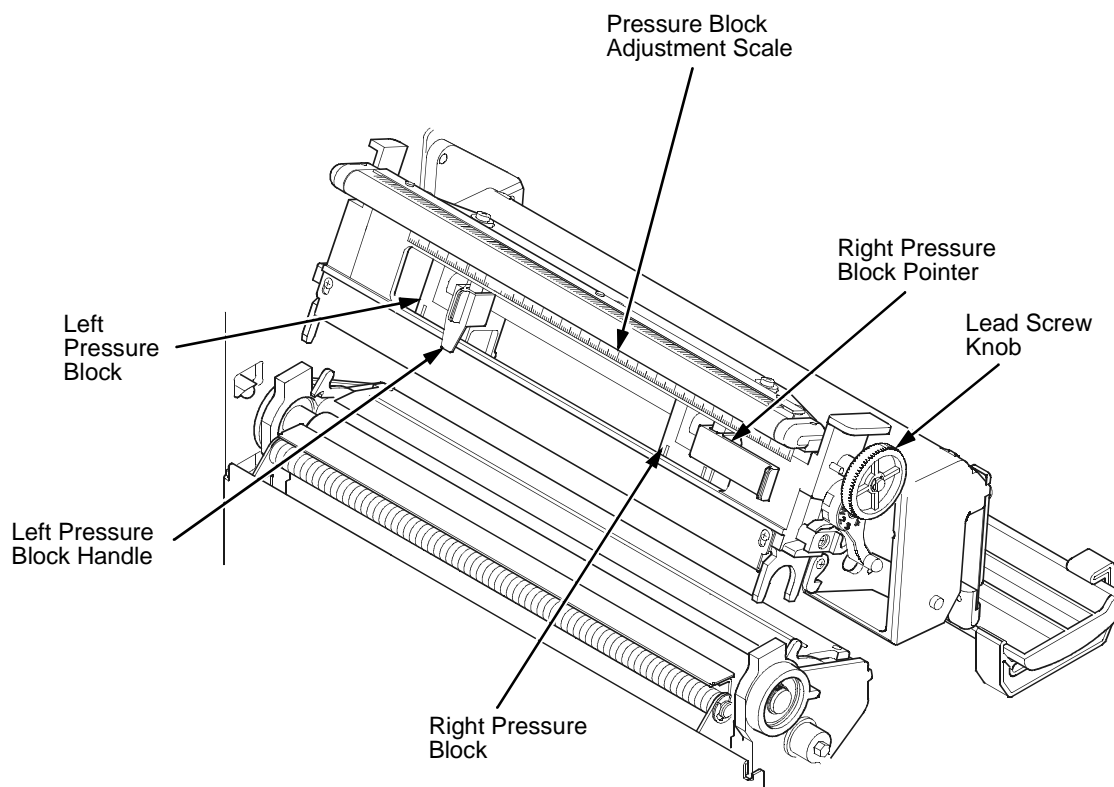
Printhead Pressure Adjustment



Sometimes you will need to adjust printhead pressure because of variations in media thickness and width. The printhead pressure adjustment dial is shown above. The value shown at the bottom of the dial is the active setting.

In general, adjust printhead pressure to the lowest value which produces the desired print quality. Die cut labels usually require a setting of 4, while heavy stock requires a setting of 6 to max. The numbers on the Printhead Pressure Adjustment Lever are relative only and do not indicate a specific printhead pressure or media thickness. By following this procedure, you will minimize printhead wear.

Printhead Pressure Block Adjustments



Printhead Pressure Block adjustments are used to obtain a uniform print density across the width of the installed media under a variety of media and ribbon conditions.

Left Pressure Block

Under normal printing conditions, the left block should be set with its handle aligned with the bold mark on the pressure block adjustment scale. When using media or ribbon widths less than one-third the printer's maximum printing width, you may need to manually slide the left pressure block further to the left.

Right Pressure Block

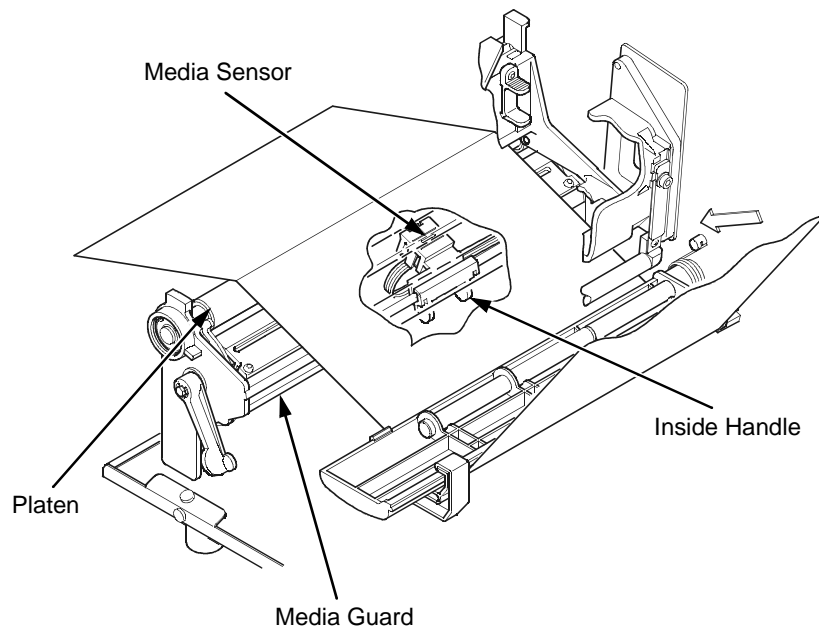
This block should be positioned with its pointer (handle on 4 inch printer models) near the right edge of the media or ribbon in use. Turn the Lead Screw Knob clockwise to move the block right or counterclockwise to move it left.

Check the pressure block positioning by printing the Grey test pattern:

1. Press the PAUSE key until "OFFLINE" appears on the LCD.
2. Press the TEST PRINT key until "Printer Tests/Grey" displays.

3. Press the ⏏ key to start the Grey test pattern. The pattern will start and continue to print.
4. Press the ⏏ key to stop printing.
5. Check the test pattern. If necessary reposition the pressure blocks to obtain a uniform print density across the media width. In most cases, only the right pressure block may need to be adjusted.
6. Whenever you reposition a pressure block, run the Grey test pattern to verify the print pattern is acceptable.

Positioning The Media Sensor

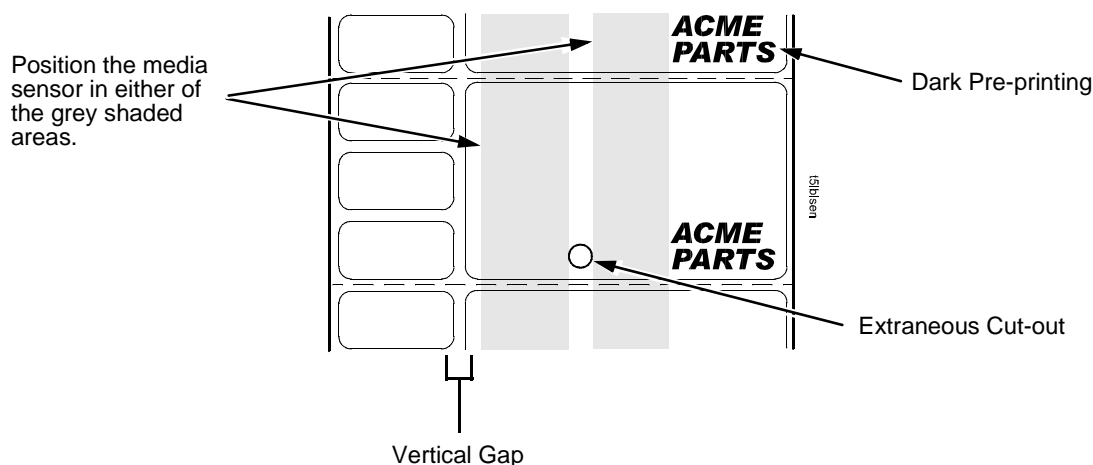


Your printer is equipped with a media sensor that is used to detect the top-of-form position on media that has label length indicators (gaps, notches, holes, or black marks) and detect when a Paper Out condition exists.

Use the handles on the media sensor to horizontally position it in the center of the label length indicators on the installed media. When using media with **no** label length indicators, position the sensor in the center of the media so it can detect when a Paper Out condition exists.

Check the horizontal position of the media sensor by looking through the long narrow opening in the media guard located behind the platen (rubber roller). Place the center of the black portion of the sensor directly under the notch, hole or black mark on the installed media. You can also use the left edge of the inside sensor handle as a reference and set it 1/4 inch to the left of the desired location on the installed media.

NOTE: The media sensor should not be placed in the path of media features that could cause false gap detection or paper out faults. Such features are dark pre-printing, rounded die-cut label corners, vertical gaps associated with side-by-side labels, and extraneous cut-outs, as shown below.



Sensing Different Media Types

The printer's Media Sensor can detect the different types of label length indicators on a large variety of media types. This is accomplished by selecting the correct sensor option: Gap, Mark or Disable under Gap/Mark Sensor in the CALIBRATE CTRL menu. Figure 10 on page 271 illustrates the different media types and label length indicators used on them.

1. Press \equiv to place the printer in Menu mode.
2. Press \downarrow and \leftarrow together until "ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED" displays.
3. Press the \equiv key until "CALIBRATE CTRL" displays.
4. Press the \downarrow key until "Gap/Mark Sensor/ Disable*" (the currently enabled) option displays.
5. Press the $+$ key or $-$ key until the option that matches the type of label length indicators on the installed media displays. The different Gap/Mark Sensor options are described below:
 - **Gap** - Select when using media with a liner space between die-cut labels or when using tag stock with notches or holes as label length indicators.
 - **Mark** - Select when using media that has horizontal black marks located on the underside of the label liner or tag stock.
 - **Disable** - Select when using media with no label length indicators (no gaps, notches, holes, or black marks), or when you want the printer to ignore all existing label length indicators on the installed media.

NOTE: When you select Disable, the length of each label is based on the Label Length value entered in the MEDIA CONTROL menu or the value sent via host software.

6. Press the \downarrow key to enable the displayed option. An asterisk (*) appears next to the selection.
7. Press the PAUSE key until "OFFLINE" appears on the LCD.
8. Review the Calibrating the Media Sensor section below.
9. Perform the Auto Calibrate procedure on page 63.

Calibrating The Media Sensor

Due to manufacturing differences in media and ribbon, the Media Sensor may have difficulty distinguishing the difference between the label and the liner or the label and the black mark. When this occurs, the printer may intermittently skip a label or display a fault message such as "GAP NOT DETECTED/See Manual" or "PAPER OUT/Load Paper."

Media Sensor sensitivity and reliability can be improved by changing the Gap/Mark Threshold and/or Paper Out Threshold values. These values can be changed automatically by performing the Auto Calibrate or Manual Calibrate procedure in the CALIBRATE CTRL menu or changed manually by entering your own Gap/Mark Threshold or Paper Out Threshold values. The changes in values take effect immediately within the current configuration menu.

Auto or Manual Calibrate is completed successfully when the displayed Sensed Distance value correctly matches that of the installed media. When Gap is selected the Sensed Distance should match the length from the trailing edge of one gap to the trailing edge of the next gap (or one label + one gap). When Mark is selected the Sensed Distance should match the length from the leading edge of one black mark to the leading edge of the next black mark.

When you have completed Auto or Manual Calibrate, you can verify the new values are correct by pressing the control panel FEED key several times. Each time the key is pressed, media should advance one label and stop at the correct Top-of-Form position of the next label.

Once the correct values are confirmed, they should be saved to the desired configuration menu before powering off the printer. See "Saving A Configuration" on page 72.

Running Auto Calibrate

Auto Calibrate can be initialized via the TEST PRINT key (described in detail below), or via the CALIBRATE CTRL or DIAGNOSTIC menus in Menu mode.

NOTE: Verify that the CALIBRATE CTRL menu Gap/Mark Sensor option (Gap, Mark, or Disable), matches the installed media. See "Sensing Different Media Types" on page 62.

Check that the Media Sensor is horizontally positioned to permit sensing of the label length indicators. See "Positioning The Media Sensor" on page 61.

If you try to do an Auto Calibrate when Peel-Off Media Handling is enabled, the LCD will display, "CANNOT CALIBRATE/Disable Peel-Off." Before you can do an Auto Calibrate, you must select another media handling mode.

1. Press the PAUSE key until "OFFLINE" appears on the LCD.

2. Press the ↓ key and ↵ key together until “ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED” displays.
3. Press the TEST PRINT key until “Printer Tests/Auto Calibrate” displays.
4. Press the ↵ key. Media advances until it can accurately detect the label length indicators and then stops at the Top-of-Form position. The Sensed Distance will then display for 1 second.
5. Auto Calibrate is successful when the Sensed Distance value correctly matches that of the installed media.
 - **Gap/Mark Sensor = Gap:** The Sensed Distance value is the physical length of one label plus the length of one gap.
 - **Gap/Mark Sensor = Mark:** The Sensed Distance value is the physical distance from the leading edge of one black mark to the leading edge of the next.
 - **Gap/Mark Sensor = Disable:** Not applicable. If Gap/Mark Sensor is set to Disable, the Sensed Distance value will not be updated.

If “GAP NOT DETECTED” displays you should run Auto Calibrate again.

If Auto Calibrate continues to end with an incorrect Sensed Distance value displayed or a fault message displayed, you should run Manual Calibrate as described on page 66 or see Table 15 on page 257.

NOTE: The amount of media sampled during Auto Calibrate is based on the length of a label and transitions detected, without error, between a label and its label length indicators.

6. Press the PAUSE key until “OFFLINE” displays.
7. Press the FEED key several times. Each time the FEED key is pressed the media should advance one label length and stop.

NOTE: After a form feed, the position of the leading edge of the next label depends on the type of Media Handling Mode selected under the MEDIA CONTROL menu. Tear-Off and Tear-Off Strip Media Handling will position the label edge at the tear bar, while Continuous will position the label edge under the printhead.

8. Press the PAUSE key until “ONLINE” displays.

Once the Sensed Distance value is confirmed, you will need to save it to the desired configuration menu before powering off the printer. See “Saving A Configuration” on page 72.

Running Media Profile

This feature provides a profile printout showing the relationship of the Paper Out Threshold and the Gap/Mark Threshold values and illustrates if and when each label length indicator is detected and the contrast difference between the label length indicators and the label. The profile printout (see Figure 1 on page 65) assists you in setting the thresholds for difficult media. This includes pre-printed labels and labels with poor gap/media dynamic range.

Once Media Profile is initiated, the printer will continue to advance media and print the profile in landscape until the ↵ key is pressed to stop printing.

NOTE: Verify that the CALIBRATE CTRL menu Gap/Mark Sensor option (Gap, Mark or Disable) matches the installed media. See “Sensing Different Media Types” on page 62.

You will need a minimum installed label width of two inches to support the Profile printout.

Check that the Media Sensor is horizontally positioned to permit sensing of the label length indicators. See “Positioning The Media Sensor” on page 61.

Check that the Print Mode option selected in the MEDIA CONTROL menu matches the media installed. Select “Direct” for heat sensitive media (no ribbon required) or “Transfer” for Thermal Transfer media (ribbon required).

1. Press \equiv to place the printer in Menu mode.
2. Press the \downarrow key and \leftarrow key together until “ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED” displays.
3. Press the \equiv key until “CALIBRATE CTRL” displays.
4. Press the \downarrow key until “Media Profile/Profile Print” displays and then press the \leftarrow key. (The printer will continue to print the profile until the \leftarrow key is pressed.)

The printer will advance media and continue to print a dynamic profile image depicting the relationship of the label and any label length indicators detected.

5. Press the \leftarrow key. The printer will stop printing.
6. Press the PAUSE key until “OFFLINE” displays.

NOTE: The Gap/Mark and Paper Out Threshold values shown on the Profile printout represent the last values determined from a successful Auto or Manual Calibrate, or the factory default values if no Auto or Manual Calibrate was performed.

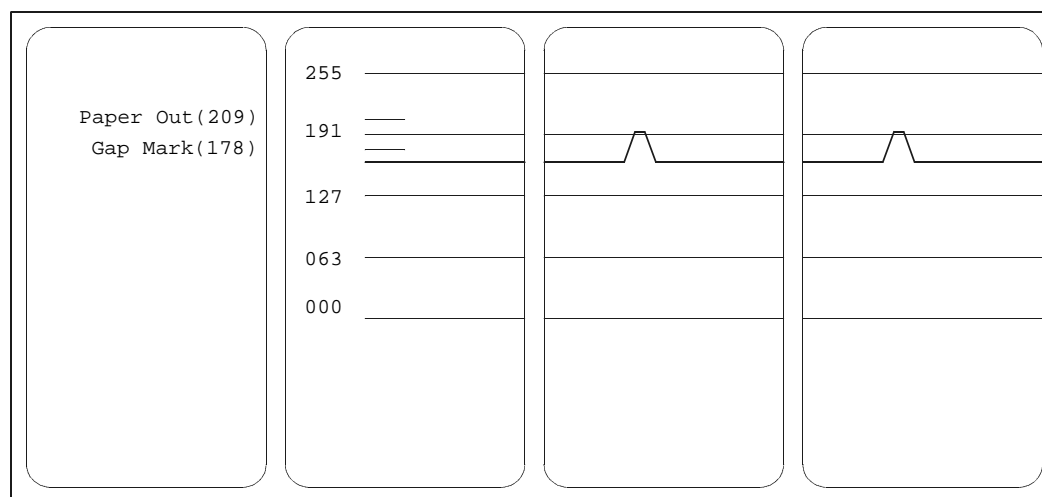


Figure 1. Media Profile Printout

Running Manual Calibrate












Manual Calibrate should be performed only when the values derived from Auto Calibrate fail to improve the media sensor's ability to sense label length indicators on the installed media. You must first enable Advanced User in the PRINTER CONTROL menu before accessing or initializing Manual Calibrate in the CALIBRATE CTRL menu.

NOTE: Verify that the CALIBRATE CTRL menu Gap/Mark Sensor option (Gap, Mark, or Disable), matches the installed media. See "Sensing Different Media Types" on page 62.

Check that the Media Sensor is horizontally positioned to permit sensing of the label length indicators. See "Positioning The Media Sensor" on page 61.

Check that the Print Mode option selected in the MEDIA CONTROL menu matches the media installed. Select "Direct" for heat sensitive media (no ribbon required) or "Transfer" for Thermal Transfer media (ribbon required).

If you try to do a Manual Calibrate when Peel-Off Media Handling is enabled, the LCD will display, "CANNOT CALIBRATE/Disable Peel-Off." Before you can do a Manual Calibrate, you must select another media handling mode.

1. Press  to place the printer in Menu mode.
2. Press the  key and  key together until "ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED" displays.
3. Press the  key until "PRINTER CONTROL" displays.
4. Press the  key until "Advanced User" displays and then press the  key until "Enable" displays.
5. Press the  key to select Enable - an asterisk (*) appears next to Enable.
6. Press the  key until "CALIBRATE CTRL" displays.
7. Press the  key until "Manual Calibrate/Run Calibrate" displays and then press the  key.
8. Follow the instructions displayed on the LCD. Example: "REMOVE RBN&MEDIA/Press Enter" indicates that you must open the pivoting deck and remove the ribbon and media from under the printhead, close and lock the pivoting deck, and press the ENTER  key.
9. During the last step of Manual Calibrate the printer will advance the media and attempt to detect the label length indicators and stop at the Top-of-Form position. The Sensed Distance value will then display for 1 second. The Calibrate is successful when the Sensed Distance value correctly matches that of the installed media. If "CALIBRATION FAIL/ See Manual" displays, you should run Manual Calibrate again.

NOTE: The amount of media sampled during Manual Calibrate is based on the length of a label and the transitions detected without error, between a label and its label length indicators.

10. Press the PAUSE key until "OFFLINE" displays.

11. Press the FEED key several times. Each time the FEED key is pressed the media should advance one label length and stop.

NOTE: After a form feed, the position of the leading edge of the next label depends on the type of Media Handling Mode selected under the MEDIA CONTROL menu. Tear-Off and Tear-Off Strip Media Handling will position the label edge at the tear bar, while Continuous will position the label edge under the printhead.

12. Once the correct values are confirmed, you will need to save them to the desired configuration menu before powering off the printer. See “Saving A Configuration” on page 72.

Cleaning

Depending on the media used, the printer may accumulate residues (media dust, adhesives, etc.) as a by-product of the normal printing process. To maintain top printing quality, these residues should be removed by a periodic cleaning of the printer.

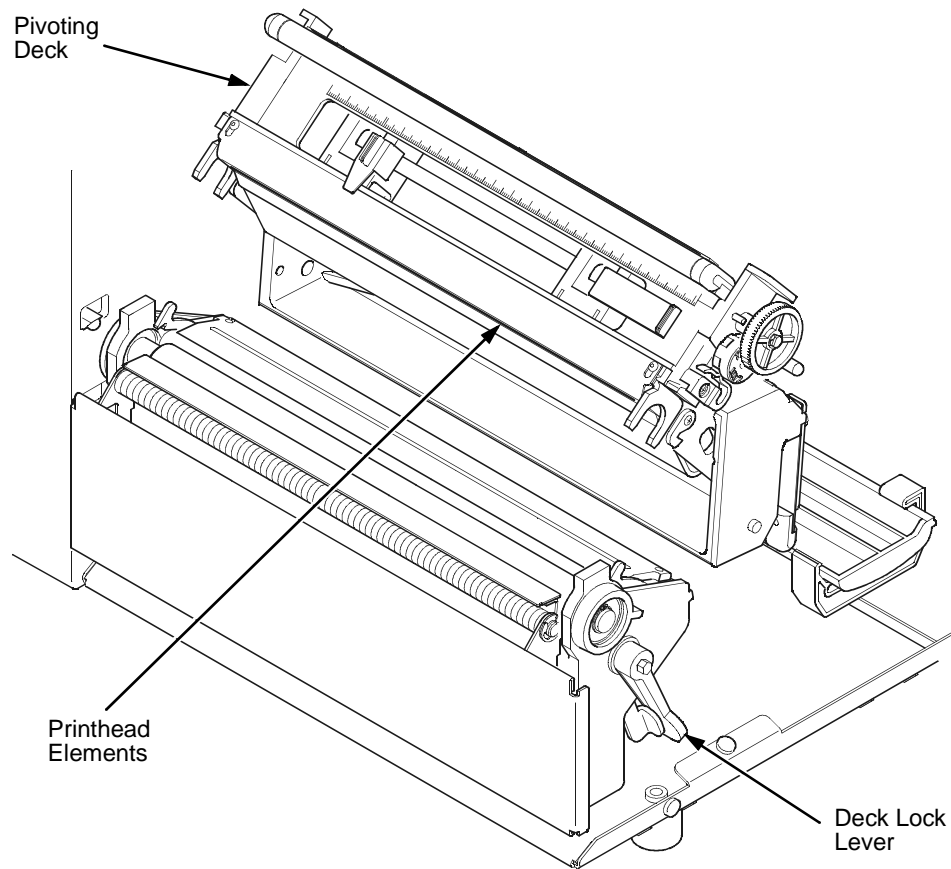
General Cleaning

Periodic cleaning should be performed on all rollers, guides, and assemblies. Low pressure air can be used to remove dust in the printer. Isopropyl alcohol and a cotton swab should be used to clean any areas where media dust, adhesives, etc. have accumulated. This general cleaning will insure that all parts are free of residue which may degrade print quality.

The media path and printhead should be cleaned each time a new roll of media is installed in the printer.

Printhead Cleaning

As you use your printer, the printhead may become dirty resulting in poor print quality. You should clean the printhead each time you install new ribbon (thermal transfer print mode) or install new media (direct thermal print mode). Clean the printhead with the printhead Cleaning Pen supplied with the printer. The printhead heating elements (light brown area) are most important. Keeping your printhead clean will help to maintain its life.



1. Rotate the deck lock clockwise to open the pivoting deck and remove any media and ribbon (if loaded) to gain access to the printhead assembly heating element area.
2. Gently rub the felt tip of the Cleaning Pen or a cotton swab with Isopropyl alcohol across the printhead heating elements (light brown area).
3. Allow the printhead to dry for one minute before reloading the media and ribbon.

3

Configuring The Printer

Overview

The configuration process is done using the printer configuration keys on the control panel and includes the following:

- Configuring the printer for different host interface options
- Customizing label formats
- Checking printer status
- Running various maintenance tests

NOTE: Control codes sent by the host system will override the control panel settings.

This section explains how to use the control panel to change individual settings and save them as a customized configuration. For details on the control panel keys and how they work, see “Controls And Indicators” on page 29.

Pressing ↓ and ↵ together unlocks or locks the printer menu (menu mode only) and permits value selection. This is the default key combination for locking/unlocking the printer. You can change the key combination. See “Set Lock Key” on page 121.

Setting Printer Configuration Parameters

Configuration parameters are set from the control panel or are retrieved from the printer’s memory. The parameters define how the printer will respond to command and interface signals from the host computer.

The configuration menu structure consists of main menus and the options applicable to each menu.

NOTE: Some configurations refer to printer options that may not be present in your printer. Selecting an option or feature that is not present will result in no action being performed by the printer or an “OPTION NOT INSTALLED” message will display on the LCD.



Moving Within The Configuration Menu

You can move through the configuration menus using the appropriate navigation keys, as shown in Figure 2. (See “Controls And Indicators” on page 29 for more details on the function of the operator panel keys.)

You can select different options and save them as the power on default; however, you can only save them to configuration menus 1-8. The factory configuration menu can be altered, but not saved.

When the printer is online, the first line of the LCD displays “ONLINE” and the second line lists the active interface port and type of emulation.

To configure the printer:

1. Press the  key to enter the printer configuration menu system. “MENU MODE/VALIDATOR” displays on the LCD.
2. You can move through configuration main menus in two ways:
 - Press the  key to move to the right
 - Press the + key to move right or the - key to move left







Step	Press	LCD	Notes
1	 PAUSE	OFFLINE	Allows you to make configuration changes.
2		ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED	
3	 :— :— :—	MENU MODE VALIDATOR	
4	 :— :— :—	MENU MODE MEDIA CONTROL	Selects the MEDIA CONTROL main menu.
5	 UNTIL	Print Mode Transfer*	Cycles through the choices.
6	+ or —	Print Mode Direct	
7		Print Mode Direct*	Selects the Direct transfer mode.

Figure 2. Moving within the Configuration Menu

Selecting A Menu Option

To select an option, you need to press the ↵ key. By default, however, the ↵ key is “locked” when the printer is turned on to prevent accidental changes to the configuration menu. If you press the ↵ key when the key is locked, the message “ENTER SWITCH LOCKED” displays on the LCD for one second, and the value will not be selected.

To unlock the ↵ key, press the ↓ and ↵ keys simultaneously. This toggles the enter lock function.

- If this function is performed while the ↵ key is locked, the message “ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED” displays for one second, and the ENTER key will be unlocked.
- If this function is performed while the ↵ key is unlocked, the message “ENTER SWITCH LOCKED” displays for one second, and the ↵ key will be locked.

When you press the ↵ key (with the ↵ key unlocked), you select the value or option that displays. An asterisk displays after the value you selected, and the configuration is changed immediately.

IMPORTANT

This change takes effect for all subsequent data and operations for the printer as soon as the ↵ (ENTER) key is pressed and the asterisk (*) is displayed. The configuration change(s), stay in effect only while the printer is powered on. When the power is turned off, all current configurations will be lost unless changes made to it are saved via the CONFIG. CONTROL menu.

To save configuration information permanently or to select it as the power-up default, see “Saving A Configuration” on page 72.

Changing Printer Settings

You can change (or “configure”) printer settings, such as print speed or emulations, through the control panel as follows:

1. Press the ≡ key until the following message displays.

MENU MODE
MEDIA CONTROL

2. Press the ↓ key to cycle through these options:

- Print Intensity
- Print Speed
- Print Mode
- Media Handling
- Paper Feed Shift
- Label Length
- Label Width

- Ver Image Shift
 - Hor Image Shift
 - Orientation
3. When the desired submenu displays, press the + or - key to scroll through the values or options.
 4. Press the ↵ key to select a value. An asterisk (*) displays next to the selected value or option.
 5. If there are more submenu values or options you want to change, use the ⏮, ⏭, ⏪, ⏩, and – keys to access the value and the ↵ key to select it. At any time, you may press the ⏮ key to return to the main menu.
 6. At any time, you may press the PAUSE key twice to exit the configuration menu and place the printer online. Once you have finished selecting all your options, save your configuration.

IMPORTANT

If you do not save your configuration, all your new values will be lost when you power off the printer.

Saving A Configuration

You can save up to eight different configurations to meet eight unique print job requirements.

The configurations are saved and stored in the printer and are not lost when the printer is turned off.

NOTE: If the Protect Configs. option is enabled, the new configuration will not be saved until the existing configuration is deleted.

Follow these steps to save a new configuration:

1. Press the ⏮ key until the following message displays:

MENU MODE
CONFIG. CONTROL

2. Press the ⏭ key until the following message displays:

Save Config.
1*

3. Press the - or + key to cycle through the options (1-8). Note that the factory default configuration is not listed.
4. When the desired number displays, press the ↵ key to select it. The following message displays briefly:

Saving
Configuration

When processing is completed, the display shows:

Save Config.
X*

NOTE: If the configuration number has been previously saved and Protect Configs. = Enabled under CONFIG CONTROL, the following error message displays:


CONFIG. EXISTS
Delete First

If the above occurs, see “Modifying A Saved Configuration” on page 74, step 4.


5. Print your configuration and store it in a safe place for future reference. Refer to “Printing A Configuration” on page 75.

Specifying A Power-Up Configuration


You can specify which of the nine configurations (1-8 or Factory) will be the power-up configuration:

1. Press the  key until the following message displays:

MENU MODE
CONFIG. CONTROL

2. Press the  key until the following message displays:

Power-Up Config.
1*

3. Press the - or + key to cycle through the options (1-8 and Factory). When the desired number displays, press the  key to select it. The following message displays:

Power-Up Config.
X*

NOTE: If the configuration number has not been saved previously, the following error message displays:

CONFIG. DOES NOT
EXIST/Save First

If this error message displays, see “Saving A Configuration” on page 72. Once you have saved a configuration, repeat the steps in this procedure.

Modifying A Saved Configuration

You can change a saved configuration by rewriting over it. For example, you can modify Config. 1, shown below. Suppose you want to keep all the settings but you want to select the parallel Centronics interface instead of the IEEE 1284 interface.

1. Load the configuration to be changed (for example, Config. 1).

- a. Press the \equiv key until the following message displays.

MENU MODE
CONFIG. CONTROL

- b. Press the \downarrow key until the following message displays.

Load Config.
Factory

- c. Press the + or - key to cycle through the options: Factory 1-8.
 - d. When the desired number displays, press the \downarrow key to select it. The following message displays:

Loading Saved
Configuration

Then, the following message displays when it is loaded:

Load Config.
X*

2. Move through the menu and change all the desired values. (In this example, press the \equiv key until PARALLEL PORT displays. Press the \downarrow key until Port Type/IEEE 1284 displays. Press the - key until Centronics displays.)
3. Press the \downarrow key to select each new value. An asterisk (*) displays.
4. Before saving the modified configuration, you must delete the original configuration if the Protect Configs. option is enabled.
 - a. Press the \uparrow or \downarrow key until the following message displays:

Delete Config.
1*

- b. Press the + or - key to cycle through the options (1-8). When the desired number displays, press the \downarrow key to select it. The following message is displayed.

Deleting
Configuration

Then, the following displays when it is deleted:


Delete Config.
X*

5. Save the new configuration as described in the “Saving A Configuration” on page 72. Make sure you select the same number (e.g., Config. 1) when saving the modified configuration. The new configuration writes over the existing one.
6. Print a copy of this newest configuration and store it in a safe place. Refer to the “Printing A Configuration” on page 75.


Printing A Configuration

It is recommended that you print and store your configurations for future reference. The printout provides a list of the parameters that were set when you configured the printer.

To print a configuration:

1. Press the  key until the following message displays.


MENU MODE
CONFIG. CONTROL

2. Press the  key until the following message displays:

Print Config.
Current*

3. Press the + or - key to cycle through the following printout options.

Current*
Factory
Power-Up
All
1-8 customized configurations

4. When the desired option displays, press the  key. The printer prints the specified configuration.

NOTE: If the configuration you want to print has not been saved, the following message will display momentarily:

CONFIG. DOES NOT
EXIST/Save First

This message indicates that no configuration menu has been saved under the configuration value you have selected and therefore cannot be printed. You must either select another configuration to print or load and then save a configuration to that configuration value first.

```

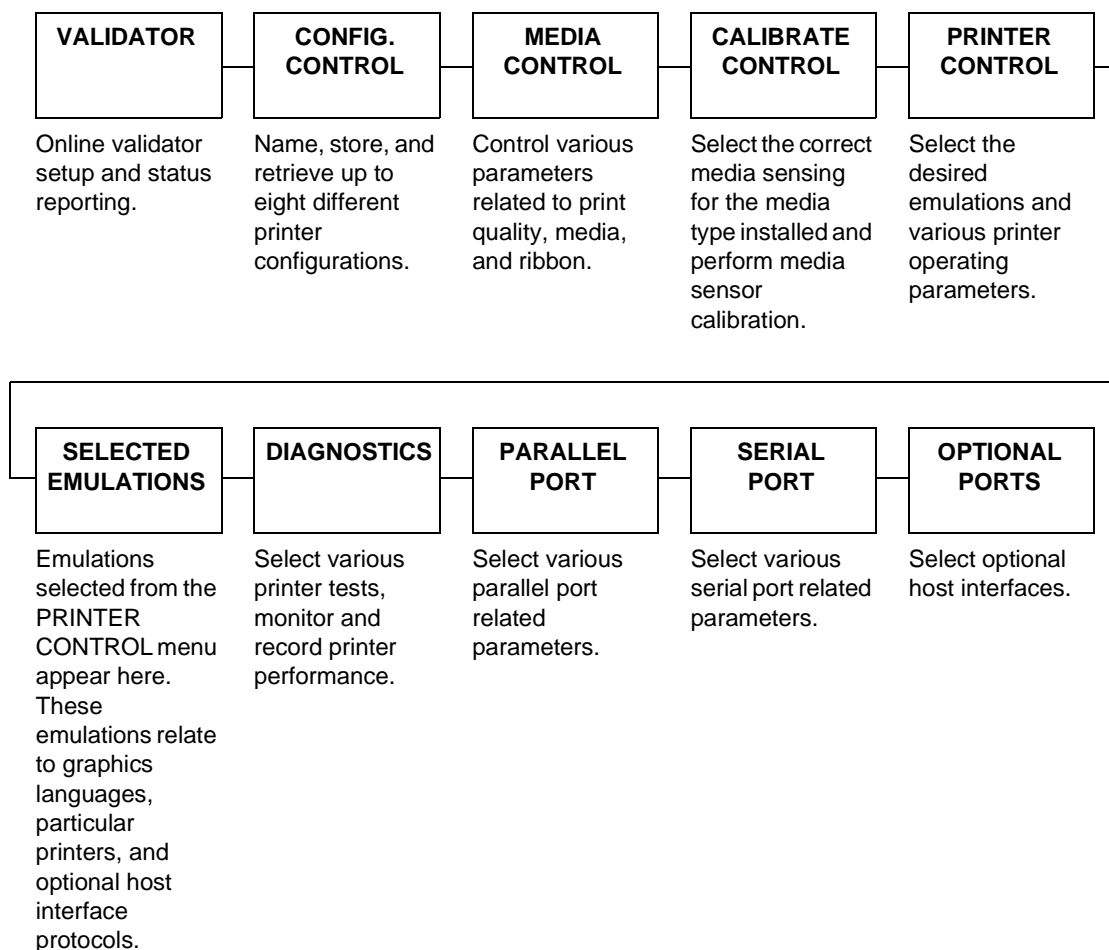
Program File Version 1.07G Part No. 358186
PGL/VGL Version 1.06F 25-Jun-01 Part No. 358182
LinePrinter+ Version 1.06F
BOOT/T5XXX V1.00K 11-Dec-00 #357198
FLASH 10 MB
DRAM 16 MB
SECURITY PAL 170837-017
VALIDATOR
  Validator Report
  Auto Report Disable
  Clear Data
  Good Barcodes 0
  Good Forms 0
  Overstrike Forms 0
  Average BMD 0%
  Last BMD 0%
  Validator Funct. Disable
  Telemetry Path Disabled
  Telemetry Data Short Report
  Number of Codes Auto
  Validator Action Retry Form
  Symbol Contrast Enable
  Quiet Zones Enable
  Min. Code Height 0.40 inches
  Form Spacing 0.6 inches
  Skip Labels Minimum
  F/W Revision
  Overstrike Style Grid
  I2of5 Checksum Disable
MEDIA CONTROL
  Print Intensity -3
  Print Speed 6 ips
  Print Mode Transfer
  Media Handling Continuous
  Paper Feed Shift 0.00 inches
  Label Length 06.0 inches
  Label Width 08.5 inches
  Ver Image Shift 0.00 inches
  Hor Image Shift 0.00 inches
  Orientation Portrait
CALIBRATE CTRL
  Gap/Mark Sensor Disable
  Auto Calibrate Run Calibrate
  Media Profile Print Profile
  Sensed Distance 0.00 inches
  Gap/Mark Thresh 171
  Paper Out Thresh 250
PRINTER CONTROL
  LP+ Emulation P-Series
  Active IGP Emul IGP/PGL
  Power Saver Time 15 minutes
  Display Language English
  Del Char from Fls
  Ld Char from Fls
  Save Char to Fls
  Del Char from RAM
  Ld Char at PwrUp Disable
  Del Set from Fls
  Ld Set from Fls
  Save Set to Fls
  Del Set from RAM
  Ld Set at PwrUp Disable
  Alarm On
  Power-up State Online
  Ptx Setup SFCC 21h
  Overwrite Files Enable
  View File List


```



Figure 3. Sample Configuration Printout

Optimize&Reboot			
Print File List			
Cancel Key	Disable		
Compatibility	Default		
Advanced User	Disable		
RAM Disk Size	100 KB		
IGP/PGL SETUP			
Character Group	Standard Sets		
Standard Sets	0) ASCII		
Arabic Sets	ASMO 449		
Cyrillic Sets	Code Page 866		
European Sets	Latin 2 8859-2		
Greek Sets	DEC 256 Greek		
Hebrew Sets	Hebrew 01d		
Turkish Sets	Data Gen. Turk.		
Select LPI	6		
Define CR Code	CR = CR		
Define LF Code	LF = LF		
Autowrap	Disable		
Auto Uppercase	Disable		
Slash 0	Disable		
Select SFCC	126		
P-SERIES SETUP			
Select CPI	10.0 CPI		
Select LPI	6.0 LPI		
Typeface	Letter Gothic		
Character Group	Standard Sets		
Character Set	IBM PC		
Arabic Sets	ASMO 449		
Cyrillic Sets	Cyrillic 866		
European Sets	Latin 2 8859-2		
Greek Sets	DEC 256 Greek		
Hebrew Sets	Hebrew 01d		
Turkish Sets	Data Gen. Turk.		
Primary Subset	ASCII (USA)		
Multinational	ASCII (USA)		
Primary Subset	ASCII (USA)		
DEC Mult.	ASCII (USA)		
Extended Subset	Code Page 437		
Extended Subset	Multinational		
Horizontal DPI	120 DPI		
Vertical DPI	72 DPI		
Prop. Spacing	Enable		
Italic Print	Disable		
Slashed Zero	Disable		
Left Margin	0 characters		
Right Margin	0 characters		
Top Margin	0 linespaces		
Bottom Margin	0 linespaces		
Print Char. Set			
Define CR code	CR = CR		
Auto LF	Disable		
Define LF code	LF = CR + LF		
DIAGNOSTICS			
Printer Tests		Auto Calibrate	
Test Count		Continuous	
Software Build		358186 V1.07G	
Hex Dump Mode		Disable	
Print Error Log			
Clear Error Log			
System Memory		16 Megabytes	
Ptr On Time		67.0 Hours	
Ptr Print Dist		48838 Inches	
Head Pnt Dist		259 Inches	
Head On Time		.1 Hours	
Reset Head Data			
Head Type		300 DPI	
Head Voltage		24.20±0.48 volts	
PARALLEL PORT			
Port Type		IEEE 1284	
Buffer Size in K		16	
Trickle Time		1/4 sec	
Timeout		10 sec.	
Report Status		Disable	
CENTRONICS			
TOF Action		Reset	
Buffer Size in K		16	
DATA/PRODUCTS			
Data Bit 8		Enable	
PI Ignored		Enable	
Data Polarity		Standard	
Resp. Polarity		Standard	
Latch Data On		Middle	
Buffer Size in K		16	
IEEE 1284			
Buffer Size in K		16	
SERIAL PORT			
Port Type		RS 232	
Baud Rate		9600 BAUD	
Word Length		8	
Stop Bits		1	
Parity		None	
Data Protocol		XON / XOFF	
Buffer Size in K		16	
Trickle Time		1/4 sec	
Timeout		10 sec.	
Report Status		Disable	
SERIAL PORT			
Interface Type		RS 232	
Data Protocol		XON / XOFF	
Baud Rate		9600 BAUD	
Word Length		8	
Stop Bits		1	
Parity		None	
Buffer Size in K		16	

Menu Overview



Press  to select the next main menu.


Press  or  to move within each main menu.

Main Menu

VALIDATOR (page 84)	CONFIG. CONTROL (page 91)	MEDIA CONTROL (page 94)	CALIBRATE CONTROL (page 108)
Validator Report Auto Report Clear Data Good Barcodes Good Forms Overstrike Forms Average BWD Last BWD Validator Funct. Telemetry Path Telemetry Data Number of Codes Validator Action Symbol Contrast Quiet Zones <i>Decodeability</i> <i>Percent Decode</i> <i>Defects</i> Min. Code Height Form Spacing Skip Labels F/W Revision Overstrike Style <i>Scanner Settings</i> <i>Beam Shift</i> I2of5 Checksum Num Retry	Load Config. Save Config. Print Config. Delete Config. Power-Up Config. Protect Configs. Name Config 1 Name Config 2 Name Config 3 Name Config 4 Name Config 5 Name Config 6 Name Config 7 Name Config 8 Reset Cfg Names	Print Intensity Print Speed Print Mode Media Handling Paper Feed Shift Label Length Label Width Ver Image Shift Hor Image Shift Orientation <i>Auto Map Select</i> <i>Auto Label Width</i> <i>Num Auto Labels</i> <i>Slew Speed</i> <i>Print Direction</i> <i>Tear-Strip Time</i> <i>Pre-Peel Mode</i> <i>Pre-Peel Adjust</i> <i>Clip Page</i> <i>Error Recover</i> <i>Ribbon Width</i> <i>Display Ribbon</i> <i>Ribbon Low</i> <i>Rbn Takeup Full</i> <i>Units</i> <i>Set Label Length</i> <i>Cutter Type</i>	Gap/Mark Sensor Auto Calibrate Media Profile Sensed Distance Gap/Mark Thresh Paper Out Thresh <i>Manual Calibrate</i> <i>Pwr Up Auto-Cal</i> <i>Online Auto-Cal</i> <i>Gap Windowing</i> <i>Gap Length</i> <i>Cal in Peel Mode</i>

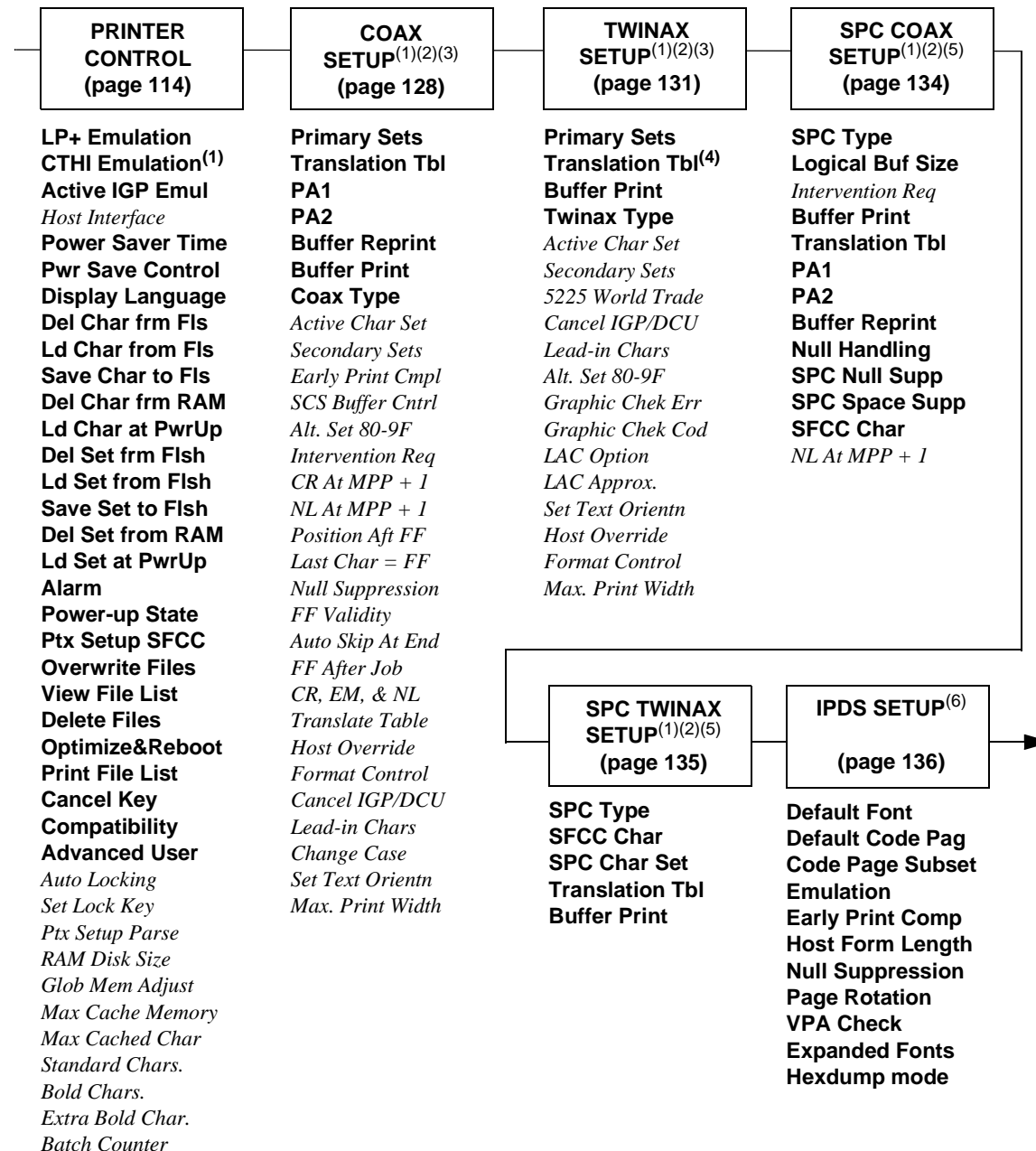
NOTES:

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (under PRINTER CONTROL).

Press  to select the next main menu.

Press ↓ or ↑ to move within each main menu.

Press + or - to cycle through each possible menu item value.

**NOTES:**

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (under PRINTER CONTROL).

¹ Appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

² Appears only if selected as the Port Type (under C/T PORT).

³ Appears only if the CTHI emulation (under PRINTER CONTROL) is set to Standard.

⁴ Does not appear if the IPDS emulation is installed.

⁵ Appears only if the CTHI emulation (under PRINTER CONTROL) is set to Simp Prot Conv.

⁶ Appears only if the IPDS emulation is installed.



NOTES:

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (under PRINTER CONTROL).

¹ Appears only if the TN5250 emulation is installed.

² Does not appear if the IPDS emulation is installed.

³ The presence of these menu items depends on the Active IGP Emul selection (under PRINTER CONTROL).

⁴ The presence of these menu items depends on the LP+ Emulation selection (under PRINTER CONTROL).

⁵ Does not display when the CT emulation is selected.

P-SER XQ SETUP ⁽¹⁾ (page 148)	SER MATRIX SETUP ⁽¹⁾ (page 150)	PROPRINTER SETUP ⁽¹⁾ (page 152)	EPSON FX SETUP ⁽¹⁾ (page 154)
Select CPI Select LPI Typeface Horizontal DPI Vertical DPI Prop. Spacing Italic Print Slashed Zero Left Margin ⁽²⁾ Right Margin ⁽²⁾ Top Margin Bottom Margin Print Char. Set Define CR code Auto LF Define LF code <i>Control Code 06</i> <i>Compressed Print</i> <i>Bold</i> <i>Elong/Alt. Font</i> <i>Gothic Typeface</i> <i>EVFU Select</i> <i>Upr. Case Select</i> <i>Slew Relative</i> <i>Text Position</i> <i>Host Command</i> <i>Reset Cmd CFG Ld</i> <i>Form Length (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (lines)</i> <i>Form Width (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (char.)</i>	Select CPI Select LPI Typeface Character Group Character Set Primary Subset Extended Subset Horizontal DPI Vertical DPI Prop. Spacing Italic Print Slashed Zero Left Margin ⁽²⁾ Right Margin ⁽²⁾ Top Margin Bottom Margin Print Char. Set Define CR code Auto LF Define LF code <i>Control Code 06</i> <i>Bold</i> <i>Overstrike</i> <i>Printer Select</i> <i>Alt. Set 80-9F</i> <i>ESC d command</i> <i>Text Position</i> <i>Host Command</i> <i>Reset Cmd CFG Ld</i> <i>Form Length (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (lines)</i> <i>Form Width (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (char.)</i>	Select CPI Select LPI Typeface Character Group Character Set Horizontal DPI Vertical DPI Prop. Spacing Italic Print Slashed Zero Left Margin ⁽²⁾ Right Margin ⁽²⁾ Top Margin Bottom Margin Print Char. Set Define CR code Auto LF Define LF code <i>20 CPI Condensed</i> <i>Bold</i> <i>FF valid at TOF</i> <i>Alt. Char Set</i> <i>Text Position</i> <i>Host Command</i> <i>Reset Cmd CFG Ld</i> <i>Form Length (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (lines)</i> <i>Form Width (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (char.)</i>	Select CPI Select LPI Typeface Character Group Character Set Epson Set Horizontal DPI Vertical DPI Prop. Spacing Italic Print Slashed Zero Left Margin ⁽²⁾ Right Margin ⁽²⁾ Top Margin Bottom Margin Print Char. Set Define CR code Auto LF Define LF code <i>Printer Select</i> <i>20 CPI Condensed</i> <i>Bold</i> <i>Alt. Set 80-9F</i> <i>Text Position</i> <i>Host Command</i> <i>Reset Cmd CFG Ld</i> <i>Form Length (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Length (lines)</i> <i>Form Width (inches)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (mm)⁽²⁾</i> <i>Form Width (char.)</i>

NOTES:

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (under PRINTER CONTROL).

¹ The presence of these menu items depends on the LP+ Emulation selection (under PRINTER CONTROL).

² Does not display when the CT emulation is selected.

DIAGNOSTICS (page 200)	PARALLEL PORT (page 204)	SERIAL PORT (page 208)	C/T PORT⁽²⁾ (page 216)
Printer Tests Test Count Software Build Hex Dump Mode Print Error Log Clear Error Log DRAM Installed Ptr On Time Ptr Media Dist Head Print Dist Head On Time Reset Head Data Head Type Head Voltage	Port Type Data Bit 8 ⁽¹⁾ PI Ignored ⁽¹⁾ Buffer Size in K Trickle Time Timeout Report Status <i>Prime Signal</i> <i>Data Polarity</i> ⁽¹⁾ <i>Resp. Polarity</i> ⁽¹⁾ <i>Busy on Strobe</i> ⁽¹⁾ <i>Latch Data On</i> ⁽¹⁾	Port Type Baud Rate Word Length Stop Bits Parity Data Protocol Buffer Size in K Trickle Time Timeout Report Status <i>Data Term Ready</i> <i>Request to Send</i> <i>Poll Character</i> <i>Poll Response</i> <i>Idle Response</i> <i>One Char Enquiry</i> <i>Printer Status</i> Framing Errors	Port Type Device Address Image Buf Size Timeout Report Status
<div> ETHERNET PARAMS⁽³⁾ (page 218) </div> IP Address Gateway Address Subnet Mask MAC Address Novell Protocol Nest Serv Type NetBIOS Protocol Novell Frame ASCII Data Port IPDS Data Port ⁽⁴⁾ Keep Alive Timer Ethernet Speed ⁽⁵⁾ DHCP Job Control			

NOTES:

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (under PRINTER CONTROL).

¹ Available only when the Centronics option is enabled (in the Port Type submenu of PARALLEL PORT).

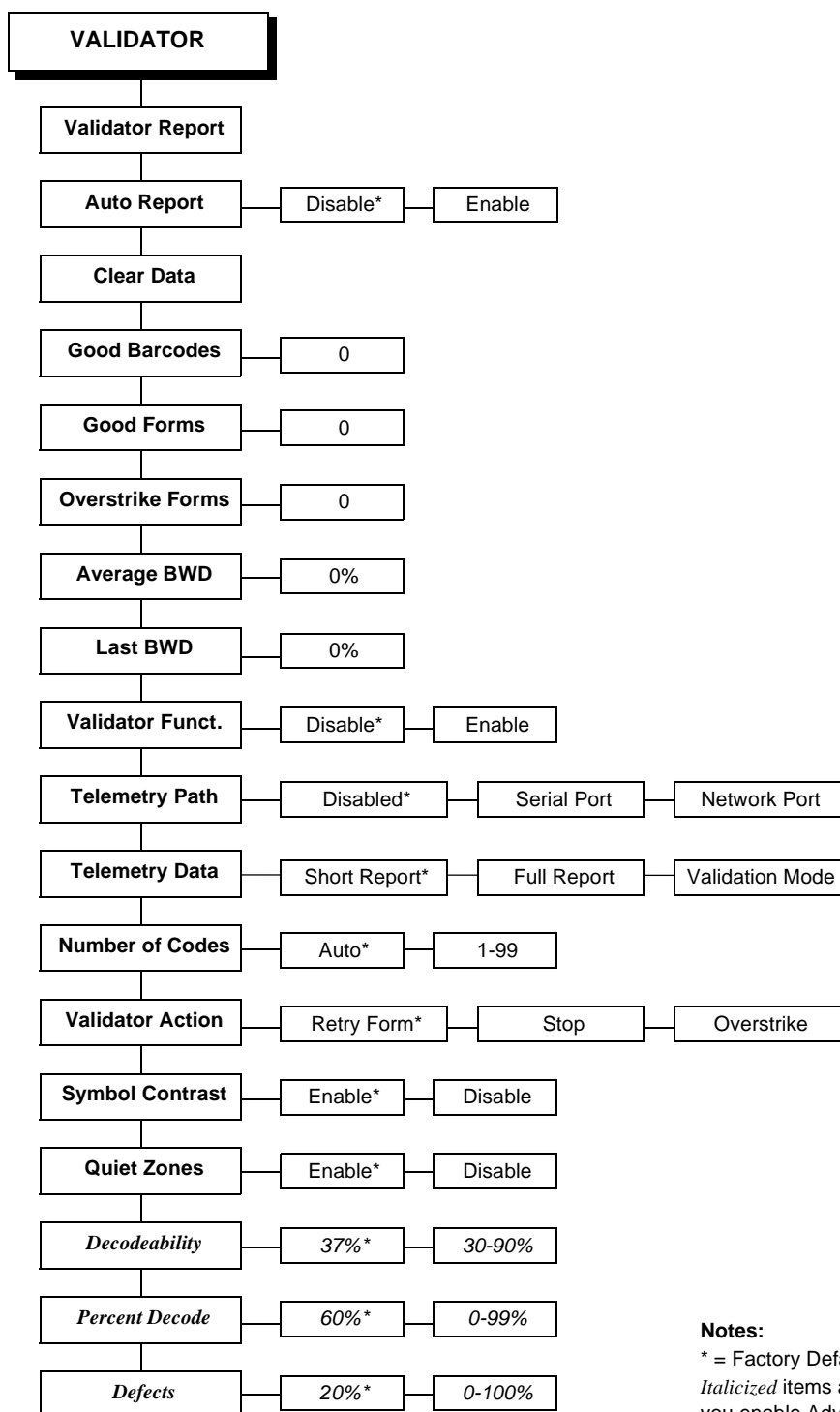
² Appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

³ Appears only if an Ethernet Network Interface Card (NIC) is installed.

⁴ Appears only if the IPDS emulation is installed.

⁵ Appears only if a NIC is installed.

VALIDATOR



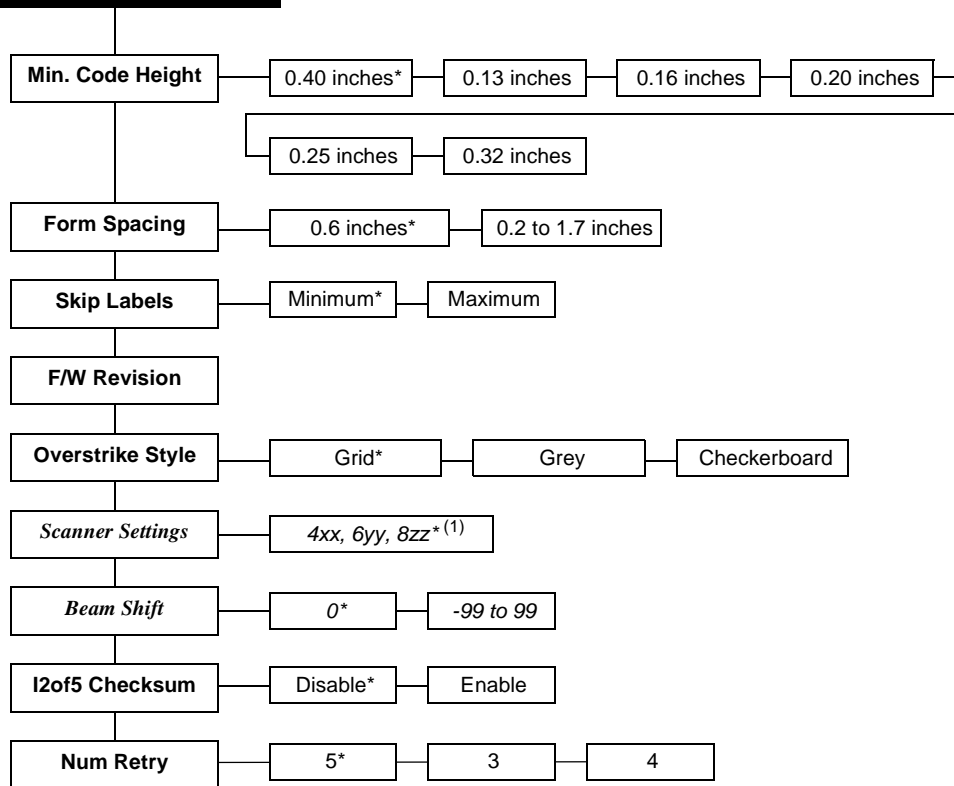
Continued at the top of next page

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

VALIDATOR (cont. from previous page)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ Depends on printer model and custom files.
xx, yy, zz = file revision numbers.

VALIDATOR Submenus

Validator Report

This item invokes an action. When selected the printer will print a report of the verification data acquired since the last data reset.

Auto Report

This option allows you to disable or enable an automatic validator report printout after a batch job. You can determine the end of a batch job in two ways:

- by using an Execute command to determine end of batch job, or
- a timeout of more than 10 seconds.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Clear Data

This item initiates an action. When selected the printer will reset all defined validator counters. This action must be confirmed before the action is taken.

Good Barcodes

This is a display item only. It indicates the number of bar code reports sent from the validator since the last data clear operation. After a clear operation the value is shown as zero.

Good Forms

This is a display item only. It indicates the number of good forms printed since the last data clear operation. A form is defined by the current height as set in the menus. After a clear operation the value is shown as zero.

Overstrike Forms

This is a display item only. It indicates the number of overstrike/bad forms that contained a bar code that fell below the minimum acceptable level since the last data clear operation. If no data has been received since the last clear operation, this field will be zero.

Average BWD

This is a display item only. It indicates the average of all bar width deviations reported since the last reset. If no data has been received since the last clear operation, this field will be zero.

Last BWD

This is a display item only. It indicates the Bar Width Deviation included in the most recent report received from the validator. If no data has been received since the last clear operation, this field will be zero.

Validator Funct.

This item allows the validator to be disabled when desired. When disabled, the printer will not command the validator to begin scanning and no errors will be reported. The counters will not be incremented while the validator is disabled.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Telemetry Path

This submenu allows you to select whether or not the printer will output the bar code analysis and underlying data from the On Line Validator. To enable this data, you must select the port through which the data will be transmitted.

The options are Disabled (the factory default), Serial Port, and Network Port.

Telemetry Data

This submenu selects the type and amount of data the validator will report to the printer and subsequently the data the printer will make available through the telemetry report.

- **Short Report.** Provides the encoded failure cause or pass indication, and the percent bar width deviation.
- **Full Report.** Provides nearly all the data captured by the validator. This report can be fed directly to the RJS analysis software for capture and review.
- **Validation Mode.** Provides the same data as the Short Report, but adds the actual bar code data read.

The factory default is Short Report.

Number of Codes

This submenu tells the printer how many codes to expect on a form. It is required in conditions where the host sends bit mapped graphics to the printer to produce bar codes. Therefore, the printer does not know how many codes to expect and cannot tell when a code is skipped. With this figure set to a specific number, the printer can check after a form has printed and passed the validator, whether or not it has received enough analysis reports. If it does not have at least as many reports as it expects, it can assume a gross bar code failure. When Auto is selected, the printer will only expect as many bar code analysis reports as bar codes printed using printer bar code commands.

The options are Auto (the factory default) and 1-99.

Validator Action

This submenu defines the action the printer will take in the event of an error. See the *Validator User's Manual* for details.

The options are Retry Form (the factory default), Stop, and Overstrike.

Symbol Contrast

This item selects whether or not symbol contrast is included as part of the pass fail criteria. The precise percentage to be sent to the validator is determined by the type of printing selected. See the table below:

The options are Enable (the factory default) and Disable.

Disable	= 0%
Thermal Transfer	= 40%
Direct Thermal	= 30%

Quiet Zones

This submenu enables or disables all checking of the quiet zone.

The options are Enable (the factory default) and Disable.

Decodeability

This submenu is only available in the Advanced Menus and is used for adjustment of the pass/fail criteria.

The range is 30-90%, and the factory default is 37%.

Percent Decode

This submenu is only available in the Advanced Menus and is used for adjustment of the pass/fail criteria.

The range is 0-99%, and the factory default is 60%.

Defects

Defects are voids found in bars or spots found in the spaces or quiet zones of the bar codes. Voids, spots, smudges, and other defects in bar code symbols can yield poor scanning results, and will yield lower verification results.

Increasing the defects value will allow more defects per barcode before issuing a fail message.

This submenu is only available in the Advanced Menus and is used for adjustment of the pass/fail criteria.

The range is 0-100%, and the factory default is 20%.

Min. Code Height

This submenu tells the printer the closest vertical gap between bar codes that needs to be resolved. Refer to the Print/Slew Speed Limits for background information. The printer's ability to resolve which form contains the bad bar code, is a function of print speed and the closeness of bar codes on separate forms. The default setting can resolve very small forms, but limits print speed. If you know that the bar codes are far enough apart and far enough from the bottom of a form, you can increase this value with this menu to allow for faster printing.

The options are 0.40 inches (the factory default), 0.13 inches, 0.16 inches, 0.20 inches, 0.25 inches, and 0.32 inches.

Form Spacing

This submenu tells the printer how large the gap is between the bottom of the last bar code on the form and the bottom of the first bar code on the next form.

The spacing range is 0.2 to 1.7 inches adjusted in 1/10 inch segments. The factory default at 0.6 inches.

Skip Labels

This submenu allows you to select the number of labels skipped after an Overstrike occurs. Minimum is 0 to 1 label. Maximum is 1 to 2 labels.

The options are Minimum (the factory default) and Maximum.

F/W Revision

This is a display item only. It indicates the firmware version of the Validator.

Overstrike Style

This submenu allows you to select different overstrike styles on bad labels.

The options are Grid (the factory default), Grey, and Checkerboard.

Scanner Settings

This option has two purposes:

- Allows the validator to upload an optimized setting for a particular printer model at power up. This will use the full scanner beam width and improve the performance and efficiency of the validator.
- Allows you to customize a special scanner setting for a specific application. The file can then be downloaded to the printer by using normal printer download modes, and must be saved as part of the power up configuration.

The factory default depends on the printer model and custom files.

Beam Shift

This option enables you to shift the beam horizontally to the left or right. The left edge of the beam should be 0.13 inch to the left of the left edge of the tear bar. After you set this value, save it as part of the configuration for future use.

The range is from -99 to 99, and the factory default is 0.

I2of5 Checksum

This option allows you to include or exclude the checksum option in I2of5 as part of the grading. For example, if this option is set as enabled, then any incoming barcode data without checksum digits will be graded as failure and CHECKSUM FAILURE will display on the LCD.

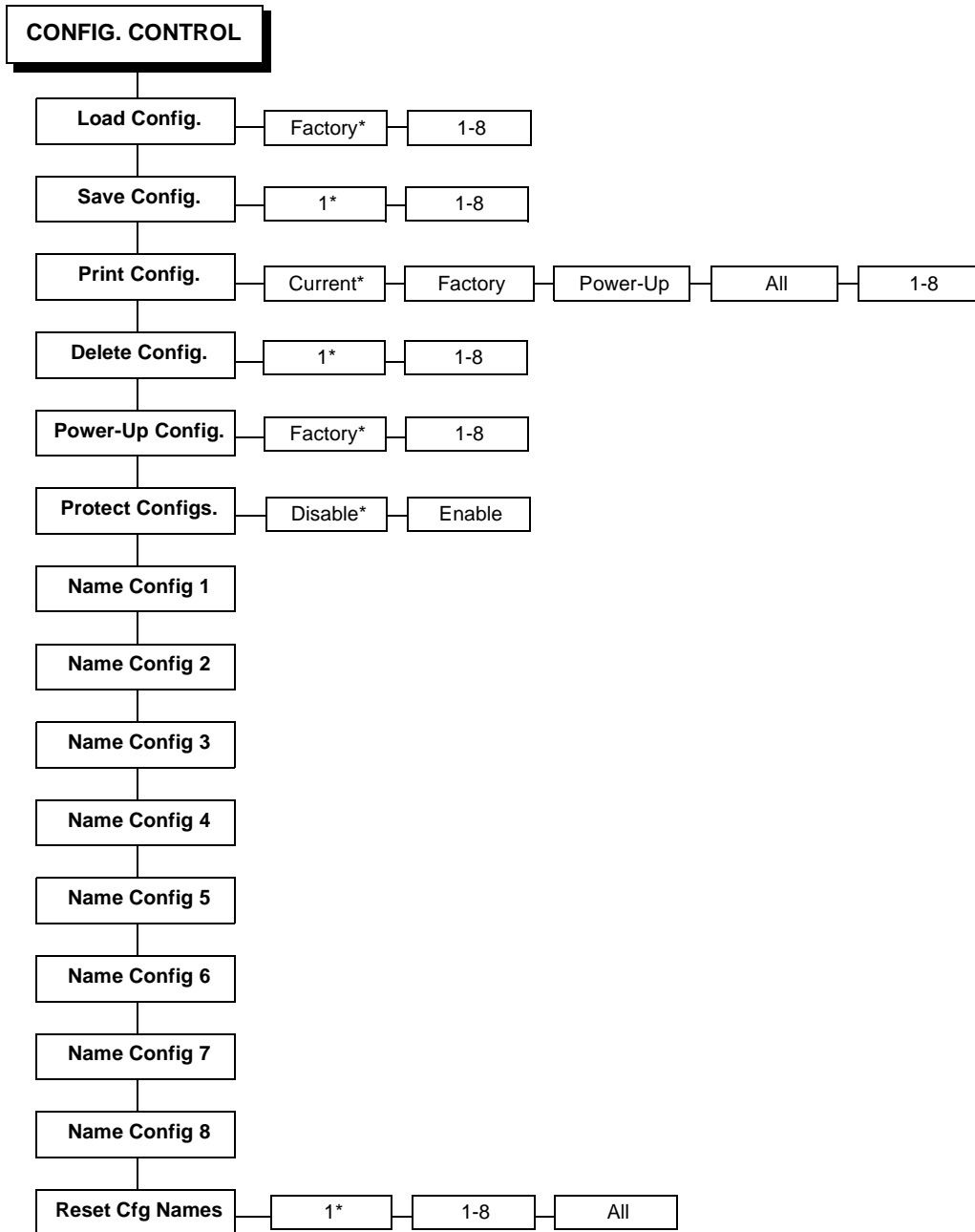
The factory default is Disable.

Num Retry

This option allows you to set a number of retries for overstrike before the printer stops.

The options are 3, 4, and 5, and the factory default is 5.

CONFIG. CONTROL



* = Factory Default

CONFIG. CONTROL Submenus

Load Config.

The printer can store up to eight configurations in memory. This parameter allows you to select and load a specific configuration.

The factory default is Factory.

Save Config.

This option allows you to save up to eight unique configurations to meet different print job requirements. This eliminates the need to change the parameter settings for each new job. The configurations are stored in memory, and will not be lost if you turn off the printer. If the Protect Configs. parameter is enabled, the new configuration will not be saved unless the existing configuration has been deleted first. The factory default configuration cannot be changed. See “Saving A Configuration” on page 72 for details.

The factory default is 1.

Print Config.

This option is used to print a listing of various stored printer configurations. It is recommended you store printouts of your configurations in a safe place for quick referral.

The options are Current (the factory default), Factory, Power-Up, and All.

Delete Config.

You can delete one or all of your eight customized configurations. The factory default configuration cannot be deleted.

The factory default is 1.

Power-Up Config.

You can specify which of the eight configurations will be the power-up configuration.

The factory default is Factory.

Protect Configs.

You can specify whether or not a new configuration should overwrite an existing configuration when you activate the Save Configs. parameter. When disabled (default), the new configuration will overwrite the existing configuration. When enabled, the new configuration will *not* overwrite the existing configuration, and the message “CONFIG. EXISTS / Delete First” displays.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Name Config (1-8)

You may specify a 15 character name which can be used to refer to a configuration. The name you enter for a configuration will be used in the Load Config., Save Config., Print Config., Delete Config., and Power-Up Config. menus. The names can only be cleared by using the Reset Cfg Names menu.

When you move into the Name Configs. menu, the top line of the display shows the current configuration name. The second line of the display is initially the same as the top line. You can modify the second line of the display without affecting the top line until the ↵ key is pressed, which sets the modified name as the current selection.

Press the ↑ or ↓ keys to cycle through the values available for that character at the cursor location. Press the + key to move to the next character to be modified. Press the - key to go back to a character you have already modified. Continue until you have entered the name you want to give to this configuration, then press ↵ to save. The name you entered will now represent this configuration on the printer's front panel. To exit this menu without saving, press any key other than the ↵ key. The configuration name will revert to the last saved value.

The factory default is 1.

Reset Cfg Names

You can reset specific configuration names back to the default value of the configuration number.

The options are 1-8 and All, and the factory default is 1.

MEDIA CONTROL

MEDIA CONTROL		
Print Intensity	-3*	-15 to 15
Print Speed	6 ips*	2-10 ips ⁽¹⁾
Print Mode	Transfer*	Direct
Media Handling	Continuous*	Tear-Off Strip — Tear-Off — Peel-Off — Cut
Paper Feed Shift	0.00 inches* ⁽²⁾	-0.50 to X inches ⁽⁵⁾
Label Length	4 or 6 inches* ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾	00.1 to 99.0 inches ⁽⁴⁾
Label Width	4.1, 6.6, or 8.5 inches* ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾	00.1 to 8.5 inches ⁽³⁾
Ver Image Shift	0.00 inches* ⁽²⁾	-1.00 to X inches ⁽⁵⁾
Hor Image Shift	0.00 inches* ⁽²⁾	-1.00 to 1.00 inches
Orientation	Portrait*	Landscape — Inv. Portrait — Inv. Landscape
Auto Map Select	Disable*	Enable
Auto Label Width	4.1, 6.6, or 8.5 inches* ⁽²⁾⁽³⁾	00.1 to 8.5 inches ⁽³⁾
Num Auto Labels	2 labels*	1-40 labels ⁽³⁾
Slew Speed	6 ips* ⁽²⁾	2-10 ips
Print Direction	Head First*	Foot First
Tear-Strip Time	1 seconds*	1-60 seconds

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ Maximum value depends on the width of the printer model and printhead.

² You can change the unit value from inches to millimeters under Units (in MEDIA CONTROL) when Advanced User is enabled.

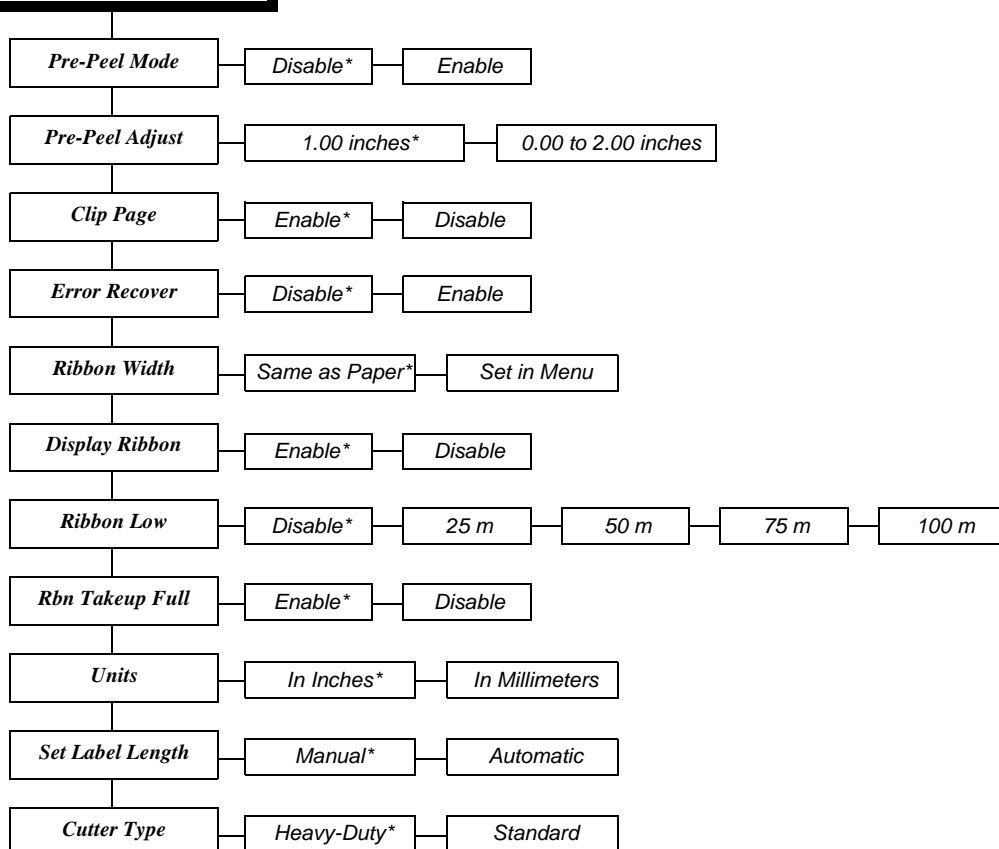
³ Maximum value depends on the width of the printer model (see Appendix A, "Specifications").

⁴ Maximum value depends on model width and size of DRAM installed (see Appendix A, "Specifications").

⁵ Current value setting for Label Length (submenu in MEDIA CONTROL Menu) up to a maximum of 12.80 inches.

Continued at the top of next page

MEDIA CONTROL
(cont. from previous page)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

MEDIA CONTROL Submenus

Print Intensity

This option specifies the level of thermal energy from the printhead to be used for the type of media and ribbon installed.

Large numbers imply more heat (thermal energy) to be applied for each dot. This has a significant effect on print quality. The print intensity and speed must match the media and ribbon type to obtain the best possible print quality and barcode grades.

The range is -15 through +15:

- The factory default is -3 in Transfer mode.
- The factory default is 0 in Direct Thermal mode.

Print Speed

This option specifies the speed in inches per second (ips) at which the media passes through the printer while printing.

The range is 2 through 10 ips (in increments of 1 ips).

The factory default is 6 ips.

NOTE: The maximum print speed varies based on maximum printer width and dot per inch (dpi) resolution of the printhead installed (203 or 300 dpi). See Table 16 on page 269.

Print Mode

This option specifies the type of printing to be done.

- **Transfer.** Indicates Thermal Transfer printing (ribbon installed).
- **Direct.** Indicates Direct Thermal printing (no ribbon) and requires special heat sensitive media.

The factory default is Transfer.

Media Handling

This option specifies how the printer will handle the media (labels or tag stock).

- **Continuous.** Printer prints on the media and sends it out the front.
- **Tear-Off Strip.** Printer prints on the media and sends it out the front until the print buffer is empty, then positions the last label over the tear bar for removal.
- **Tear-Off.** After each label is printed, the printer positions the label over the tear bar and waits for you to tear-off the label before printing the next one (on-demand printing). A "Remove Label" message will display to remind you to remove the label before the next one can be printed.

- **Peel-Off.** Prints and peels die-cut labels from the liner without assistance. The printer waits for you to take away the label before printing the next one (on-demand printing). The label liner is rewound on the internal rewinder. A "Remove Label" message will display to remind you to remove the label before the next one can be printed.
- **Cut.** When the optional media cutter is installed, it automatically cuts media after each label is printed or can cut after a specified number of labels have been printed using a software cut command. It cuts continuous roll paper, labels, or tag stock.

The factory default is Continuous.

Paper Feed Shift

This option represents the distance to advance a label (+ shift) or pull back (– shift) when the Tear-Off Strip, Tear-Off, Peel-Off, or Cut media handling option is enabled. The allowable range is -0.50 inches to the current Label Length value setting up to a maximum of 12.80 inches in .01 inch increments.

The factory default is 0.00 inches.

Label Length

This option specifies the user-selected Label Length in inches or millimeters. In most applications this user-selected Label Length will match the *Physical* label length. Physical label length is the actual label length of the media installed.

When setting label length, consider the following:

Label Length can be manually entered via the control panel MEDIA CONTROL menu or sent via host computer using the appropriate software command.

A Host Forms Length (Label Length) value sent from the host computer will override and change the manually entered Label Length value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu.

- **Physical Label Length** is the actual measurable length of the label. The following list of different media types explains how the physical label lengths are determined:
 - Die-cut labels – measurable length of the removable label (leading edge to trailing edge). This does not include the liner material or gap.
 - Tag Stock with notches or holes – measurable length from the trailing edge of one notch or hole to the trailing edge of the next notch or hole.
 - Tag Stock with black marks on underside – measurable length from the leading edge of one black mark to the leading edge of the next black mark.
 - Continuous media (no label length indicators) – measurable length should be within $\pm 1\text{-}2\%$ the Label Length value entered in the MEDIA CONTROL menu or the value sent via host software command.

- **Logical Label Length** (Host Forms Length) is the length that the user or programmer bases his printable image on. In most cases this length should be slightly less than the Physical Label Length. This allows the entire image to be printed within the boundaries of the label length indicators (gaps, notches, holes or black marks).

When the Logical Label Length is greater than the Physical Label Length and Clip Page = Enable (in the MEDIA CONTROL menu), the printer will clip the bottom portion of the image that exceeds the Physical Label length. In this case, the printable data that was not printed will be lost.

When the Logical Label Length is greater than the Physical Label Length and Clip Page = Disable, the printer will continue to print the image onto the next physical label and ignore the gap or mark based on the label length value set in the MEDIA CONTROL menu.

When the Logical Label Length is less than the Physical Label Length, the printer will print the entire image and leave blank space the remaining length of the physical label as it advances to the Top-of-Form of the next label. This is true regardless of the Clip Page setting.

The allowable Label Length range is 00.1 to 99.0 inches (2.5 - 2514.6mm)
The factory defaults are listed below:

Table 2. Factory Default Label Length

Printer	Inches	mm	Lines
T5X04	6"	152.4	36
T5X06	4"	101.6	24
T5X08	6"	152.4	36

Maximum Label Length range is dependent on the Label Width value selected, printhead installed (203 or 300 DPI), and the amount of DRAM installed in the printer. See Appendix A for specifications.

Label Width

This option specifies the physical width of the image to be printed. The value can be specified in inches or millimeters depending on the setting of the Units submenu under the MEDIA CONTROL menu. The allowable range in inches is 00.1 to the maximum print width of the printer. The allowable range in millimeters is 2.5 to the maximum width of the printer.

The default value depends on model width and size of DRAM installed.

Ver Image Shift

This option specifies the amount to shift an image vertically up (-) or down (+) for precise positioning on the label. The actual height of the image is not affected by this parameter. The allowable range is -1.00 inches to the current Label Length value setting up to a maximum of 12.80 inches in .01 inch increments.

The factory default value in inches is 0.00 inches.

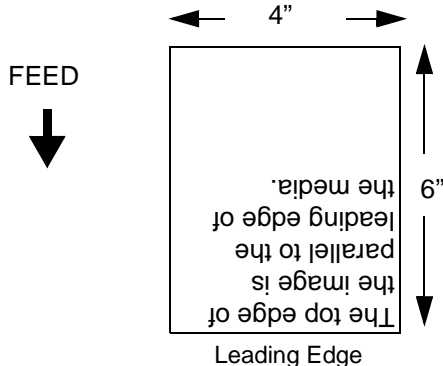
Hor Image Shift

This option specifies the amount to shift an image horizontally left (-) or right (+) for precise positioning on the label. The actual width of the image is not affected by this parameter. The allowable range is -1.00 through +1.00 inches in .01 inch increments, displayed as xx/100. The factory default value in inches is 0.00.

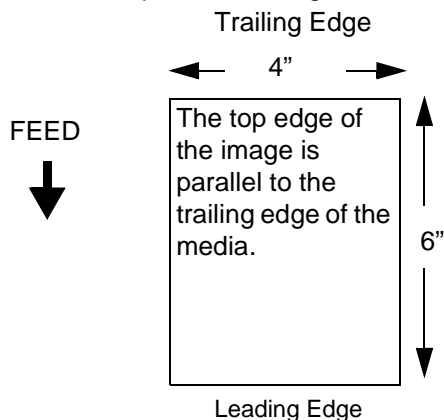
Orientation

This menu item selects the image orientation to be used when printing the label.

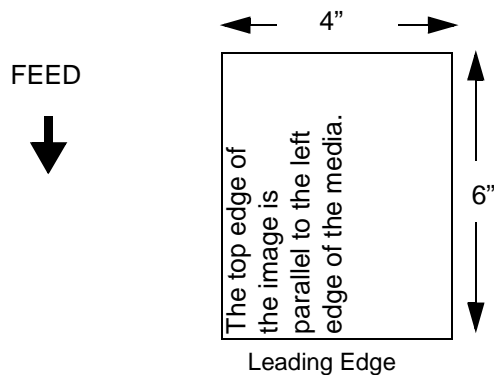
- **Portrait.** Portrait refers to vertical page orientation, where the height of a page is greater than its width. The top edge of the image is parallel to the leading edge of the media. The following illustration is an example, with the operator viewing the front of the printer.



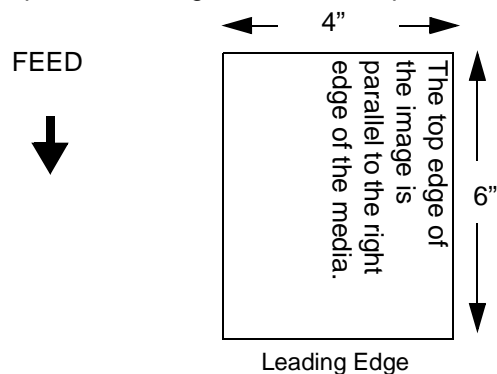
- **Inv. Portrait.** Inverse Portrait refers to vertical page orientation, where the height of a page is greater than its width. The top edge of the image is parallel to the trailing edge of the media. The following illustration is an example, with the operator viewing the front of the printer.



- **Landscape.** Landscape refers to horizontal orientation, where the width of a page is greater than its height. The top edge of the image is the left edge of the media. The following illustration is an example, with the operator viewing the front of the printer.



- **Inv. Landscape.** Inverse Landscape refers to horizontal orientation, where the width of a page is greater than its height. The top edge of the image is the right edge of the media (the left edge of the image is the trailing edge of the media). The following illustration is an example, with the operator viewing the front of the printer.



The factory default is Portrait.

Auto Map Select

This option specifies the maximum print width to be used by the application. The IGP/Auto Label Mapping[®] feature allows backward compatibility of programs written for P5000 line-matrix printers using the Printronix PGL graphics language. It allows the printer to print two-up (or other multi-up) labels. Instead of printing multiple labels across the printer, it prints the leftmost label and the rightmost label, so the printout will be twice as long but half as wide.

When enabled, the printer will automatically reposition the horizontally adjacent labels to a vertically adjacent position, or a combination of horizontal and vertical positions based on the values selected under the Auto Label Width and Num Auto Labels menu items.

When disabled, excess data in any program sent to the printer with horizontally adjacent labels that exceed the physical page width of the printer will be clipped or wrapped depending upon the setting of the Autowrap menu option.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Examples

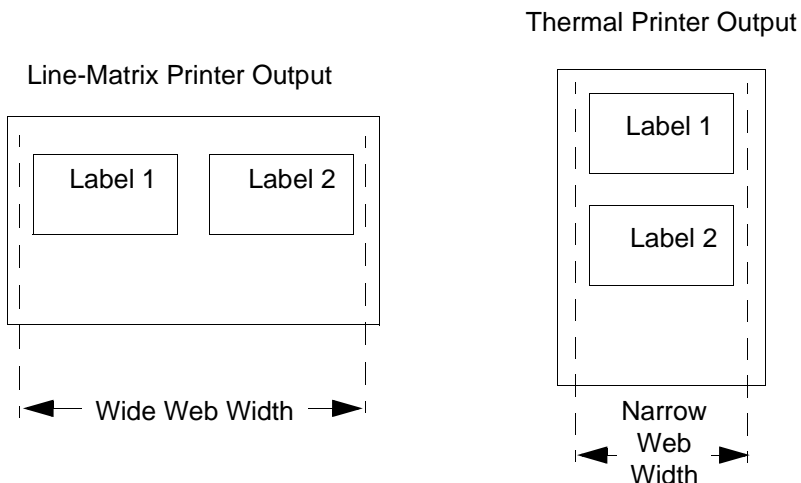
All of the examples below assume that the logical form length is set to the label length.

Example 1: Simple Case

Problem: A file has been constructed with two horizontally adjacent 4" labels for a printer with a physical width of 8". The user now desires to use this file with a printer that has a 4" physical width.

Solution: The user sets Auto Label Width to 4" (the width of the label), configures the Num Auto Labels to 2, and enables the Auto Label Mapping feature.

Printer Operation: The printer will print the first (leftmost) 4" label first. Once the first label has been completed, the printer will print the second 4" label. These labels will appear vertically adjacent on the form.



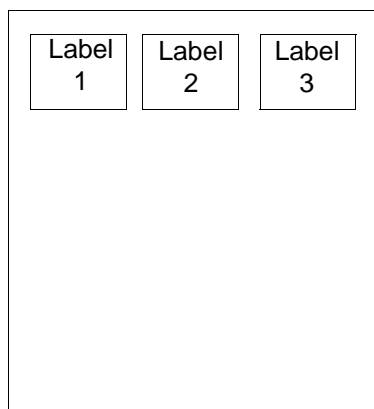
Example 2: Uneven Number Case

Problem: A file has been constructed with three horizontally adjacent 2" labels. The user now desires to use this file with a printer that has a 4" physical width.

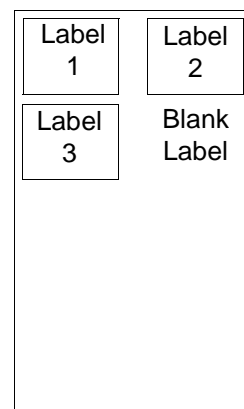
Solution #1: The user sets *Auto Label Width* to 4" (the width of two labels), configures the *Num Auto Labels* to 2, and enables the Auto Label Mapping feature.

Printer Operation for Solution #1: The printer will print the first two labels at the same time. These first two labels will be horizontally adjacent. Once these labels have been completed, the printer will print the remaining 2" labels along with a blank 2" label.

File Contents:

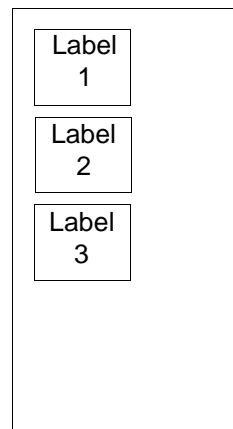
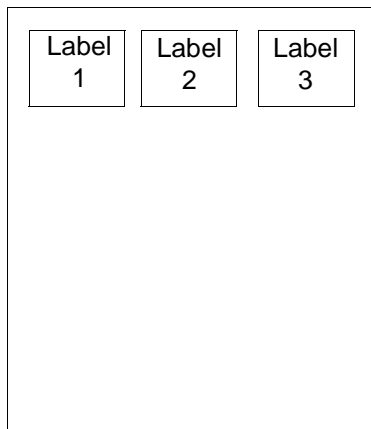


Print Output:



Solution #2: The user sets *Auto Label Width* to 2", configures the *Num Auto Labels* to 3, and enables the Auto Label Mapping feature.

Printer Operation for Solution #2: The printer will print the first 2" label by itself, the second 2" label by itself, and finally, the last 2" label by itself.



Example 3: Past Maximum File Width

Problem: A file has been constructed with three horizontally adjacent 4" labels. The user now desires to use this file with a printer that has a 8" physical width. The user should have used a solution similar to one of the solutions in the section above, but the user erroneously enters an *Auto Label Width* of 12" and a *Num Auto Labels* of 3.

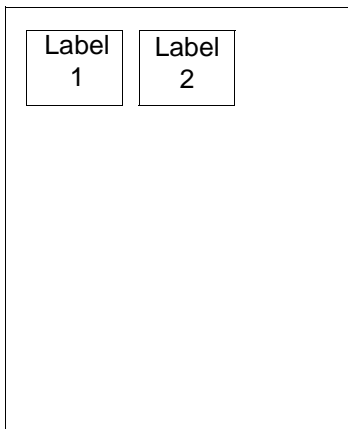
Printer Operation: Maximum *Num Auto Labels* = $(20"/12") = 1.67$ rounded up to 2. The printer will automatically reduce the *Num Auto Labels* to 2.

Example 4: Blank Label Case

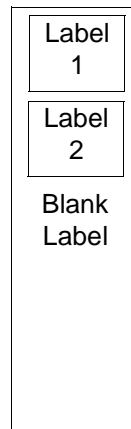
Problem: A file exists with two horizontally adjacent 4" labels. The user now desires to use this file with a printer that has a 4" physical width. The user decides to set the *Num Labels* to 3 and the *Label Width* to 4" despite the fact that these values are not optimum.

Printer Operation: The maximum *Num Auto Labels* = $(20"/4") = 5$. The selected value of 3 is legal. After the file is sent, the printer will begin by printing the first 4" width label. Once that label is complete, it will print the second 4" width label. Finally, once both of those labels have been printed, the printer will print a blank 4" label.

File Contents:



Print Output:



Auto Label Width

The width of a single label to be printed or the maximum width of the media that will be used for the print file. The value is selectable from 00.1 inch through the maximum print width of the printer.

NOTE: The maximum Auto Label Width value will be limited to the current MEDIA CONTROL/Label Width value selected in the configuration menu.

The default value depends on model width and size of DRAM installed.

Num Auto Labels

The desired number of labels to be printed vertically adjacent on the form. The value is selectable with a range of 1 through 40 (T5X04), 1 through 21 (T5X06) and 1 through 17 (T5X08).

The factory default is 2.

Slew Speed

This option selects the speed at which media will be advanced after the printer determines there is no more data to be printed on a label.

The range is 2-10 ips, and the factory default is 6 ips.

Print Direction

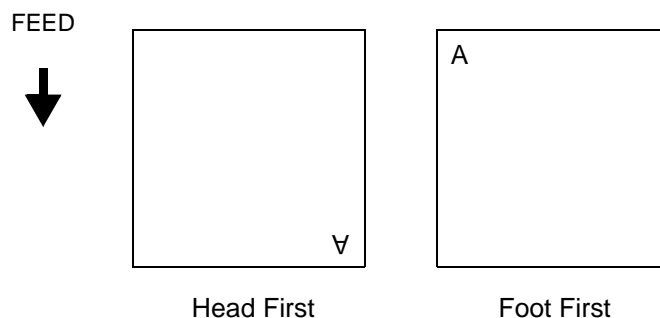
This option determines the basic print image orientation.

NOTE: Print Direction will not change the orientation of any print test patterns in the DIAGNOSTIC Main Menu.

Print Direction has two options:

- Head First
- Foot First

For example, with Portrait orientation, when you select Head First, the top-of-form will come out of the printer first. Conversely, when you select Foot First, the bottom-of-form will come out first.



The Print Direction and Orientation are two independent options that can be combined to produce the following results depending on the Active IGP Emulation:

Table 3. Head First

Print Direction Option	Orientation Option	Result in Active IGP Emulations (IGP/PGL or IGP/VGL)
Head First	Portrait	Portrait
Head First	Landscape	Landscape

Table 3. Head First

Print Direction Option	Orientation Option	Result in Active IGP Emulations (IGP/PGL or IGP/VGL)
Head First	Inv. Portrait	Inv. Portrait
Head First	Inv. Landscape	Inv. Landscape

Table 4. Foot First

Print Direction Option	Orientation Option	Result in Active IGP/PPI1 Emulation
Foot First	Portrait	Portrait
Foot First	Landscape	Inv. Landscape
Foot First	Inv. Portrait	Inv. Portrait
Foot First	Inv. Landscape	Landscape

The factory default is Head First when IGP/PGL or IGP/VGL is enabled.

The factory default is Foot First when PPI1 is enabled.

Tear-Strip Time

When using Tear-Off Media Handling, Tear-Strip Time specifies the number of seconds after the buffer is empty that the printer will wait before it advances media to the tear bar position.

The range is 1-60 seconds, and the factory default is 1 second.

Pre-Peel Mode

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** When using Peel-Off Media Handling, enabling Pre-Peel Mode adds a forward and reverse motion to each label prior to printing. The added forward pre-peel motion temporarily breaks the die cut label from the liner, and the reverse motion places the label back on the liner prior to printing, peeling, or dispensing the label. Pre-Peel Mode is usually enabled only when using die cut labels with an aggressive adhesive that makes automatic label removal from the liner difficult.

The factory default is Disable.

Pre-Peel Adjust

Pre-Peel Adjust represents the selectable distance that the label advances during Pre-Peel Mode. The Pre-Peel Adjust distance selected is automatically used when Pre-Peel Mode is enabled.

The range is 0.00 to 2.00 inches in .01 inch increments.

The factory default is 1.00 inch.

Clip Page

This option determines how the printer handles images that are too large for one physical page length when using gap or black mark media.

- **Enable.** When the user selected page length is greater than the physical page length, the printer clips the excess data to fit the physical page. The excess data is lost. The media sensor will constantly look for the gap, notch, hole, or black mark and when detected, will use it as the Top-of-Form position for the next label and clip any remaining data from the label being printed.
- **Disable.** When the user selected page length (logical length) is greater than the physical page length dictated by the gap, notch, hole, or black mark on media, the printer continues to print the remaining excess data onto the next physical page.

The media sensor will look for the gap, notch, hole, or black mark only after the media has advanced the distance specified by the Label Length value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu or by the Host Forms Length value sent via software. Any gaps, notches, holes, or black marks that exist prior to reaching the Label Length or Host Forms Length value will be ignored.

The factory default is Enable.

Error Recover

This option determines how the printer handles data that was printing when an error occurred.

- **Disable.** The printer will not reprint the label that was printing when the error condition occurred.
- **Enable.** The printer reprints the label that was printing when the error condition occurred.

The factory default is Disable.

Ribbon Width

When Same As Paper is selected, the printer automatically adjusts the ribbon operating parameters to match the installed media width. In those cases where the media width is less than the installed ribbon width, the Set In Menu option should be selected. After selection, the ribbon width is set to the proper value by pressing the ↓ key and choosing the actual ribbon width using the + and - keys. The chosen width is then selected by pressing the ↵ key. The factory default is Same As Paper.

Display Ribbon

When enabled, the remaining length of unused ribbon will be displayed on the LCD when in the online mode.

The options are Enable (the factory default) and Disable.

Ribbon Low

This menu item defines the Ribbon Low condition for the ribbon supply spindle. When set to a specific value from the available ranges (25, 50, 75, 100m), a ribbon low message will be displayed along with a flashing ONLINE status indicator when the length of ribbon remaining on the ribbon supply spindle has reached that value. The indicator will continue to flash until the ribbon supply is exhausted. When Disabled, no ribbon low condition will be indicated. A Ribbon Low condition will not prevent printing.

The options are Disable, 25m, 50m, 75m, and 100m.
The factory default is Disable.

Rbn Takeup Full

This enables or disables a fault message to display for a Ribbon Takeup Full condition.

The options are Enable (the factory default) and Disable.

Units

This menu item selects either millimeters or inches as the unit of measure.

The options are In Inches (the factory default) and In Millimeters.

Set Label Length

This feature selects whether the Sensed Distance value derived from an Auto or Manual Calibrate will be used to set the Label Length value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu.

- **Manual:** The Sensed Distance value derived from an Auto or Manual Calibrate **will not** override or change the Label Length value.
- **Automatic:** When an Auto or Manual Calibrate is performed, the Sensed Distance value derived from either calibrate will override and change the Label Length value. If no Auto or Manual Calibrate is performed, the current Label Length value will be used.

The factory default is Manual.

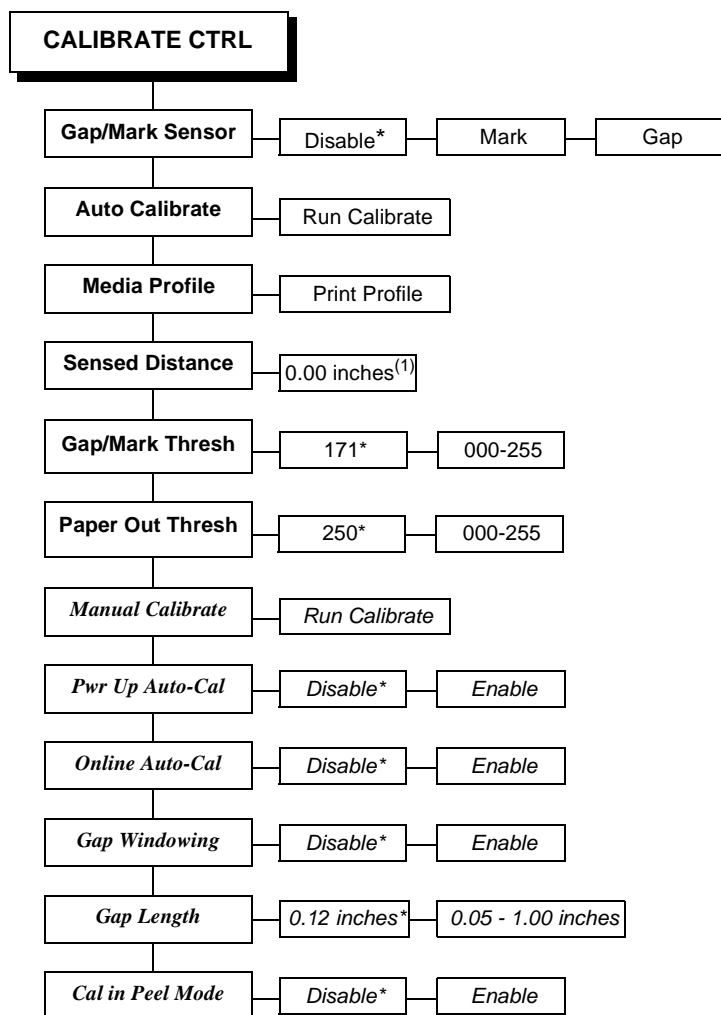
NOTE: We do not recommend using Automatic when Gap/Mark Sensor = Gap, as the Sensed Distance derived from a calibrate is equal to the length of one label plus one gap. The added gap length will provide too long a Label Length value.

Cutter Type

- **Heavy-Duty.**
- **Standard.**

The factory default is Heavy-Duty.

CALIBRATE CTRL



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ When Advanced User is enabled (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu), you can change the unit value to millimeters: Under the Units submenu (in the MEDIA CONTROL menu), enable the "In Millimeters" option.

CALIBRATE CTRL Submenus

Gap/Mark Sensor

The available options specify the sensor type needed for detecting the Top-of-Form position on media with label length indicators (gaps, notches, holes or black marks).

- **Disable:** Selected when using media with no label length indicators (no gaps, notches, holes or black marks), or when you want the printer to ignore all existing label length indicators on the installed media.
- **Mark:** Selected when using media that has horizontal black marks located on the underside of the label liner or tag stock. The Top-of-Form position will be the leading edge of the black mark.
- **Gap:** Selected when using media with a liner space between die-cut labels or when using tag stock with notches or holes as label length indicators. The Top-of-Form position will be the leading edge of the die cut label (trailing edge of the gap, notch or hole).

NOTE: When Disable is selected, the label length will be based on the Label Length value entered in the MEDIA CONTROL menu or the value sent via host software command.

The factory default is Disable.

Auto Calibrate

This feature is used to improve the sensitivity and reliability of the Media Sensor in detecting gaps, notches, holes or black marks on the installed media, as well as a paper out condition.

Auto Calibrate can be initiated within; TEST PRINT, the CALIBRATE CTRL menu or the DIAGNOSTIC menu by pressing the ↵ (ENTER) key with "Auto Calibrate" displayed. The printer will then advance media the distance needed to accurately detect the label length indicators, then stop at the Top-of-Form position and momentarily display the Sensed Distance. The process takes a few seconds to complete. The end result will be a change to the Gap/Mark Threshold, Paper Out Threshold and Sensed Distance values that the printer will use. The changes in values take effect immediately within the current configuration menu.

Auto Calibrate is completed successfully when the Sensed Distance displayed, correctly matches that of the installed media. When Gap is selected the Sensed Distance should match the length from the trailing edge of one gap to the trailing edge of the next gap (one label + one gap). When Mark is selected the Sensed Distance should match the length from the leading edge of one black mark to the leading edge of the next black mark.

Auto Calibrate supports label lengths up to 24 inches.

Media Profile

This feature provides a graphical printout showing the relationship of the Paper Out Threshold and the Gap/Mark Threshold. The profile printout assists the user in setting the thresholds for difficult media. This includes pre-printed labels, and labels with poor gap/media dynamic range.

When selected, the printer will advance media and print the media profile along the length of each label. The printer will continue to print the profile until the ENTER key is pressed.

The factory default is Print Profile.

Sensed Distance

This value (in inches) represents the distance that was sensed between the TOF of one label to the TOF of the next label. With gapped media installed the distance equals the physical label length + one gap, notch or hole (trailing edge of one gap, notch or hole to the trailing edge of the next gap, notch or hole). With black mark media installed the distance equals the leading edge of one black mark to the leading edge of the next. This value is automatically determined only after successful completion of Auto or Manual Calibrate and cannot be changed manually.

The factory default is 0.00 inches.

Gap/Mark Thresh

This menu item sets a value that, when exceeded by the output of the media sensor, is recognized by the printer as a gap (or black mark). When Auto or Manual Paper Calibrate is performed, the value displayed is equal to the gap/mark threshold value set by this procedure. If running the procedure does not provide a reliable Top-Of-Form detection, e.g., when using unusual media, the Gap/Mark Thresh value can be manually set to the desired value.

The range is 000-255, and the factory default is 171.

Paper Out Thresh

This menu item selects a value that, when exceeded by the output of the media sensor, is recognized by the printer as a paper out condition. When Auto or Manual Calibrate is performed, the value displayed is equal to the paper out threshold value set by this procedure. If running the procedure does not provide a reliable paper out detection, e.g., when using non-standard media, the Paper Out Thresh value can be manually set to the desired value.

The range is 000-255, and the factory default is 250.

Manual Calibrate

Manual Calibrate is another method of improving the printer's Media Sensing and is only used when Auto Calibrate has failed or the Gap/Mark Threshold or Paper Out Threshold values derived from Auto Calibrate do not improve the media sensor's gap or mark sensing capability.

Manual Calibrate is initiated within the CALIBRATE CTRL menu by pressing the ENTER key with "Manual Calibrate" displayed. The user will then be prompted via the control panel display on what steps to take.

Example: "REMOVE RBN&MEDIA/Press Enter" or "LOAD RBN ONLY/Press Enter" etc. During the last stage of Manual Calibrate the printer uses the statically derived values, advances media and stops at the Top-of-Form position and momentarily displays the Sensed Distance. The process takes longer than Auto Calibrate and the end result will be a change to the Gap/Mark Threshold, Paper Out Threshold and Sensed Distance values that the printer will use. The changes in values take effect immediately within the current configuration menu.

Manual Calibrate is completed successfully when the displayed Sensed Distance correctly matches that of the installed media. When Gap is selected the Sensed Distance should match the length from the trailing edge of one gap to the trailing edge of the next gap (or one label + one gap). When Mark is selected the Sensed Distance should match the length from the leading edge of one black mark to the leading edge of the next black mark.

Manual Calibrate supports label lengths up to 24 inches.

Pwr Up Auto-Cal

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** When the printer is first powered on, it will complete its initialization and self-tests and then perform an Auto Calibrate. Once the Auto Calibrate is complete the printer will momentarily display the Sensed Distance determined by the Auto Calibrate.

The factory default is Disable.

Online Auto-Cal

NOTE: Online Auto-Cal will not function when the validator is enabled or when Error Recover (under MEDIA CONTROL) is enabled (see page 106).

The options for Online Auto-Cal are:

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** Whenever the printer is brought online, it automatically performs an Auto Calibrate (see “Auto Calibrate” on page 109). Once the Auto Calibrate is complete, the printer momentarily displays the Sensed Distance determined by the Auto Calibrate and then resumes printing any pending jobs.

NOTE: If using the Online Auto-Cal feature, you must first enable it prior to printing any data.

The factory default is Disable.

Gap Windowing

This feature compensates for any early falling edges or spurious peaks and troughs that may appear within the gap length in media. These edges or peaks and troughs can cause unreliable detection of the leading edge of the next label (top-of-form). Use Gap Windowing to resolve the following problems:

- Loss of one or more complete (serialized) labels.
- Start of an image printed in the middle of a gap, especially with fanfold, perforated media.
- Top part of an image lost when printing in head-first orientation.

The options for Gap Windowing are Enable and Disable:

- **Enable.** When the leading edge of a gap is detected, the printer ignores the first 90% of the gap length value specified in the Gap Length menu option. The result is that cross perforations or unusual media discrepancies within the gap are filtered out, allowing the printer to reliably detect the actual leading edge of the next label and use it as the TOF position.
- **Disable.** When the leading edge of a gap is detected, the printer continuously looks for the leading edge of the next label and uses it as the TOF position. Perforations or unusual media discrepancies within the gap can cause inaccurate TOF detection.

The factory default is Disable.

Gap Length

Gap Length is the actual length (height) of a label gap measured in .01 inch increments. The range is 0.05 to 1.00 inches.

NOTE: You must enter the correct Gap Length. If the Gap Length is too long, the image will shift down from the leading edge (TOF) of the label.

The factory default is 0.12 inches.

Cal in Peel Mode

This option allows you to perform a calibration (Auto Calibrate or Pwr Up Auto-Cal) in Peel-Off Media Handling mode.

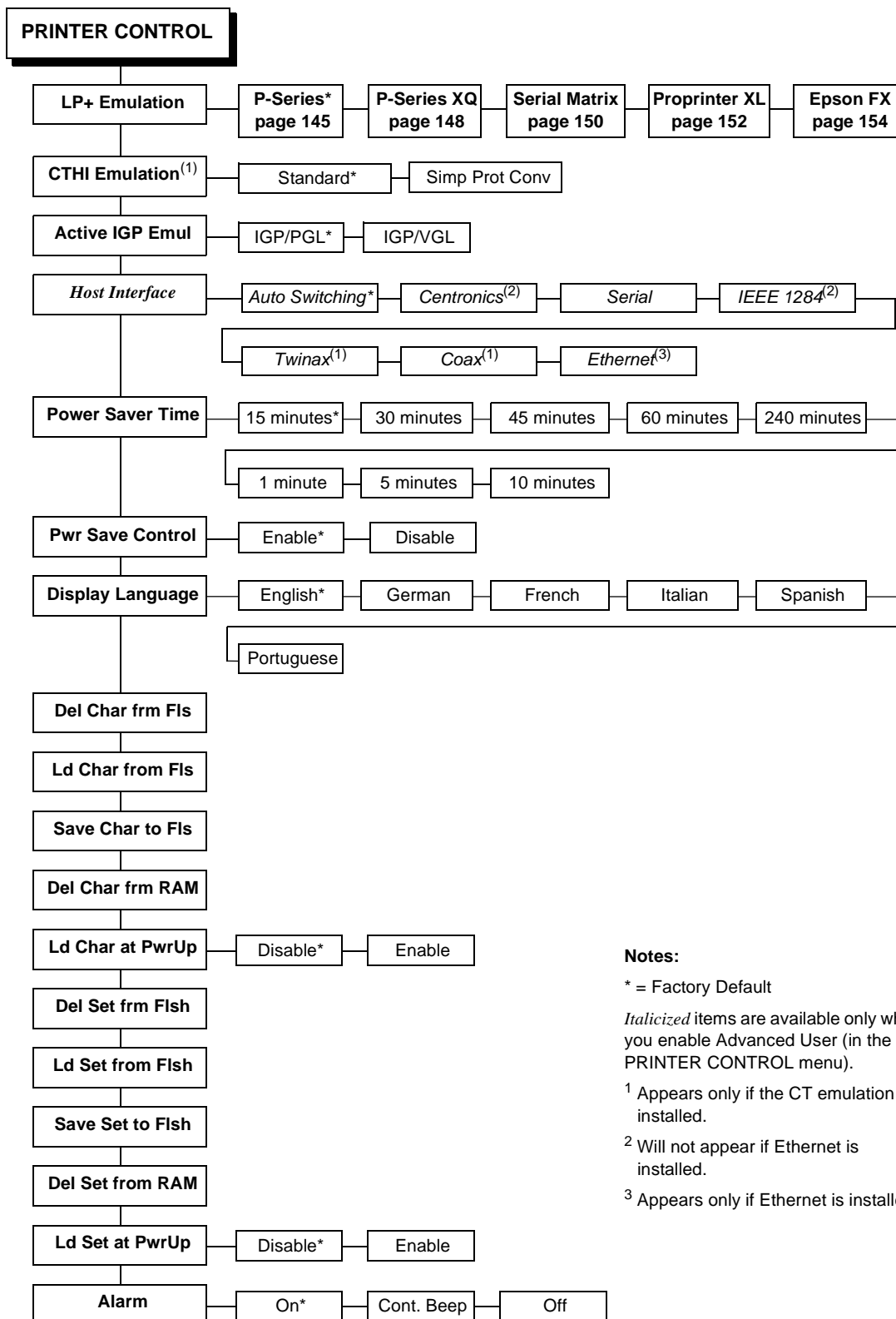
- **Enable.** Auto Calibrate can be performed from the front panel, and if the Pwr Up Auto-Cal option is enabled, calibration will be performed at power up.

NOTE: Calibration in Peel-Off mode does not stop and wait for you to remove peeled labels. Therefore, be prepared to remove the labels as they are automatically peeled.

- **Disable.** The printer will not permit calibration and a “CANNOT CALIBRATE/Disable Peel-Off” message will briefly display. Additionally, if “Pwr Up Auto-Cal” is enabled, the printer will not perform calibration at power up.

The factory default is Disable.

PRINTER CONTROL



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

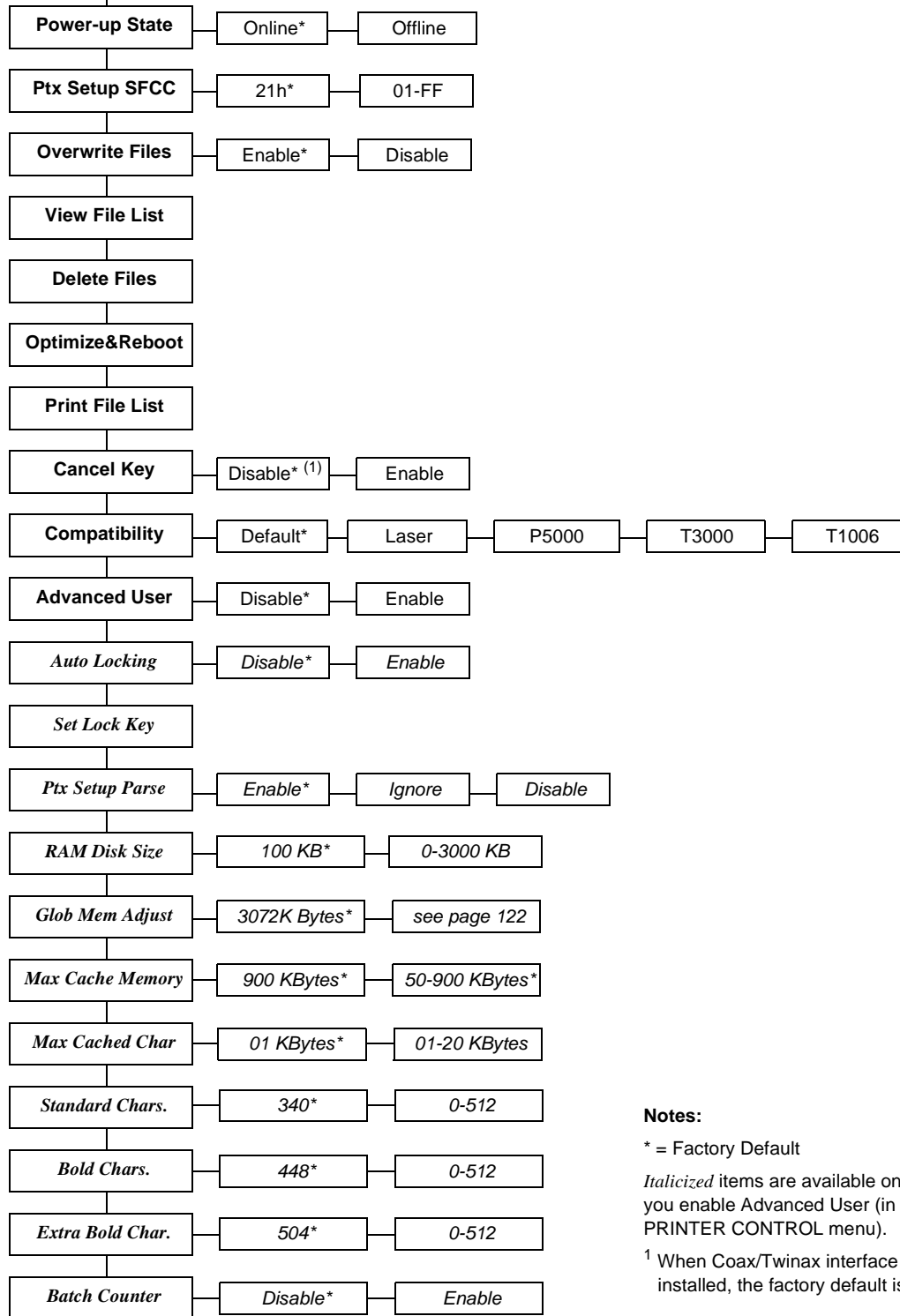
¹ Appears only if the CT emulation is installed.

² Will not appear if Ethernet is installed.

³ Appears only if Ethernet is installed.

Continued at the top of next page

PRINTER CONTROL
(cont. from page 114)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ When Coax/Twinax interface is installed, the factory default is Enable.

PRINTER CONTROL Submenus

LP+ Emulation

This item selects the line or dot matrix printer to be emulated by the printer.

- **P-Series** (see page 145)
- **P-Series XQ** (see page 148)
- **Serial Matrix** (see page 150)
- **Proprinter XL** (see page 152)
- **Epson FX** (see page 154)

The factory default is P-Series.

CTHI Emulation

This item appears only when the CTHI option is installed.

CTHI Emulation selects the operation of the CTHI option as either a standard or simple protocol converter.

The default is Standard.

- **Standard**

With a standard coax interface, the printer emulates the following IBM coax printer models:

- 3287 Models 1 and 2
- 4234 Model 1

With a standard twinax interface, the printer emulates the following IBM twinax printer models:

- 4234 Model 2
- 5225 Models 1, 2, 3, and 4

The standard Coax/Twinax emulation selection will only be available if Coax or Twinax is selected from the HOST INTERFACE menu.

NOTE: For more information, consult the *Coax/Twinax Programmer's Reference Manual*.

- **Simp Prot Conv (Simple Protocol Converter)**

The Simple Protocol Converter (SPC) option allows those who use add-on coax or twinax protocol converters to produce the same output on a Printronix thermal printer with the Coax/Twinax (CTHI) capability as done using a non-CT printer with the third party converter interfaces. The SPC gives the printer the operational ability to connect to any PC, or network system supporting parallel or serial interfaces, and to three different IBM host systems.

- System 3x
- AS/400*
- 327x Control Units

The SPC will support the same models for Twinax as the Printronix P5000 printer.

The printer emulations supported by the SPC are Twinax 5225 and Coax 3287. The SPC also provides a range of interfaces available in your thermal printer: Centronics, serial, coax, and twinax. Also supported are Epson, Proprietary XL, P-Series, Serial Matrix, VGL, and PGL emulations.

The SPC has the ability to handle multiple print jobs concurrently through coax/twinax and parallel and serial interfaces. This is accomplished through the Auto Switching feature (see "Auto Switching" on page 233). Because of hardware restrictions, coax and twinax cannot be selected together.

The factory default is Standard.

Active IGP Emul

This function allows the user to activate either the PGL or VGL emulation. There are two methods for selecting the desired emulation. The first is by selecting the emulation directly from the printer menu. The second is by sending a host command which will switch the emulation automatically (see the appropriate *Programmer's Reference Manual* for details).

When changing from one IGP emulation to the other, the printer will load the saved configuration. Thus, any setting performed before selecting those interfaces and not saved in NVRAM will be lost.

IMPORTANT

When the ACTIVE IGP EMUL is switched from one IGP emulation to another, the printer will load the settings saved under the Power-Up Config. menu. These settings may not be the current settings in use prior to switching the Active IGP emulation. The Print Mode, Media Sensor, Media Handling, Calibration, Label Length and Width and numerous other settings in use will change to the settings saved under the Power-Up Config. menu. Users should therefore insure that all desired settings are saved as the printer Power-Up Config. menu settings prior to switching the Active IGP emulation.

The options are IGP/PGL (the factory default) and IGP/VGL.

Host Interface

This option allows the user to send print jobs through any interface with auto-switching selected as host interface. It also allows a particular interface from the menu to be selected.

The options are Auto Switching, Centronics, Serial, IEEE 1284, Twinax, Coax, and Ethernet.

NOTE: The Twinax and Coax options appear only if the CT emulation is installed. The Ethernet option appears only if Ethernet is installed. The Centronics and IEEE 1284 options do not appear if Ethernet is installed.

The factory default is Auto Switching.

Power Saver Time

The time interval you specify for this parameter sets the amount of idle time before the printer goes into Power Saver mode. When instant is chosen, the printer goes into Power Saver mode as soon as printing stops.

Pressing any key removes the power saver message from the control panel. Sending a print job to the printer also turns off power saver mode.

The options are 1, 5, 10, 15, 30, 45, and 60, and 240 minutes.

The factory default is 15 minutes.

Pwr Save Control

Pwr Save Control allows you to enable and disable Power Saver mode. If enabled, the menu for Power Saver Time is in effect.

The options are Enable (the factory default) and Disable.

Display Language

This parameter chooses the language that will appear on the LCD: English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, or Portuguese.

The factory default is English.

Del Char frm Fls

This option deletes downloaded character(s) from flash memory.

Ld Char from Fls

This option loads downloaded character(s) from flash memory.

Save Char to Fls

This option saves downloaded character(s) to flash memory.

Del Char frm RAM

This option deletes downloaded character(s) from RAM.

Ld Char at PwrUp

This option loads downloaded character(s) from flash memory at Power Up.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Del Set frm Flsh

This option deletes downloaded overlay set(s) from flash memory.

Ld Set from Flsh

This option loads downloaded overlay set(s) from flash memory.

Save Set to Flsh

This option saves downloaded overlay set(s) to flash memory.

Del Set from RAM

This option deletes the downloaded overlay set(s) from RAM.

Ld Set at PwrUp

This option loads the downloaded overlay set from flash memory at Power Up.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Alarm

- **On.** An audible alarm sounds (3 beeps) when a fault occurs, such as a paper jam.
- **Cont. Beep.** A continuous audible alarm sounds when a fault occurs, which can be stopped by pressing CLEAR.
- **Off.** No audible alarm will sound.

The factory default is On.

Power-up State

- **Online.** The printer powers up in the online state.
- **Offline.** The printer powers up in the offline state. This selection must be saved as a power-up configuration to be used.

The factory default is Online.

Ptx Setup SFCC

Allows you to choose the hex value of the ASCII character you wish to use as the SFCC for the PTX SETUP command. Valid hex values are 01-FF.

The factory default value is hex 21, which corresponds to the “!” character.

Overwrite Files

This allows you to prevent files from being overwritten by disabling the overwrite function.

The options are Enable (the factory default) and Disable.

View File List

Displays the list of files in the file system. Pressing the ↓ key displays the file size.

Delete Files

Allows you to delete files in the file list. Contact your administrator for assistance.

Optimize&Reboot

Reclaims flash space from deleted flash files. After pressing ↵ wait for the printer to reboot.

Print File List

Prints a summary of the files stored in flash memory and several statistics on File System usage.

Cancel Key

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** When enabled, the ✕ key may be used in offline mode to clear all data in the print buffer and deleted data will not be printed.

The factory default is Disable. (When the Coax/Twinax interface is installed, the factory default is Enable.)

Compatibility

This parameter allows you to make T5000 Series thermal printers compatible with other printers.

When trying to preserve compatibility with respect to barcodes, you may not always be able to make them equal in size. This is due to the various Dot-Per-Inch differences between printer types. In the case where an exact match cannot be made, the barcode is reduced in size so that the form bounds will not be compromised and the barcode will be readable.

- **Default.** Use for optimum performance.
- **Laser.** Forces the output to correspond with the laser line of printers.
- **P5000.** Forces the output to correspond with the P5000 line of line matrix printers.
- **T3000.** Forces the output to correspond with the T3000 line of thermal printers.
- **T1006.** Forces the output to correspond with the T1006 line of thermal printers.

The factory default is Default.

Advanced User

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** When enabled, this function permits access to submenu items which would not normally be changed by a typical user.

The factory default is Disable.

Auto Locking

- **Disable.** The ↵ (ENTER) key must be locked manually.
- **Enable.** The printer automatically locks the ↵ key five minutes after the last control panel key press.

The factory default is Disable.

Set Lock Key

Normally, to lock or unlock the printer menu, the ↓ and ↵ keys are pressed at the same time. The Set Lock Key parameter lets you choose different keys to lock or unlock the printer menu. You may choose almost any group of keys as the new lock and unlock keys. You cannot use the ↵ key or any key combinations which are already used for another function. There is no limit to how many keys can be selected.

To set the new lock key:

1. Go to the PRINTER CONTROL main menu and select "Set Lock Key".
2. Press ↵. The display reads, "Select a new lock key."
3. Press the combination of keys that you want to be the new lock key. Make sure you press all keys selected at the same time.
4. If the selection is valid, the display will read, "Enter the new lock key again." Press the same combination of keys a second time. If the selection is invalid, the display will read, "Invalid key selection." Return to step 2 and start over.
5. If the new lock key combination is entered again correctly, the display will read, "Lock key has been changed." If it was entered incorrectly, the display will read "Validation failed." Start over at step 1.
6. After entering the new lock combination successfully, press the PAUSE key to put the printer back online.

NOTE: The new lock combination will remain even if the printer is powered off and back on.

Ptx Setup Parse

Enables, ignores, or disables the PTX SETUP command.

The factory default is Enable.

RAM Disk Size

Use this option to increase or decrease the amount of space available to store files on the RAM disk.

The range is 0-3000 KB, and the factory default is 100 KB.

Glob Mem Adjust

This menu allows you to adjust the ratio of global memory allocated to label size vs. PGL forms, fonts, and logos. For example, when using short labels, you can allocate more memory to forms, fonts, and logos by increasing the Glob Mem Adjust value. The default settings and adjustment ranges depend upon the amount of installed printer DRAM and are listed below.

NOTE: You can find the amount of installed DRAM in two ways: listed at the top of your configuration printout under “DRAM” or viewed from the control panel via the DIAGNOSTIC menu under System Memory.

DRAM Installed	4 MB	8 MB	16 MB
Factory Default	0 MB	0 MB	3 MB
Range	0 MB	0 to 1 MB	0 to 9 MB

Max Cache Memory

The Maximum Cache Memory option specifies the size of the memory block that can be allocated to the font cache. The font cache stores bitmaps that are created on demand from the font outlines stored on the printer flash. The cache allows the printer to print scalable fonts at optimum speed.

To calculate the memory requirement, use this equation:

$$\frac{\text{horizontal resolution x vertical resolution x average character height (inches) x average character width (inches) x \# of characters to be cached}}{8}$$

The allowable range is 50 KBytes through 900 KBytes in 50-KByte increments.

The factory default is 900 KB.

NOTE: For most applications, the default settings for font memory are acceptable. Therefore, do not change the defaults unless your application requires an uncommon memory configuration.

Max Cached Char

The Maximum Cached Characters option specifies the size of the largest character that can be stored in the font cache. To calculate the memory requirement, use this equation:

$$\frac{\text{horizontal resolution x vertical resolution x average character height (inches) x character width (inches)}}{8}$$

For example, with a print head that prints at 203 dpi you would use the following formula:

$$\frac{203 \times 203 \times 1 \times 1}{8} = 5,151$$

Therefore, select a value that is equal to or greater than 5,151. The closest available value is 6 KBytes.

The allowable range is 1 KByte through 20 KBytes, in 1-KByte increments.

The factory default is 01 KBytes.

NOTE: For most applications, the default settings for font memory are acceptable. Therefore, do not change the defaults unless your application requires an uncommon memory configuration.

Standard Chars.

This menu entry permits the user to adjust the thickness or font weight of standard text fonts.

The range is 0-512, and the factory default is 340.

Bold Chars.

This menu entry permits the user to adjust the thickness or font weight of bold text fonts. This menu will not take effect unless it is saved in a configuration and the printer is powered up with that configuration.

The range is 0-512, and the factory default is 448.

Extra Bold Char.

This menu entry permits the user to adjust the thickness or font weight of extra bold text fonts.

The range is 0-512, and the factory default is 504.

NOTE: For most applications, the default settings for font memory are acceptable. Therefore, do not change the defaults unless your application requires an uncommon memory configuration.

Batch Counter

This is an Advanced User function for PGL only that allows the monitoring of pages or forms left to be printed. The number of pages to be printed and the number of pages printed already are displayed on the front control panel.

Batch Counter is activated by selecting Enable.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

EMULATIONS

Overview

This section covers the following emulations:

- Coax (page 128)
- Twinax (page 131)
- SPC Coax (page 134)
- SPC Twinax (page 135)
- IPDS (page 136)
- TN5250 (page 138)
- IGP/PGL (page 140)
- IGP/VGL (page 142)
- P-Series (page 145)
- P-Series XQ (page 148)
- Serial Matrix (page 150)
- Proprinter XL (page 152)
- Epson FX (page 154)

You can select emulation default parameters directly from the control panel, or by control codes as explained in the appropriate Programmer's Reference Manual.

IMPORTANT **BEFORE you reconfigure an emulation, print a configuration sheet to see all current settings.**

Standard C/T Interface

With a standard coax interface, the printer emulates the following IBM coax printer models:

- 3287 Models 1 and 2
- 4234 Models 1

With a standard twinax interface, the printer emulates the following IBM twinax printer models:

- 4234 Model 2
- 5225 Models 1, 2, 3, and 4

NOTE: The standard Coax/Twinax emulation selection will only be available if Coax or Twinax is selected from the C/T PORT main menu.

For more information, refer to the *Coax/Twinax Programmer's Reference Manual*.

Simple Protocol Converter

The Simple Protocol Converter (SPC) option allows those who use third party add-on coax or twinax protocol converters to produce the same output on a Printronix thermal printer with the Coax/Twinax (CTHI) capability as done using a non-CT printer with the third party converter interfaces.

The SPC gives the printer the operational ability to connect to any PC, or network system supporting parallel or serial interfaces, and to three different IBM host systems:

- System 3x
- AS/400
- 327X Control Units

The SPC will support the following third party models for Twinax: MODE 219, MODE IBM, and MODE P5000.

The printer emulations supported by the SPC are Twinax 5225 and Coax 3287. The SPC also provides a range of interfaces available in your thermal printer: Centronics, Serial, Coax, and Twinax. Also supported are Epson, Proprinter XL, P-Series, Serial Matrix, VGL, and PGL emulations.

The SPC has the ability to handle multiple print jobs concurrently through coax/twinax and parallel and serial interfaces. This is accomplished through the Auto Switching feature. Because of hardware restrictions, coax and twinax cannot be selected together.

PGL

The PGL emulation is the software based Printronix Graphics Language (PGL) for the Printronix thermal printer family. It is based upon, and compatible with, the IGP-100/200/400 board. It includes the following features:

On-Line Form and Label Generation makes it easy to create forms or labels with a “preprinted” look for each application. PGL programs control all graphic functions, dramatically reducing host computer programming and processing time.

Graphic capabilities include boxes, vertical and horizontal lines with user-selectable thickness, logos, and special alphanumeric print features. Forms and graphic designs can be duplicated horizontally and vertically.

Alphanumeric data can appear as prepositioned “fixed” information (entered when the form is created), be overlayed onto the form (positioned in a specific location after the form is created), or may be dynamically merged with the form.

Selectable Bar Codes provide you with the appropriate bar code for your application using standard wide-to-narrow ratios. A wide selection of bar codes are available: Code 39, Interleaved 2 of 5, UPC-A, UPC-E, MSI A through D, Code 128 Subset A, B, and C, EAN/UCC-128, EAN 8, EAN 13, POSTNET, PostBar, Royal Mail, and PDF417. UPC and EAN bar codes can specify add-on data.

Expanded and Compressed Character Print attract attention where needed. Alphanumeric height and width are controlled independently for a wide range of character sizes up to 113 times the standard character size (up to 11.3 inches wide and tall). Compressed print sizes of 12, 13, 15, and 17 characters per inch (cpi) are available.

Logos are created using alphanumeric commands and add many print and shading features for a “customized” appearance to forms, reports, and labels.

Rotated Alphanumerics permit new concepts in form design. Normal, expanded, and compressed character strings can be rotated 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise, or they can be printed upside down.

Reversed Print permits highlighting and contrasting by printing white characters on a dark background.

Automatic Increment/Decrement Capability allows batch form processing. You can identify individual numeric and bar code data fields, which includes automatic increment or decrement functions.

Scaling Capability permits graphic elements, such as corners or boxes, to retain their physical shapes and sizes when printed in a horizontal and vertical density other than the base density of 60 x 72 dpi.

Multinational Character Sets provide 32 international character sets, each 96 characters in length. This feature also allows you to create your own character sets using characters defined and stored in memory.

Extended Character Sets provide 33 extended character sets, also containing 96 characters in length. These are also stored in memory.

VGL

The VGL Graphics language is a software emulation designed for the thermal printer. The VGL emulation of the QMS Code V Version II programming language produces on-line forms, bar codes and alphanumeric text generation. It includes the following features.

On-Line Form and Label Generation makes it easy to create forms or labels with the “preprinted” look for each application. VGL programs control all graphics functions, dramatically reducing host computer programming and processing time. Graphics capabilities include boxes, vertical and horizontal, solid and dashed lines with a variety of thickness, logos, and special alphanumeric print features.

Variable Bar Codes allow the bar code for your application to print with standard or user-defined ratios in vertical or horizontal orientations. Available bar codes are: Codabar, Code 39, Code 93, Code 128 with Subsets A, B, and C, and Code EAN/UCC 128, EAN 8, EAN 13, Interleaved 2 of 5, MSI, UPC-A, UPC-E, POSTNET, PostBar, Royal Mail, and UPC Shipping. POSTNET is available only in the horizontal direction. A dark print mode is included for darker, high-contrast bar codes. The IBARC bar code command prints bar codes in four orientations: horizontal, rotated 90, rotated 180 or rotated 270 degrees.

Expanded and Compressed Print draws attention where needed.

Alphanumeric height and width are controlled independently for a tremendous range of character sizes up to 9.9 inches wide and tall. Several compressed print sizes are available: 12, 13.33, 15, 17.65, and 20 cpi (characters per inch), permitting up to 170 columns in an 8.5 inch printed area (20 cpi).

Rotated Alphanumerics permit new concepts in form design. Normal, expanded, and compressed character strings can be rotated 90 degrees clockwise, counterclockwise, or printed upside down.

Logos are easily created using alphanumeric commands and a variety of print and shading features, providing a “customized” appearance for forms, reports, and labels. The registered trademark, copyright, TUV, GS-Mark, UL, and CSA symbols are provided as standard designs on the VGL, and you can also define custom symbols.

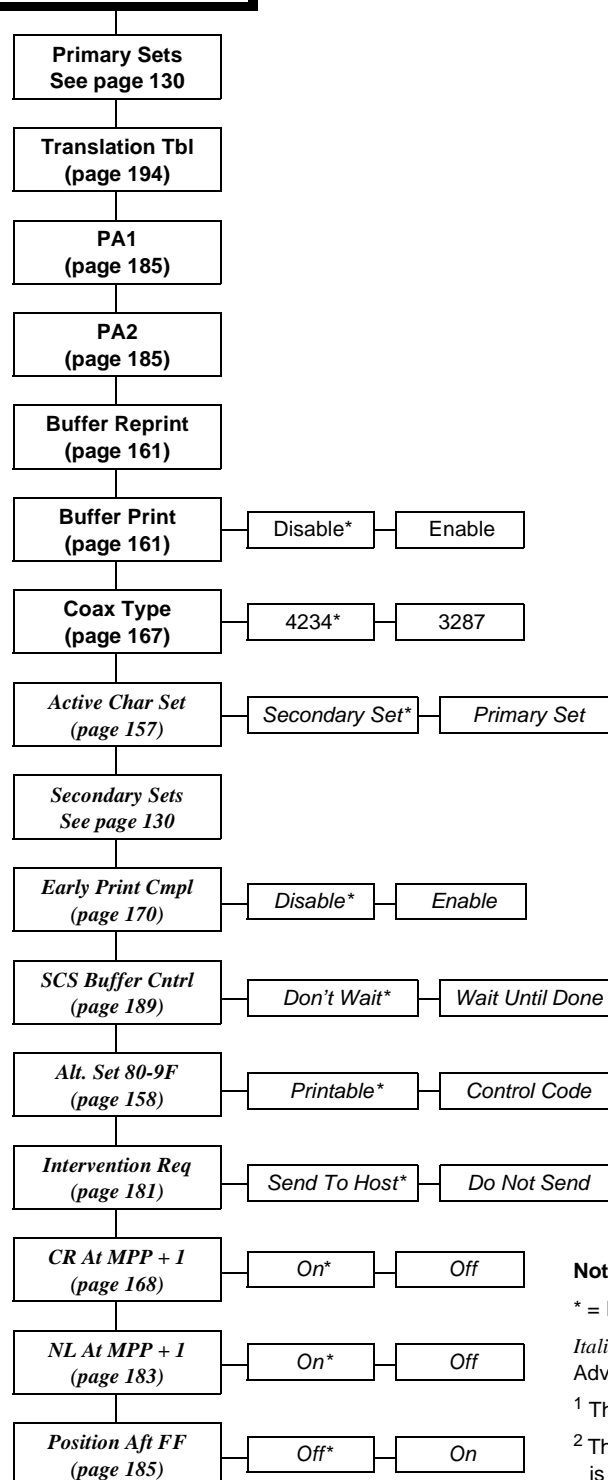
Reverse and Shaded Print permit highlighting and contrasting by printing white characters on a dark background or white characters on a gray, shaded background. Various levels or patterns of gray shading and reverse printing may combine with the many other print features to create distinctive designs.

Automatic Increment/Decrement Capability allows batch form processing. Individual alphabetic, numeric, and bar code data fields can be identified and automatically incremented or decremented by any amount, beginning from a specified reference point.

Standard Character Sets provide you with many different character sets. Based on the Multinational Character Set, you may create your own character sets using characters defined and stored in flash memory.

COAX SETUP

COAX SETUP⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾⁽³⁾



Continued at the top of next page

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ This menu appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

² This menu appears only if Port Type (under C/T PORT) is set to Coax.

³ This menu appears only if the CTHI emulation (under PRINTER CONTROL) is set to Standard.

COAX SETUP (cont. from prev. page)

<i>Last Char = FF</i> (page 182)	On*	Off		
<i>Null Suppression</i> (page 184)	Off*	On		
<i>FF Validity</i> (page 174)	Off*	On		
<i>Auto Skip At End</i> (page 159)	Off*	On		
<i>FF After Job</i> (page 174)	Off*	On		
<i>CR, EM, & NL</i> (page 168)	On*	Off		
<i>Translate Table</i> (page 194)	Default*	Downloaded		
<i>Host Override</i> (page 179)	Disable*	Enable		
<i>Format Control</i> (page 175)	Disable*	Enable		
<i>Cancel IGP/DCU</i> (page 161)	Enable*	Disable		
<i>Lead-in Chars</i> (page 182)	Set 1 <%>*	Set 2 ↯↯\$	Set 3 _%_	User Defined
<i>Change Case</i> (page 161)	Dual Case*	Mono Case		
<i>Set Text Orientn</i> (page 191)	Control By Host*	Left to Right	Right to Left	
<i>Max. Print Width</i> (page 183)	13.2 inches*	Printer Width		

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

Coax Setup - Primary Sets and Secondary Sets

COAX SETUP

Primary Sets
(from page 128)

0037 English US*	0880 Cyril. Old
0037 Eng Nether	0423 Greek Old
0285 English UK	875 Gr New Euro
0273 Austr/Germ	0871 Icelandic
0274 Belg. Old	0290 Japan Kata
0275 Brazilian	0870 Latin 2
0260 Canad Fren	0838 Thai
0277 Danish	1026 Turkish
0287 Danish Alt	0890 Yugos. Old
0278 Finnish	1097 Farsi
0288 Finn. Alt	1025 Cyrillic
0297 French	0905 Turk. Old
0500 Internat 5	0256 Intern. 1
0280 Italian	0924 Euro Lat-9
0281 Japan. Eng	1140 Euro Eng.
0282 Portuguese	1141 Euro Aust.
0284 Span Speak	1142 Euro Dan.
0289 Span. Alt	1143 Euro Finn.
0500 Swiss Bil	1144 Euro Ital.
0500 Belg. New	1145 Euro Span.
0803 Hebrew Old	1146 Euro UK
0424 Hebrew	1147 Euro Fren.
0892 OCR A	1148 Euro Swiss
0893 OCR B	1149 Euro Ice.
0420 Arabic	

Secondary Sets
(from page 128)

English US*	Portuguese
English UK	Portug. (Alt)
Austrian/German	Spanish
German (Alt)	Spanish (Alt)
Belgian	Spanish Speak.
Brazilian	Swiss Fren/Ger
Canadian French	Old Hebrew
Danish/Norweg.	Hebrew
Danish (Alt)	Farsi/Latin
Finnish/Swedish	Greek Old
Finnish (Alt)	Greek New
French	Arabic
International	Turkish
Italian	Turkish Old
Japanese Eng.	Latin2/ROECE
Japanese Katak.	Yugoslavian

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Although these options are listed vertically here, use your plus (+) and minus (-) keys to cycle through the options when you are operating your printer.

TWINAX SETUP

TWINAX SETUP⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾⁽³⁾

Primary Sets
(page 133)

Translation Tbl⁽⁴⁾
(page 195)

Buffer Print
(page 161)

Disable*

Enable

Twinax Type
(page 195)

IPDS 256 Bytes*

IPDS 1024 Bytes

5225

4234

Active Char Set
(page 157)

Secondary Set*

Primary Set

Secondary Sets
See page 133

5225 World Trade
(page 156)

Standard Char*

Extended Char

Cancel IGP/DCU
(page 161)

Enable*

Disable

Lead-in Chars
(page 182)

Set 1 <%>*

Set 2 ↗\$

Set 3 _%_

User Defined

Alt. Set 80-9F
(page 158)

Printable*

Control Code

Graphic Chek Err
(page 176)

Enable*

Disable

Graphic Chek Cod
(page 176)

60*

40 - FE

LAC Option
(page 181)

Enable*

Disable

LAC Approx.
(page 181)

On*

Off

Notes:

* = Factory Default

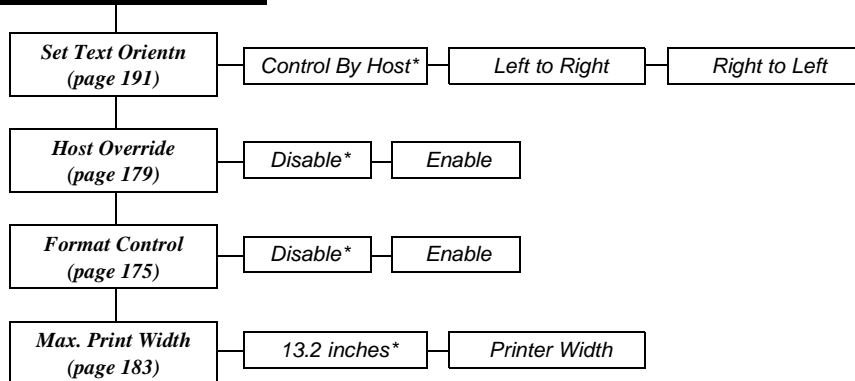
Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ This menu appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

² This menu appears only if Port Type (under C/T PORT) is set to Twinax.

³ This menu appears only if the CTHI emulation (under PRINTER CONTROL) is set to Standard.

⁴ This menu does not appear if the IPDS emulation is installed.

TWINAX SETUP⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾⁽³⁾
(cont. from prev. page)**Notes:**

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ This menu appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

² This menu appears only if Port Type (under C/T PORT) is set to Twinax.

³ This menu appears only if the CTHI emulation (under PRINTER CONTROL) is set to Standard.

Twinax Setup - Primary Sets and Secondary Sets

TWINAX SETUP

Primary Sets (from page 131)

0037 English US*	0871 Icelandic
0037 Eng Nether	0290 Japan Kata
0500 Swiss Bil	0870 Latin 2
0500 Belg. New	0838 Thai
0273 Austr/Germ	1026 Turkish
0274 Belg. Old	0890 Yugos. Old
0275 Brazilian	1097 Farsi
0260 Canad Fren	1025 Cyrillic
0277 Danish	0256 Intern. 1
0278 Finnish	1112 Balt Mult
0297 French	0924 Euro Lat-9
0280 Italian	1122 Estonian
0281 Japan. Eng	1140 Euro Eng.
0282 Portuguese	1141 Euro Aust.
0284 Span Speak	1142 Euro Dan.
0285 English UK	1143 Euro Finn.
0892 OCR A	1144 Euro Ital.
0893 OCR B	1145 Euro Span.
0424 Hebrew	1146 Euro English UK
0803 Hebrew Old	1147 Euro Fren.
0420 Arabic	1148 Euro Swiss
0880 Cyril. Old	1149 Euro Ice.
0423 Greek Old	0500 Internat 5
875 Gr New Euro	

Secondary Sets (from page 131)

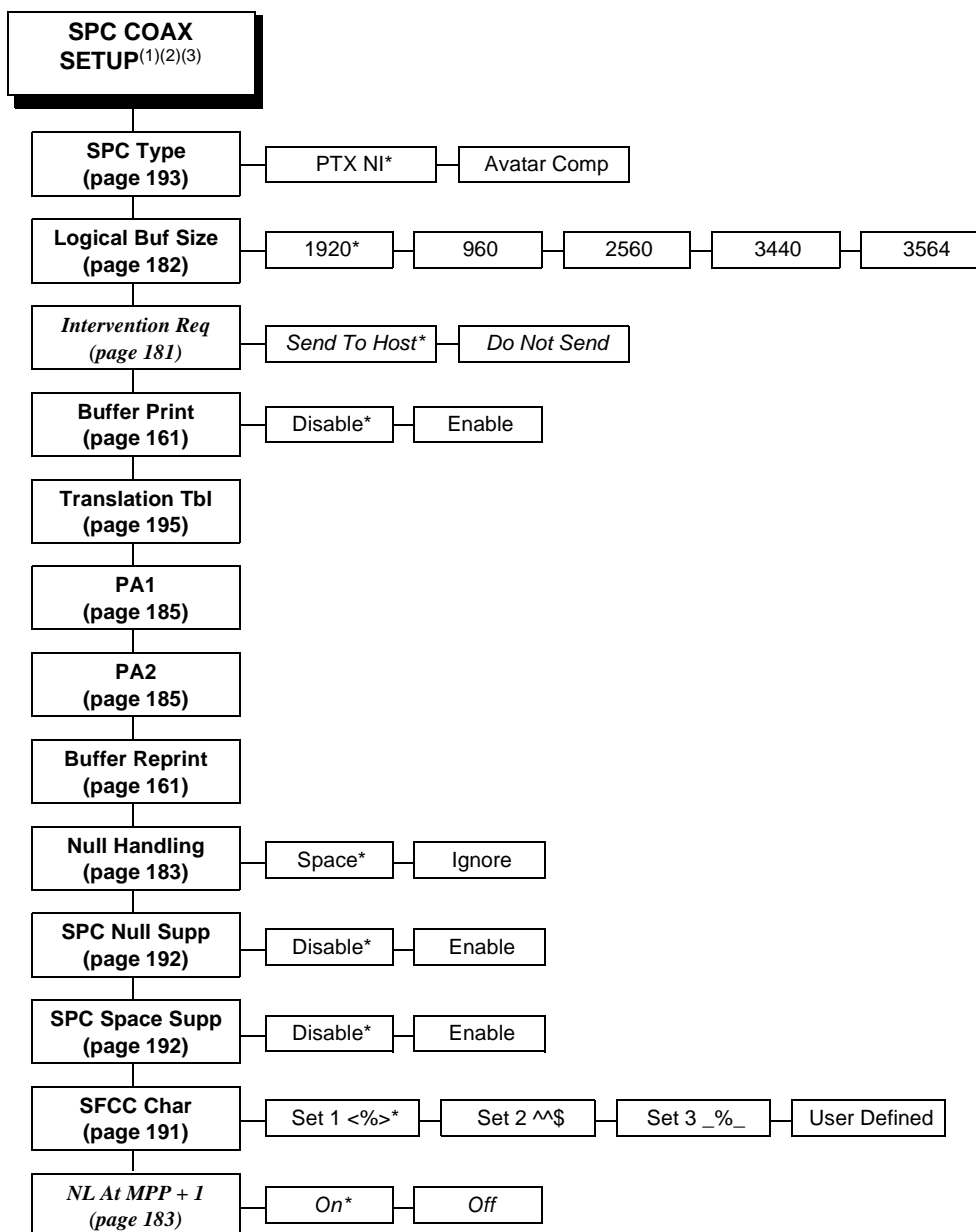
English US*	Spanish Speak.
Austrian/German	English UK
Belgian	Old Hebrew
Brazilian	Hebrew
Canadian French	Farsi/Latin
Danish/Norweg.	Greek Old
Finnish/Swedish	Greek New
French	Arabic
Italian	Turkish
Japanese Eng.	Latin2/ROECE
Japanese Katak.	Yugoslavian
Portuguese	Multinational
Spanish	

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Although these options are listed vertically here, use your plus (+) and minus (-) keys to cycle through the options when you are operating your printer.

SPC COAX SETUP



Notes:

* = Factory Default

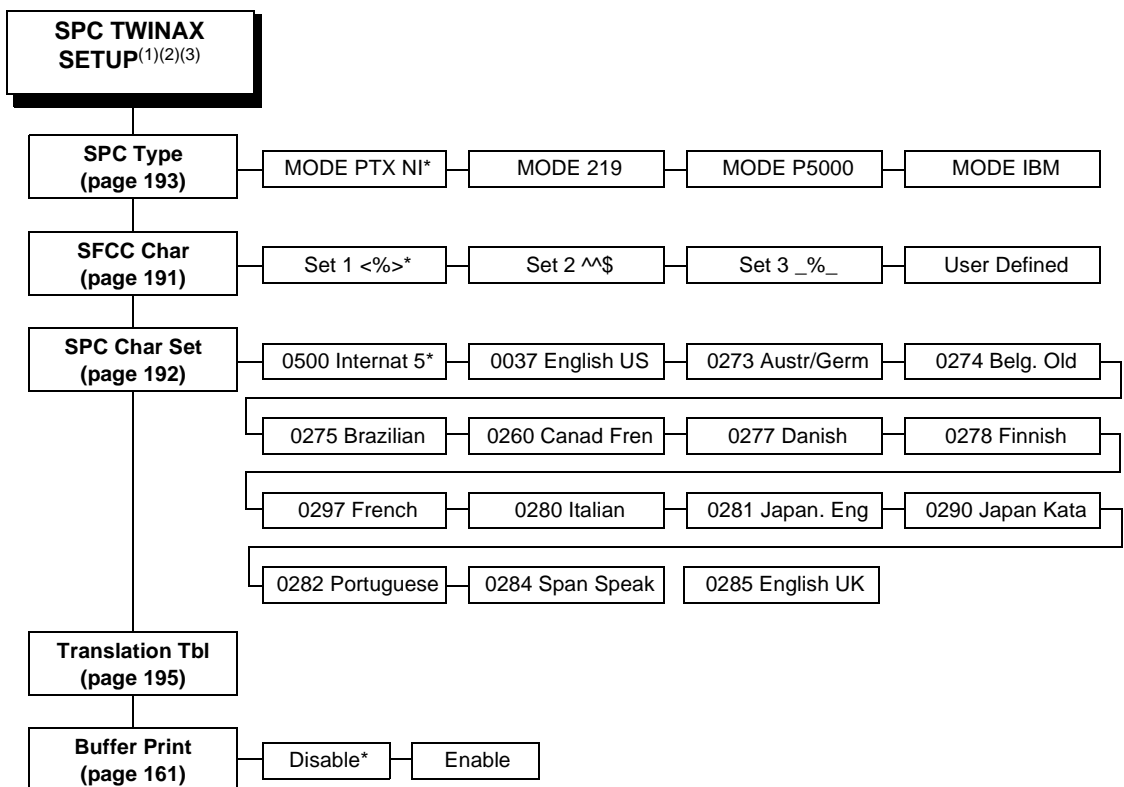
Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ This menu appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

² This menu appears only if Port Type (under C/T PORT) is set to Coax.

³ Appears only if CTHI emulation (under PRINTER CONTROL) is set to Simp Prot Conv.

SPC TWINAX SETUP



Notes:

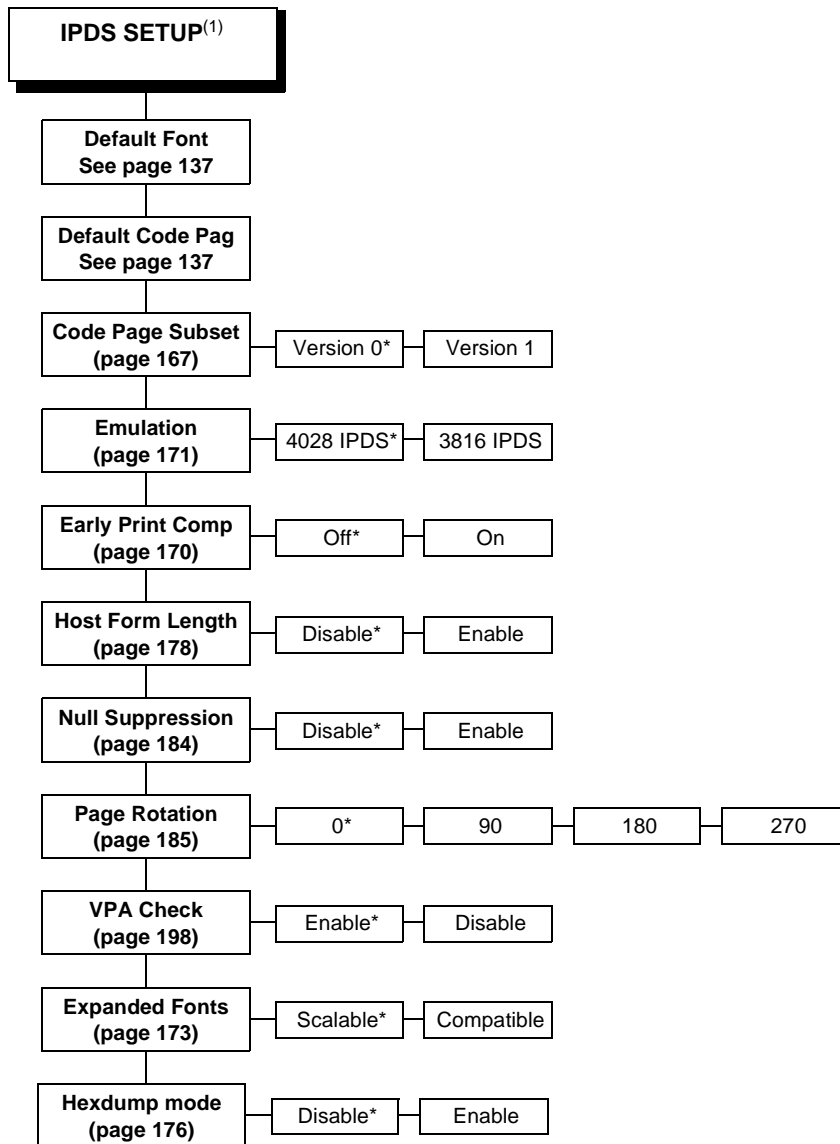
* = Factory Default

¹ This menu appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

² This menu appears only if Port Type (under C/T PORT) is set to Twinax.

³ Appears only if CTHI emulation (under PRINTER CONTROL) is set to Simp Prot Conv.

IPDS SETUP



Notes:

* = Factory Default

¹ This menu appears only if the IPDS emulation is installed.

IPDS Setup - Default Font and Default Code Pag

IPDS SETUP

Default Font⁽¹⁾ (from page 136)

Courier 10*	Times Roman 8
Prestige 10	Times Roman 10
Courier it 10	Times Roman 12
OCRA	Times Roman B10
APL 12	Times Roman B12
Courier 12	Times Roman B14
Prestige 12	Times Roman B18
Courier it 12	Times Roman B24
Prestige it 12	Times Roman I10
Boldface PSM	Times Roman I12
Courier 15	Times Roman BI10
Courier 17.1	Times Roman BI12
Gothic 20	OCRB
Times Roman 6	

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Although these options are listed vertically here, use your plus (+) and minus (-) keys to cycle through the options when you are operating your printer.

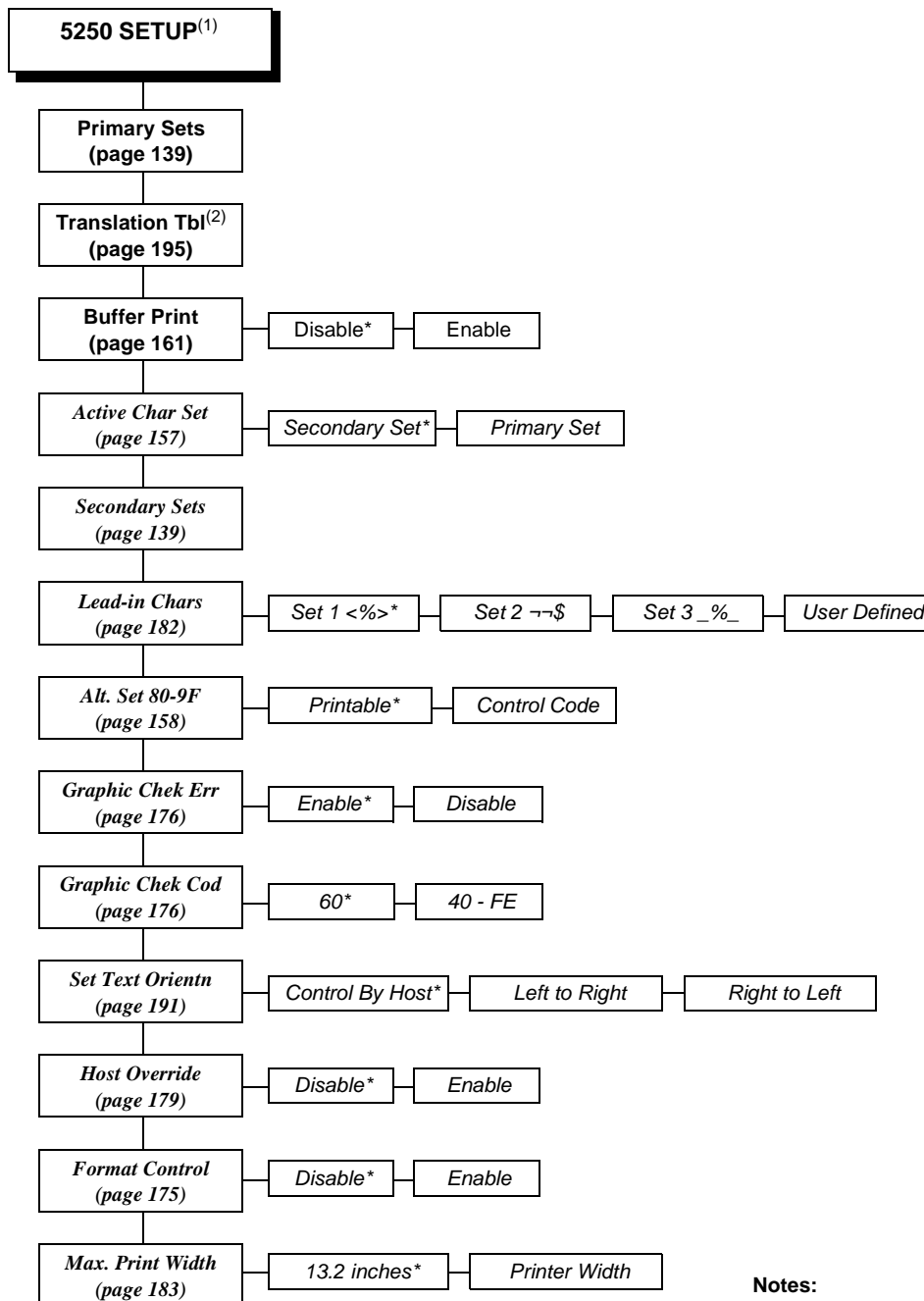
¹ Refer to page 169 for a more detailed description of this submenu.

² Refer to page 169 for a more detailed description of this submenu.

Default Code Pag⁽²⁾ (from page 136)

English/USA/Can*	Greek
English/US/Intl	Hebrew
Internat. Set 1	PC
Symbols Set 7	Internat. Set 5
Canadian/French	Hebrew ALT
Austrian/German	PC-Multilingual
Belgian Old	Latin 2/ROECE
Brazilian	Icelandic
Canada (French)	Cyrillic Old
Danish/Norw.	OCR A
Finnish/Swedish	OCR B
Italian	DCF
Japanese Eng.	US Text Subset
Portuguese	Turkish Latin 5
Spanish Speak.	Euro US/Can.
English (UK)	Euro Aust/Germ.
Aust/Germ. (ALT)	Euro Dan/Norw.
Dan/Norw. (ALT)	Euro Fin/Swed.
Fin/Swed. (ALT)	Euro Italian
Spanish (ALT)	Euro Spanish
Katakana	Euro UK Ireland
French Azerty	Euro French
Graphic Escape	Euro Internat.
Int. Typographic	Euro Icelandic
Arabic	

TN5250 SETUP



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ This menu appears only if the TN5250 option is installed.

² This menu does not appear if the IPDS emulation is installed.

TN5250 Setup - Primary Sets and Secondary Sets

5250 SETUP

Primary Sets (from page 138)

0037 English US*	0871 Icelandic
0037 Eng Nether	0290 Japan Kata
0500 Swiss Bil	0870 Latin 2
0500 Belg. New	0838 Thai
0273 Austr/Germ	1026 Turkish
0274 Belg. Old	0890 Yugos. Old
0275 Brazilian	1097 Farsi
0260 Canad Fren	1025 Cyrillic
0277 Danish	0256 Intern. 1
0278 Finnish	1112 Balt Mult
0297 French	0924 Euro Lat-9
0280 Italian	1122 Estonian
0281 Japan. Eng	1140 Euro Eng.
0282 Portuguese	1141 Euro Aust.
0284 Span Speak	1142 Euro Dan.
0285 English UK	1143 Euro Finn.
0892 OCR A	1144 Euro Ital.
0893 OCR B	1145 Euro Span.
0424 Hebrew	1146 Euro English UK
0803 Hebrew Old	1147 Euro Fren.
0420 Arabic	1148 Euro Swiss
0880 Cyril. Old	1149 Euro Ice.
0423 Greek Old	0500 Internat 5
875 Gr New Euro	

Secondary Sets (from page 138)

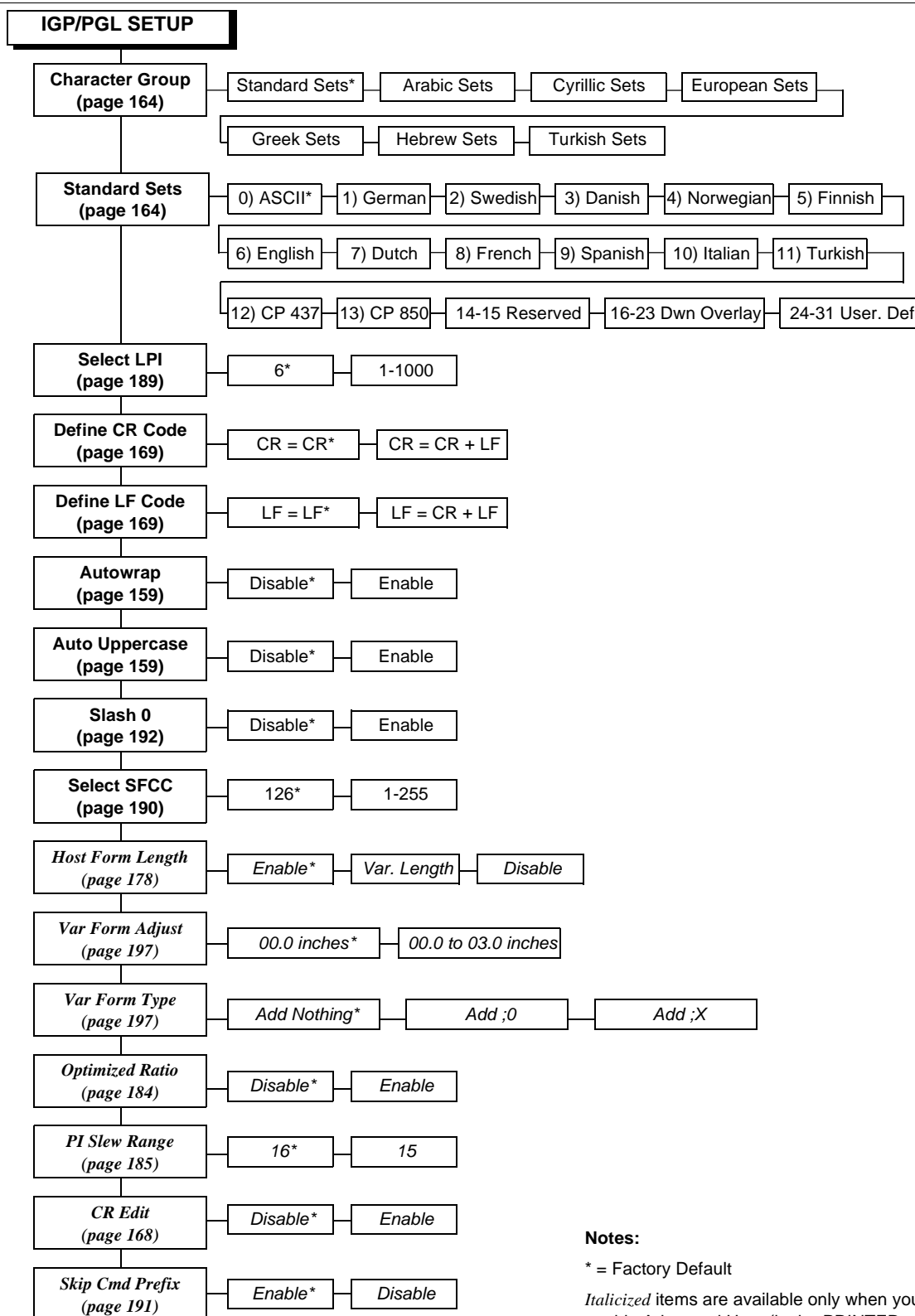
English US*	Spanish Speak.
Austrian/German	English UK
Belgian	Old Hebrew
Brazilian	Hebrew
Canadian French	Farsi/Latin
Danish/Norweg.	Greek Old
Finnish/Swedish	Greek New
French	Arabic
Italian	Turkish
Japanese Eng.	Latin2/ROECE
Japanese Katak.	Yugoslavian
Portuguese	Multinational
Spanish	

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Although these options are listed vertically here, use your plus (+) and minus (-) keys to cycle through the options when you are operating your printer.

IGP/PGL SETUP



Continued at the top of next page

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

IGP/PGL SETUP (cont. from page 140)

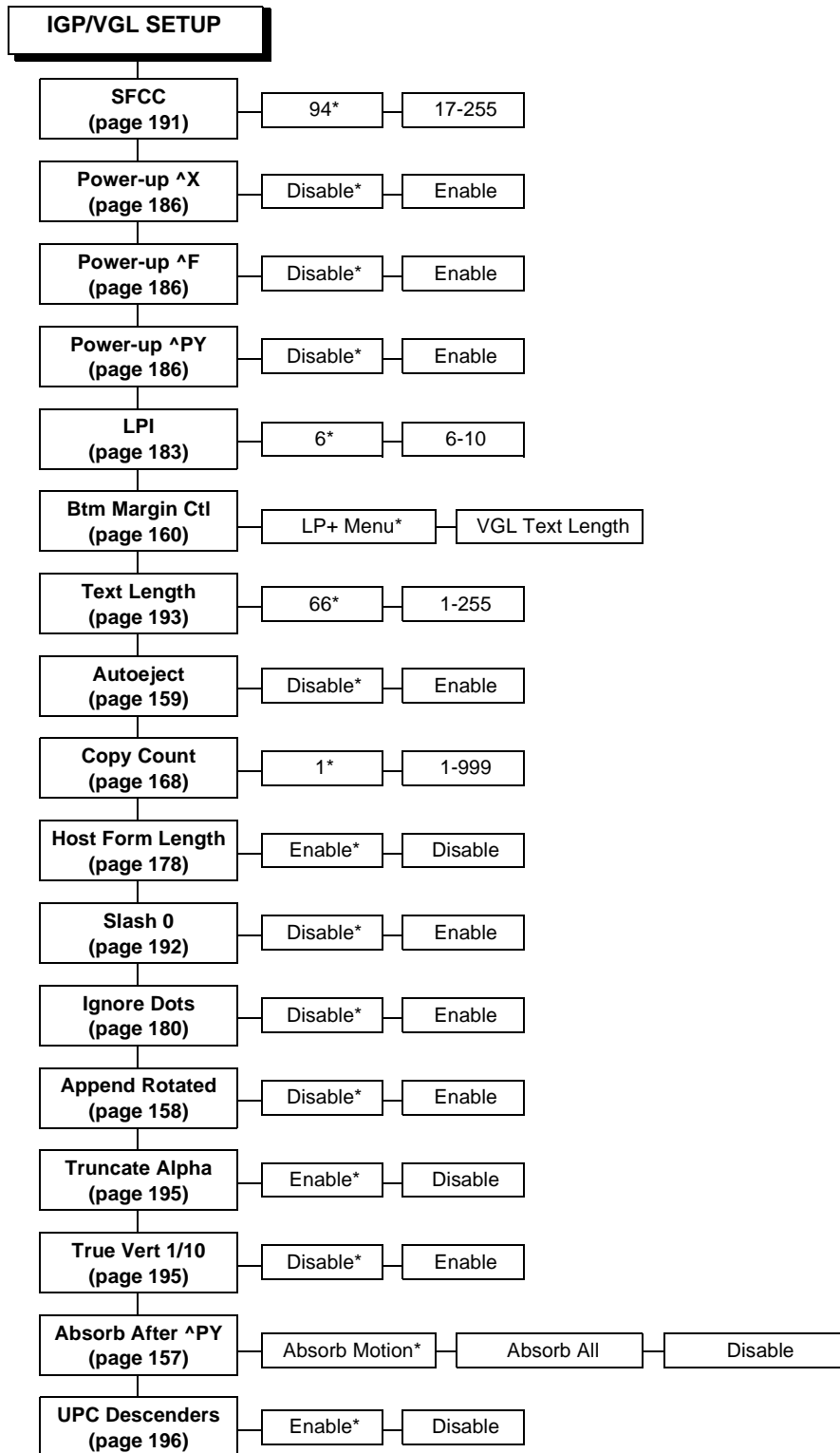
<i>Ignore Text</i> (page 181)	Disable*	Enable	
<i>Power on IGP/PGL</i> (page 186)	Enable*	Disable	
<i>Ext Execute Copy</i> (page 173)	Disable*	Enable	
<i>AI 00 Spaces</i> (page 157)	Disable*	Enable	
<i>Select SO Char</i> (page 190)	14*	0-255	
<i>Ignore Mode</i> (page 180)	Disable*	Enable	
<i>Select Char</i> (page 189)	0*	0-255	
<i>Do FF at TOF</i> (page 170)	Enable*	Disable	
<i>IGP100 Compatbl.</i> (page 181)	Disable*	Enable	
<i>Expanded Font</i> (page 172)	Scalable*	Block	Alt Block 1
<i>Scalable Size</i> (page 189)	Normal*	Block	
<i>Autoeject</i> (page 159)	Disable*	Enable	
<i>PGL Normal</i> (page 185)	LP+ Menu*	PGL Menu	
<i>UPC Descenders</i> (page 196)	Always*	Never	Only With PDF
<i>I-2/5 Selection</i> (page 179)	Leading Zero*	Trailing Space	X2 DPD Modulo 7 CD
<i>User-Def Ratio</i> (page 197)	Enable*	Disable	
<i>Error Report</i> (page 172)	On*	Debug Mode	Fault Off
<i>Repeat Form Opt</i> (page 188)	Enable*	Disable	

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

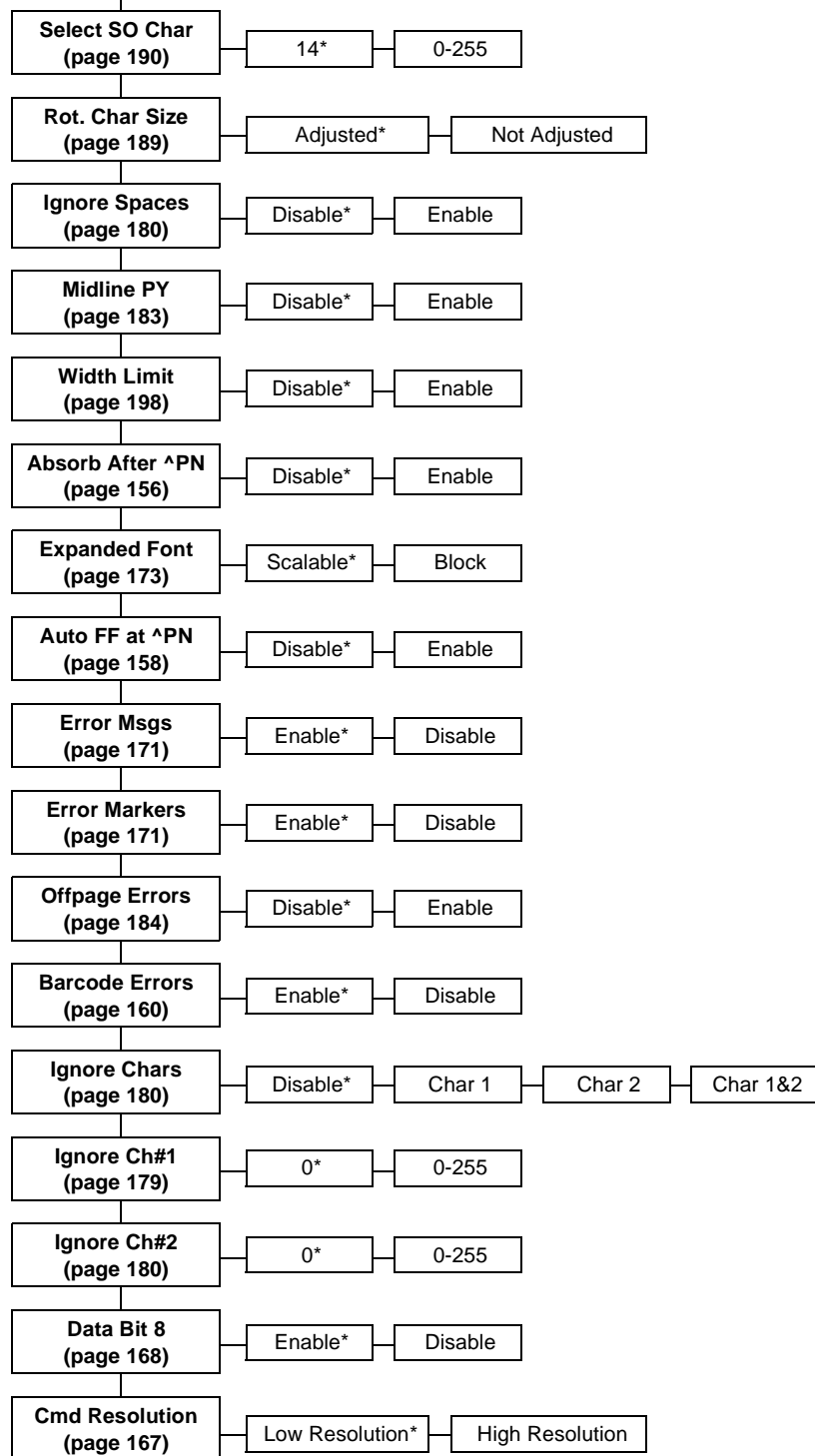
IGP/VGL SETUP



Continued at the top of next page

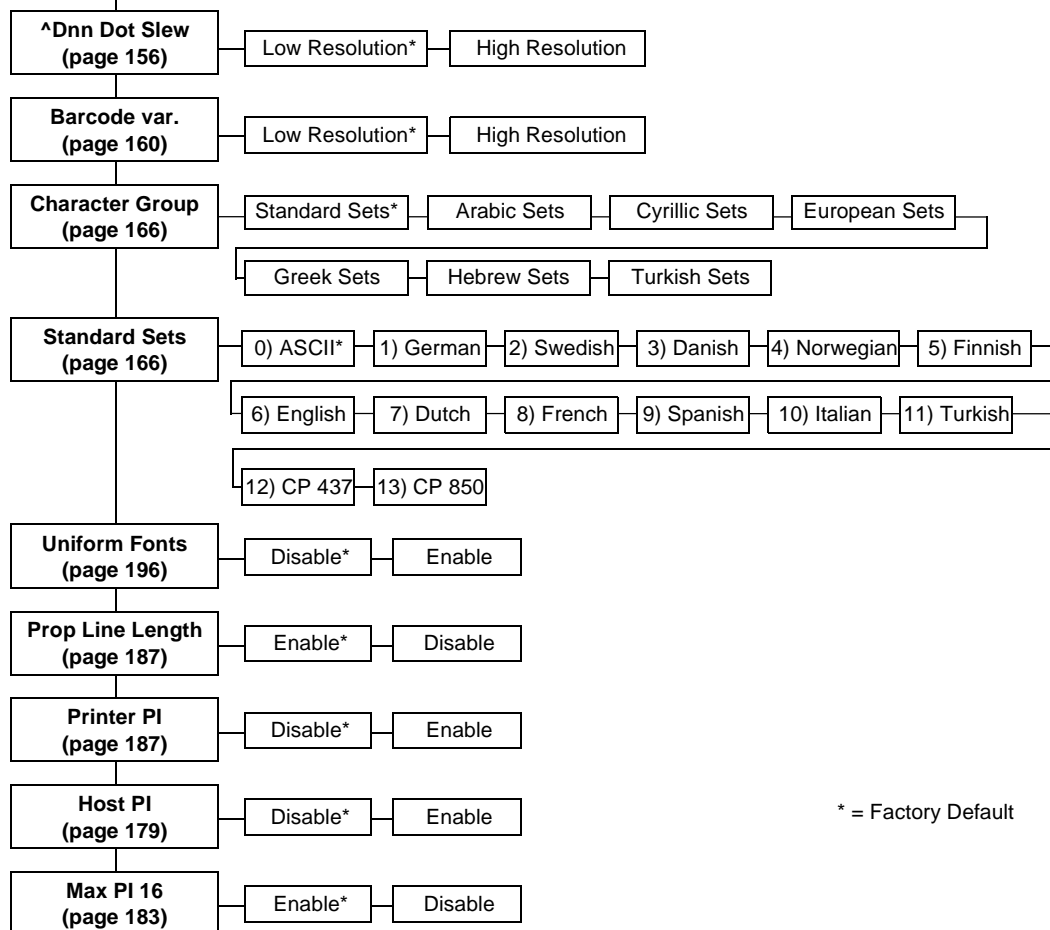
* = Factory Default

IGP/VGL SETUP (cont. from prev. page)



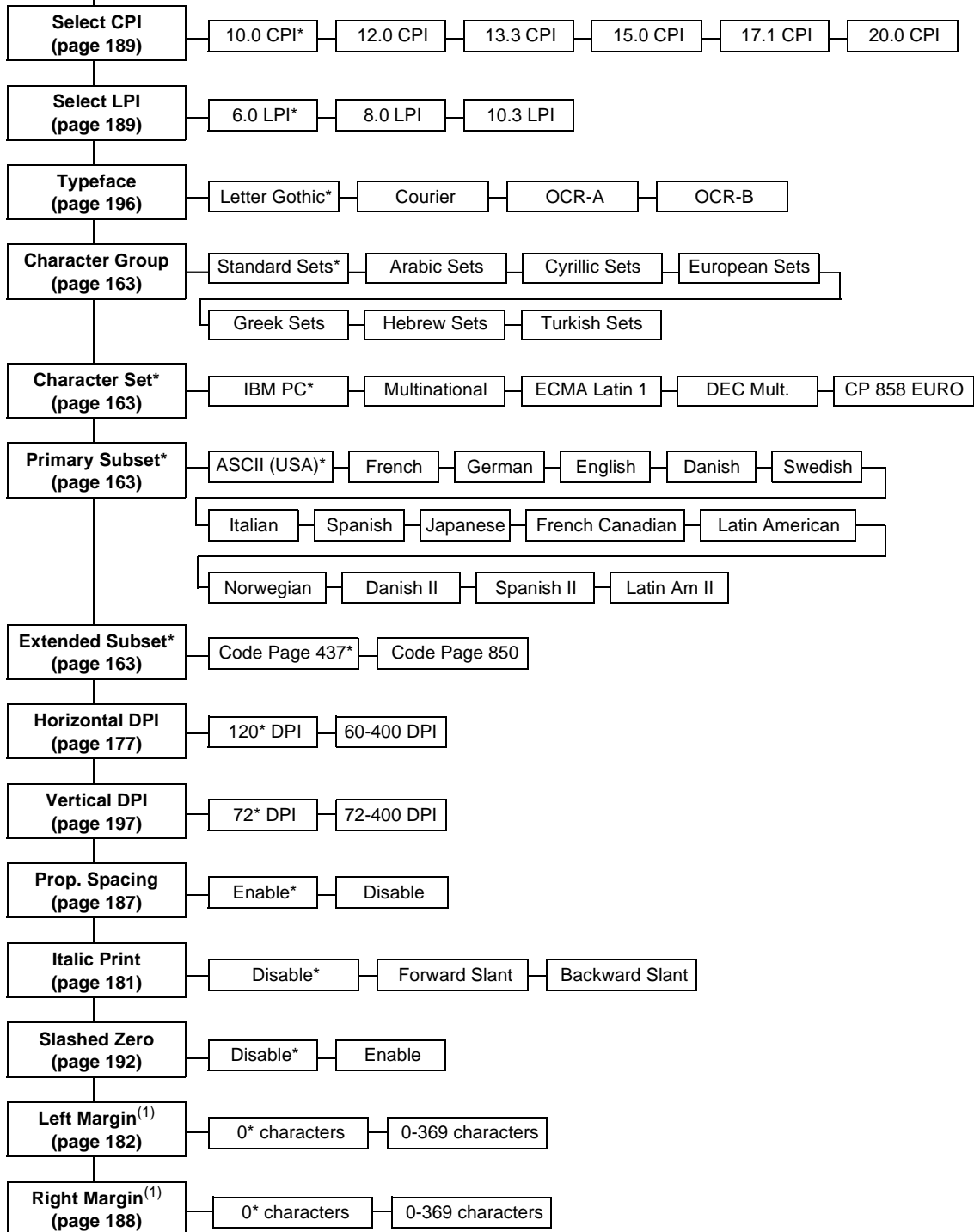
Continued at the top of next page

* = Factory Default

IGP/VGL SETUP
 (cont. from prev. page)


P-SERIES SETUP

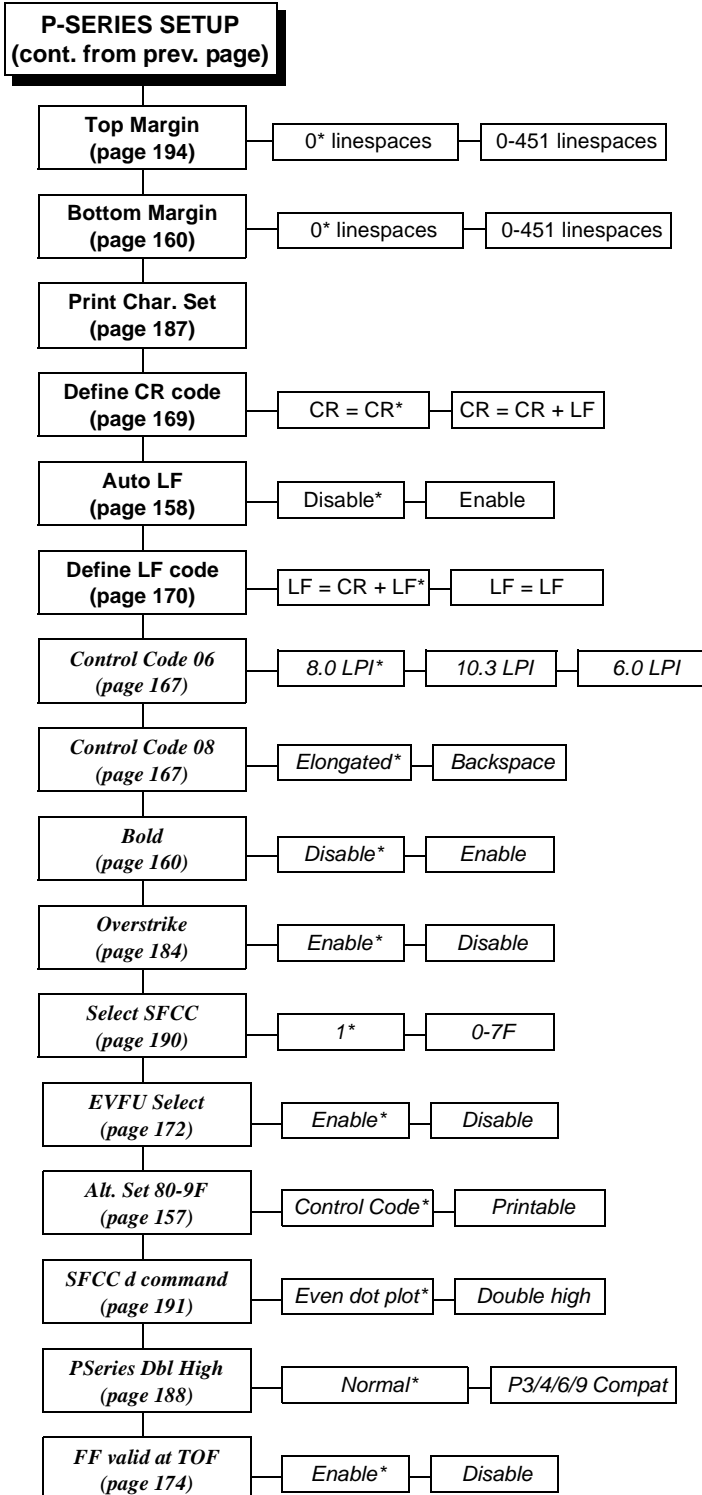
P-SERIES SETUP



* = Factory Default

¹ These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

Continued at the top of next page

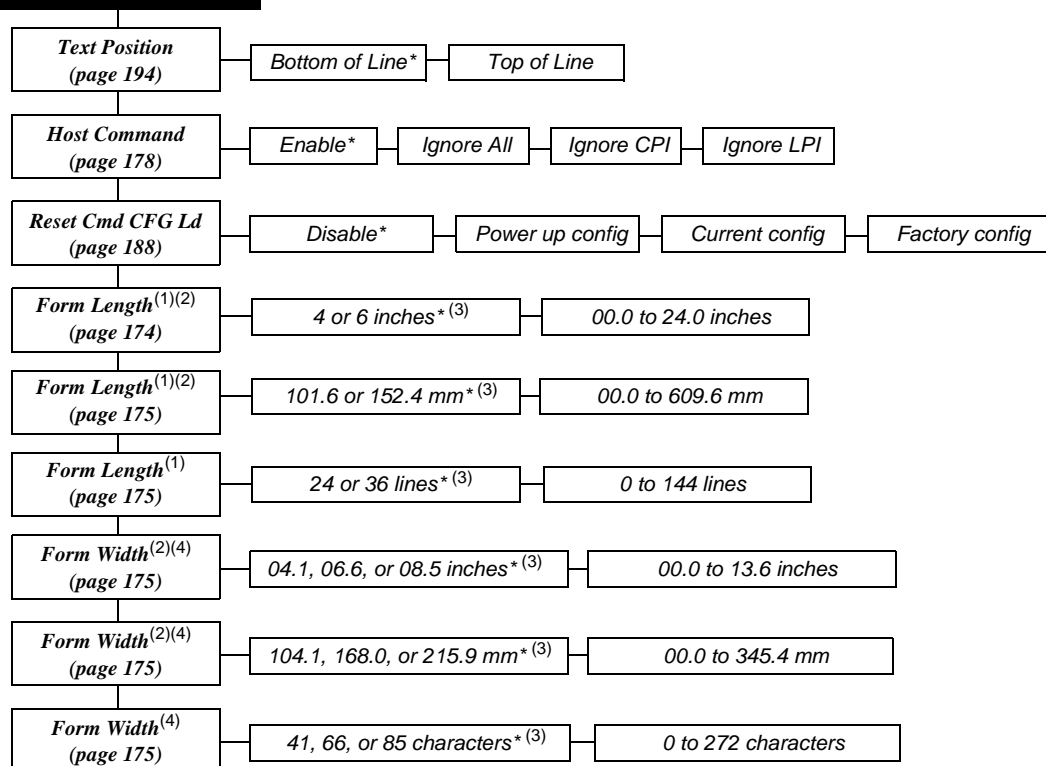

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

Continued at the top of next page

P-SERIES SETUP (cont. from prev. page)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

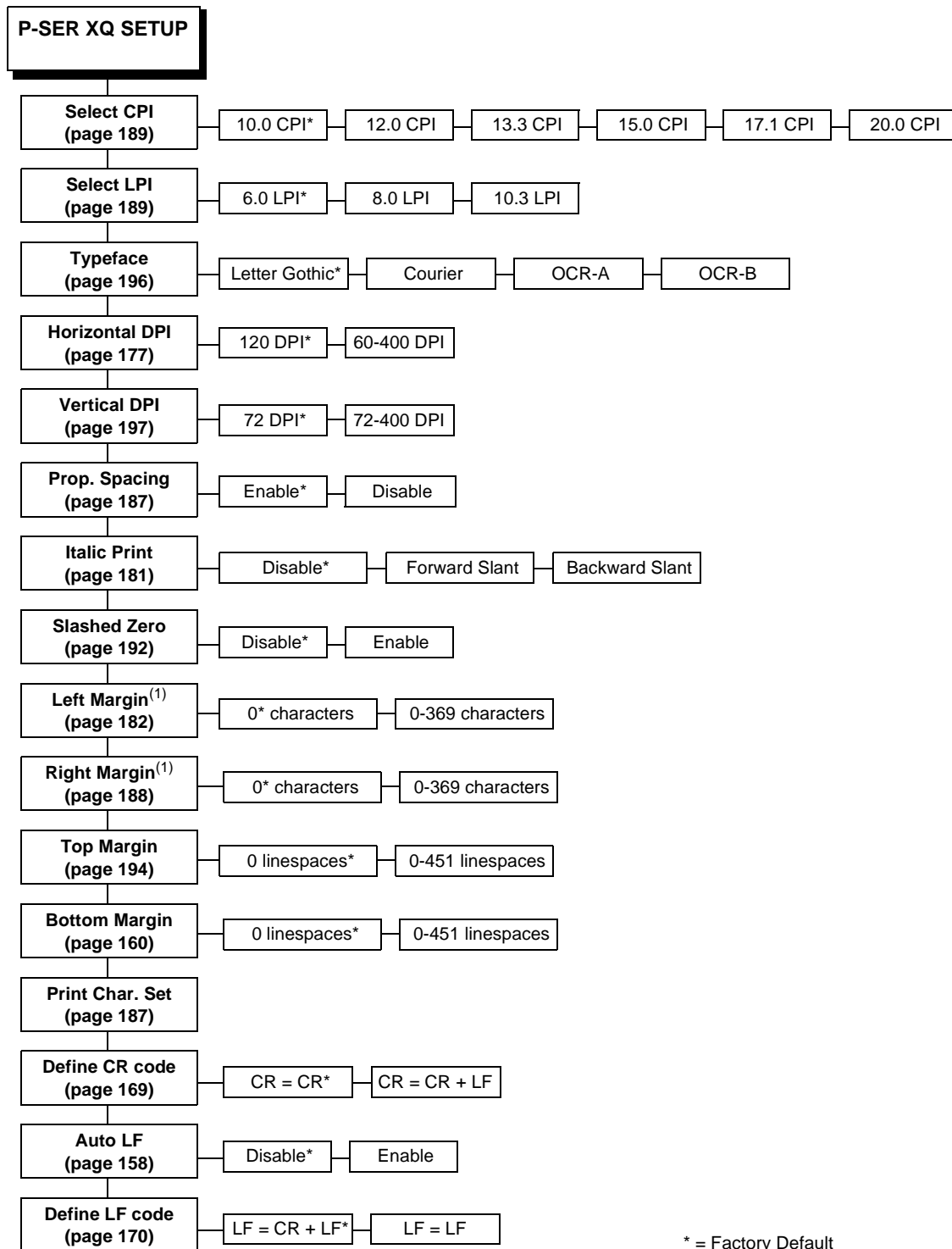
¹ All three Form Length submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

² These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

³ The factory default value depends on the width of the printer model.

⁴ All three Form Width submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

P-SER XQ SETUP

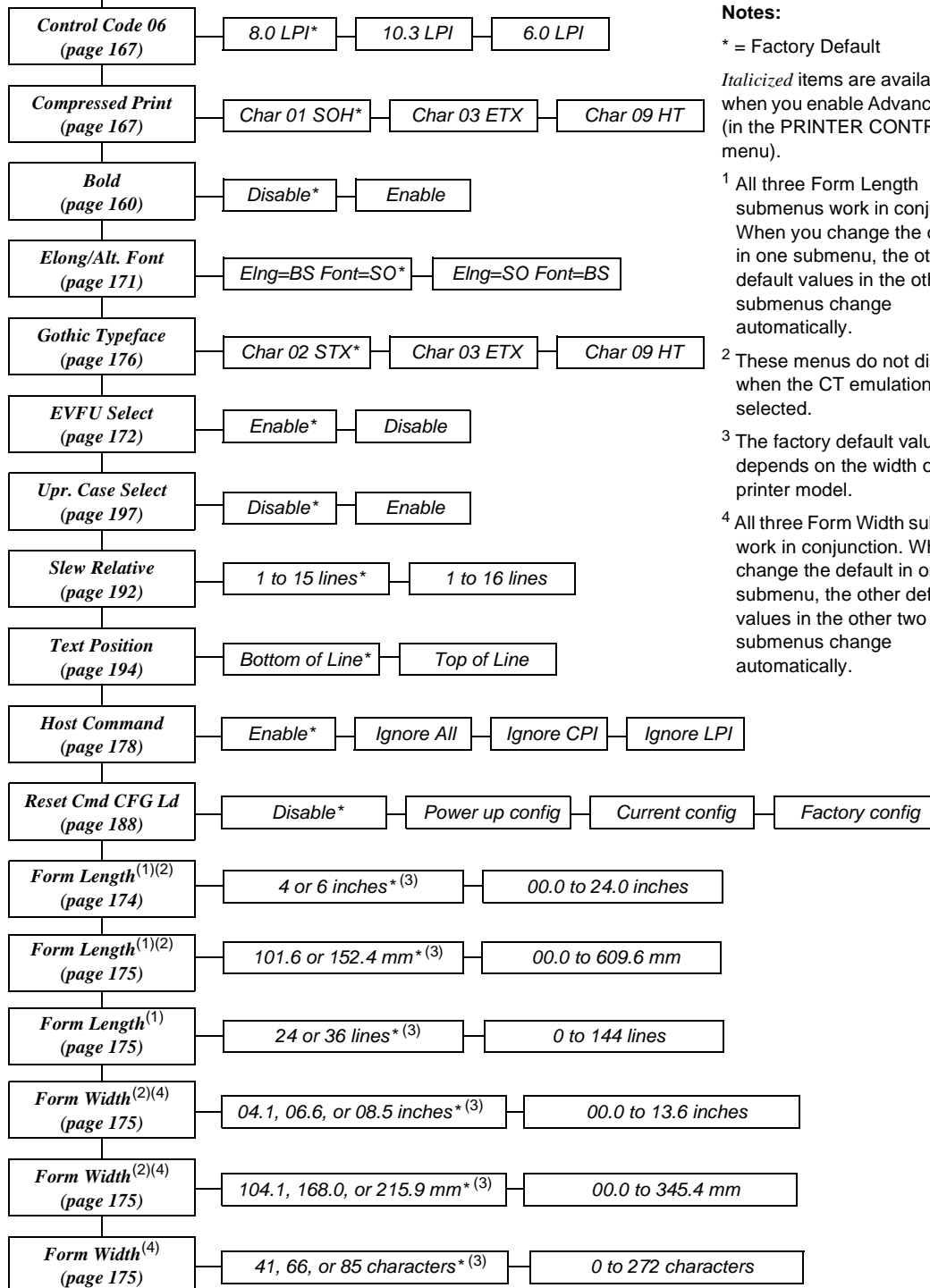


* = Factory Default

¹ These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

Continued at the top of next page

P-SER XQ SETUP (cont. from prev. page)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ All three Form Length submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

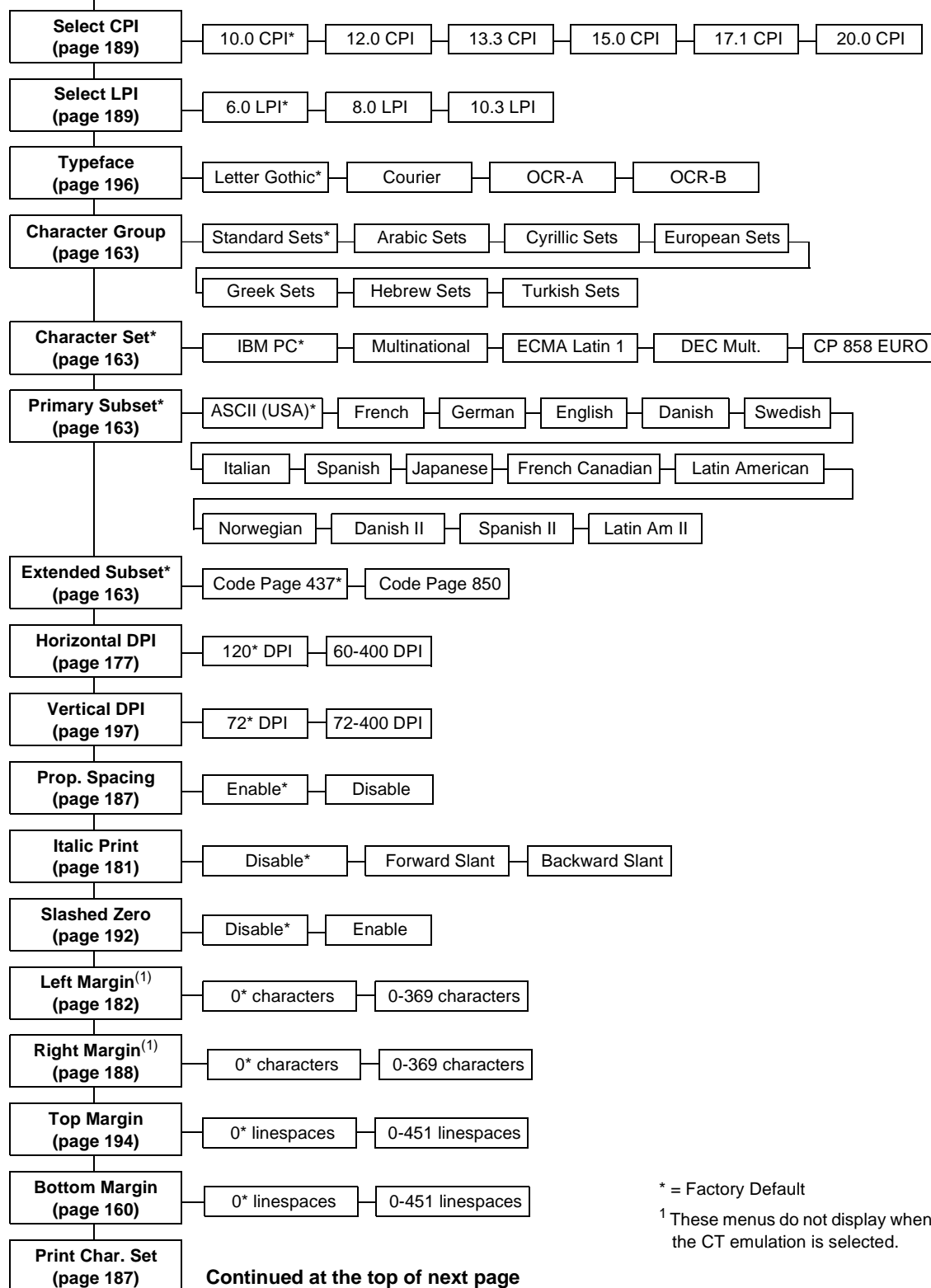
² These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

³ The factory default value depends on the width of the printer model.

⁴ All three Form Width submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

SER MATRIX SETUP

SER MATRIX SETUP

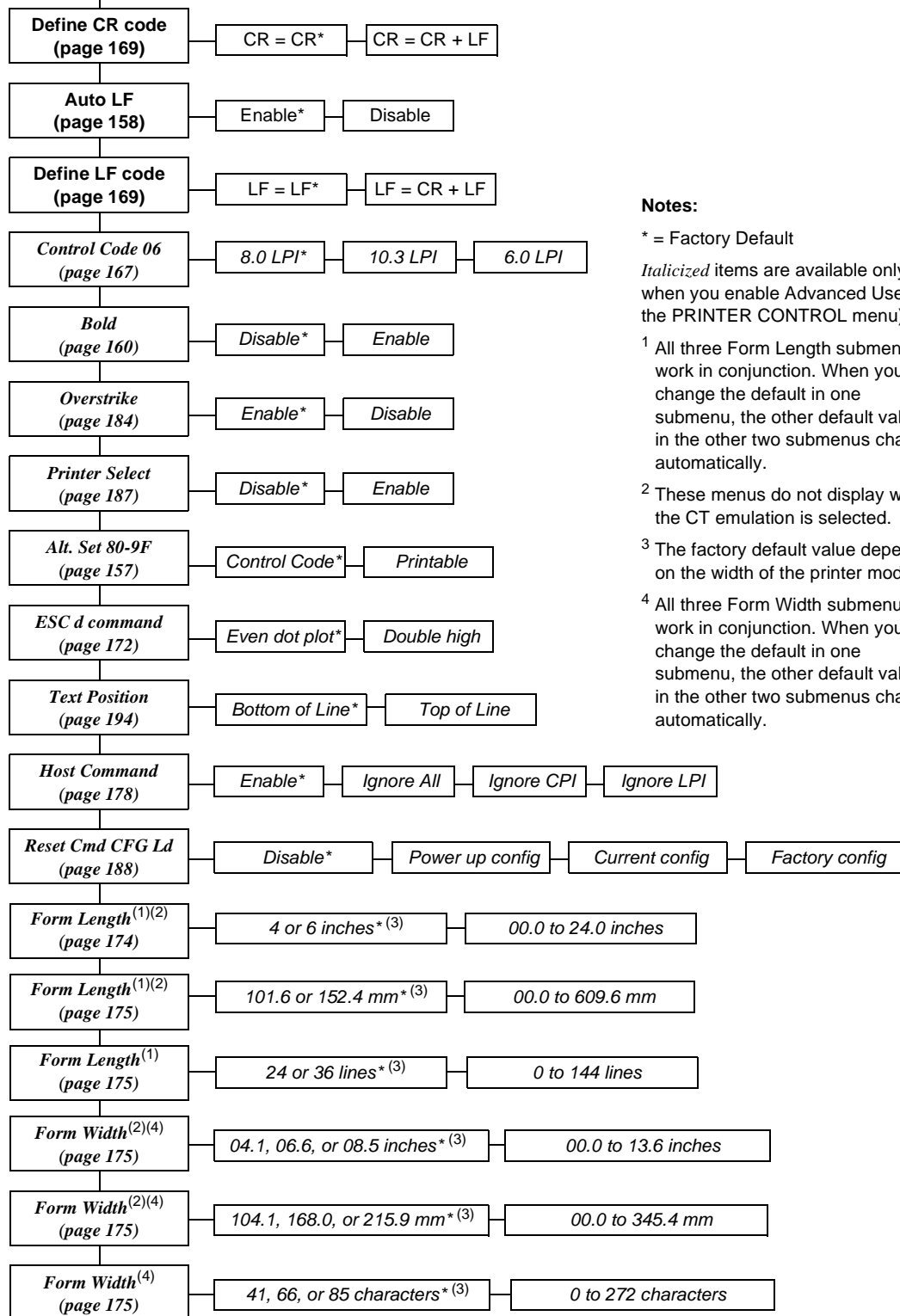


* = Factory Default

¹ These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

Continued at the top of next page

SER MATRIX SETUP (cont. from prev. page)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

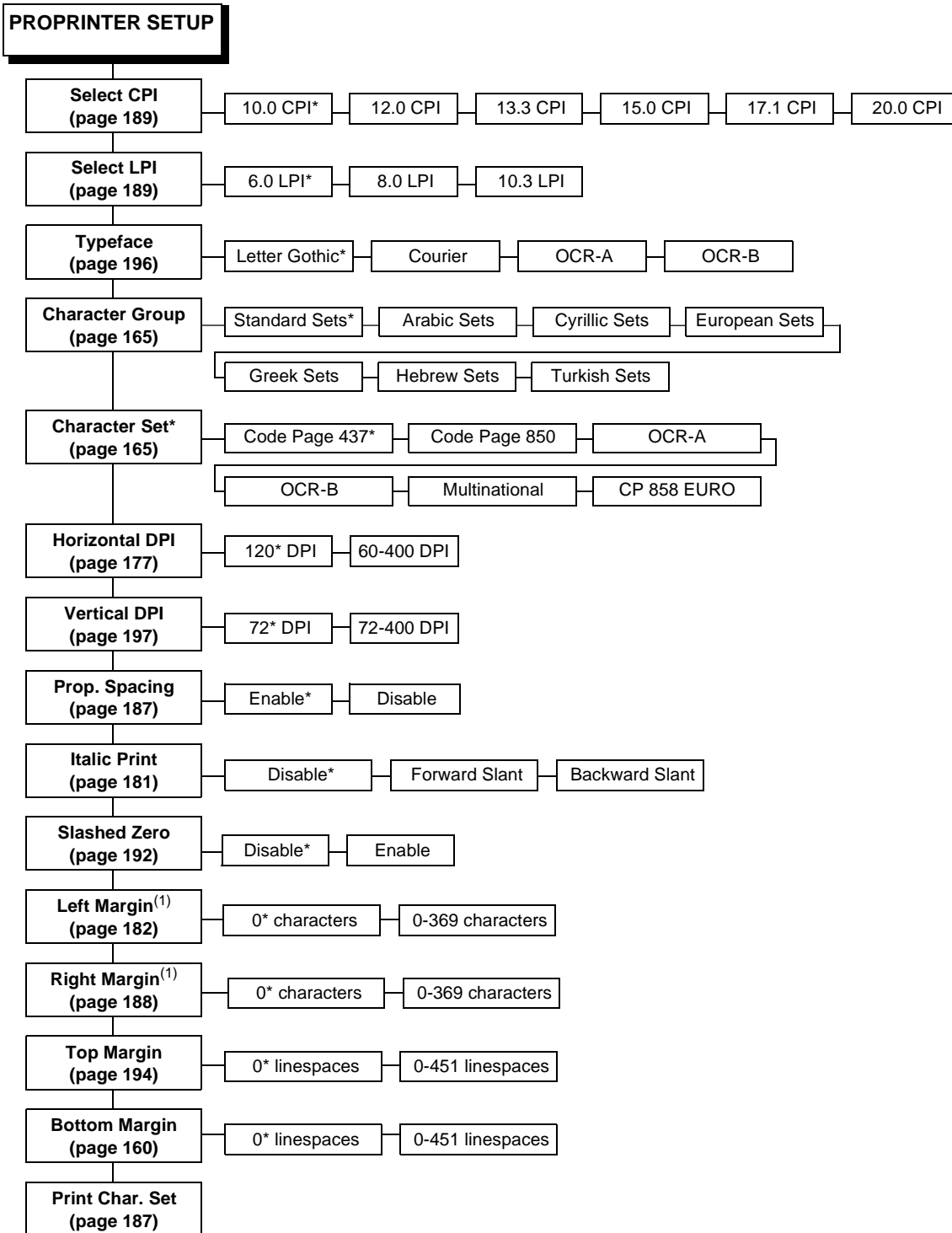
¹ All three Form Length submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

² These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

³ The factory default value depends on the width of the printer model.

⁴ All three Form Width submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

PROPRINTER SETUP

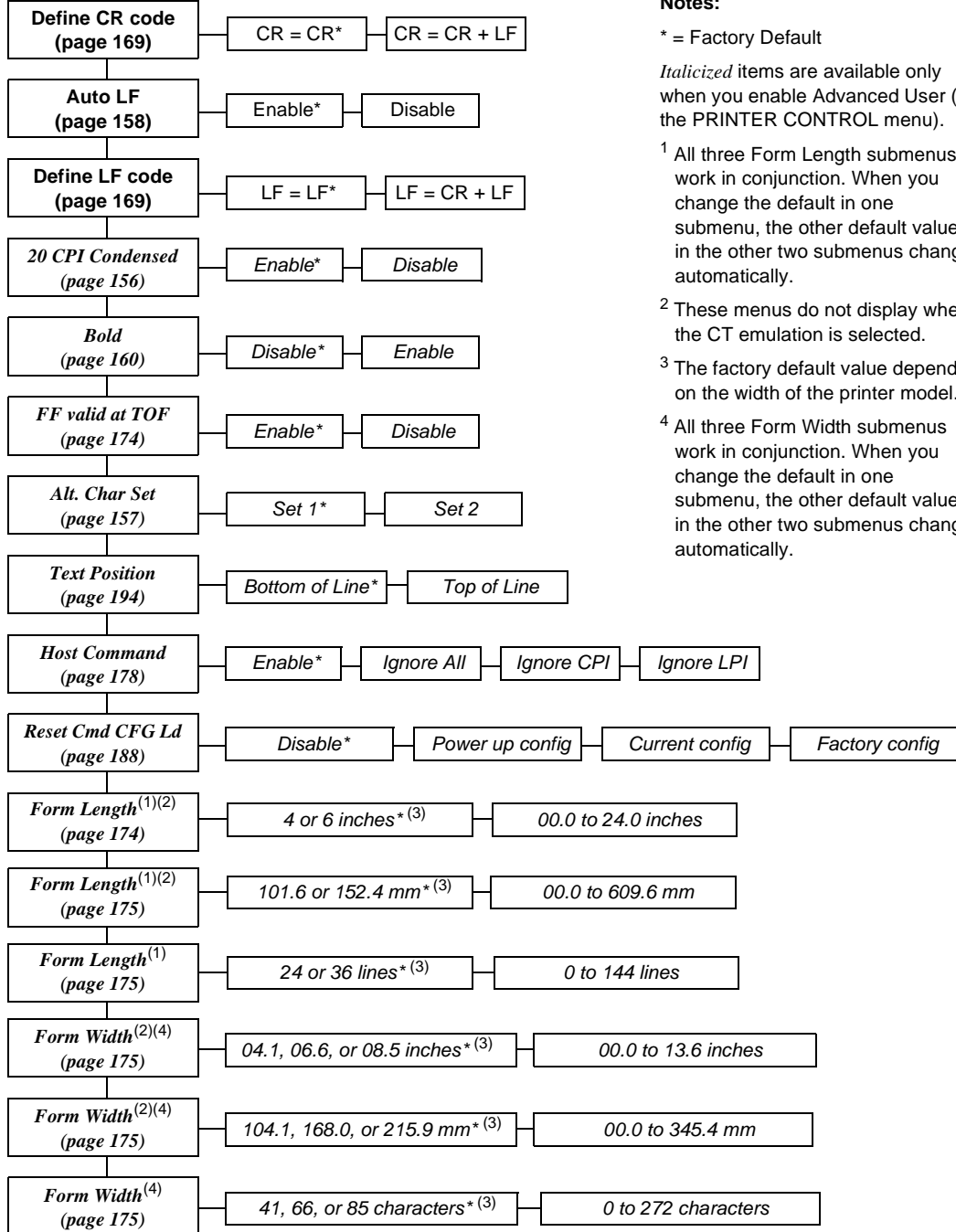


* = Factory Default

¹ These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

Continued at the top of next page

PROPRINTER SETUP (cont. from prev. page)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

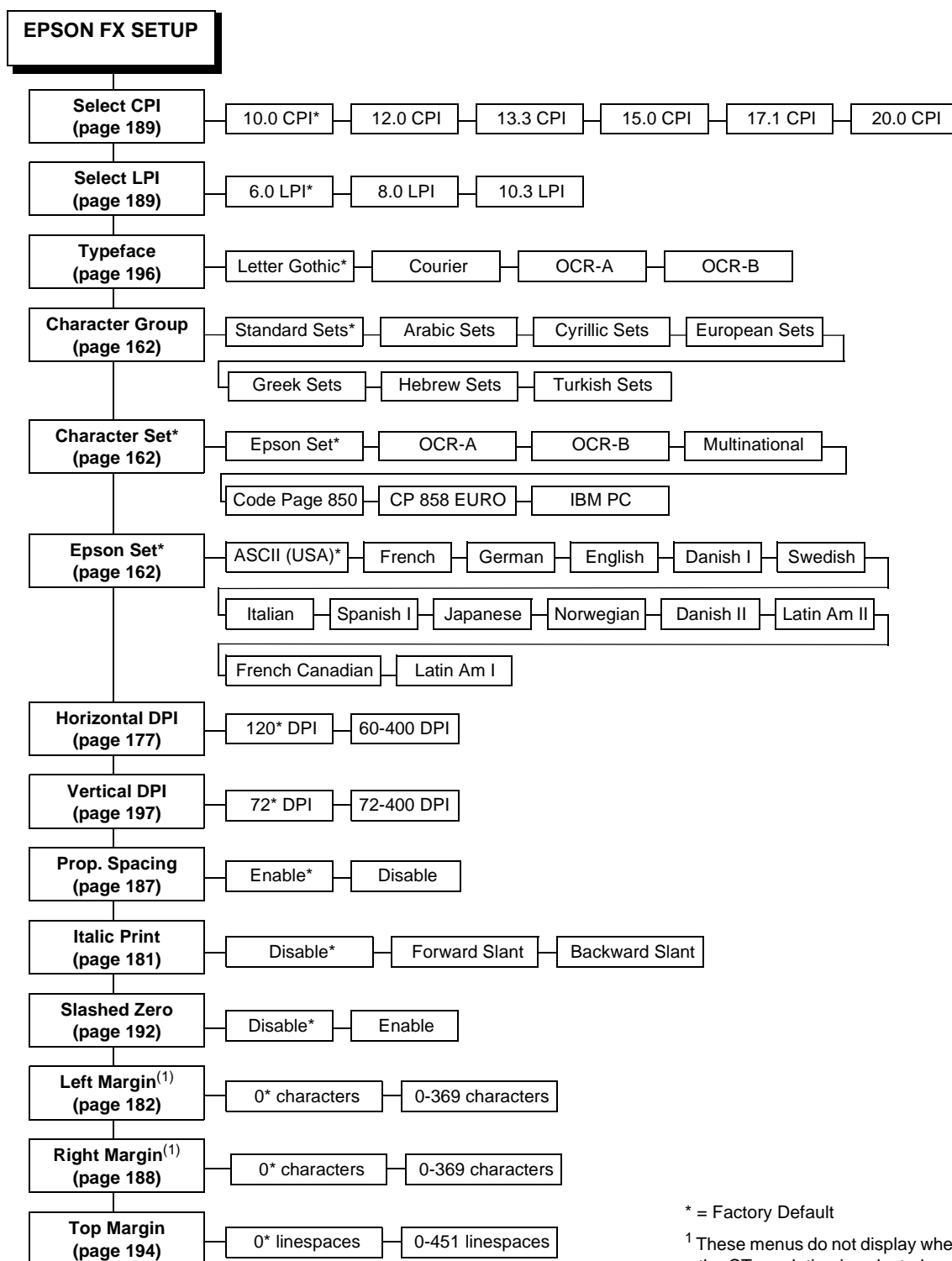
¹ All three Form Length submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

² These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

³ The factory default value depends on the width of the printer model.

⁴ All three Form Width submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

EPSON FX SETUP

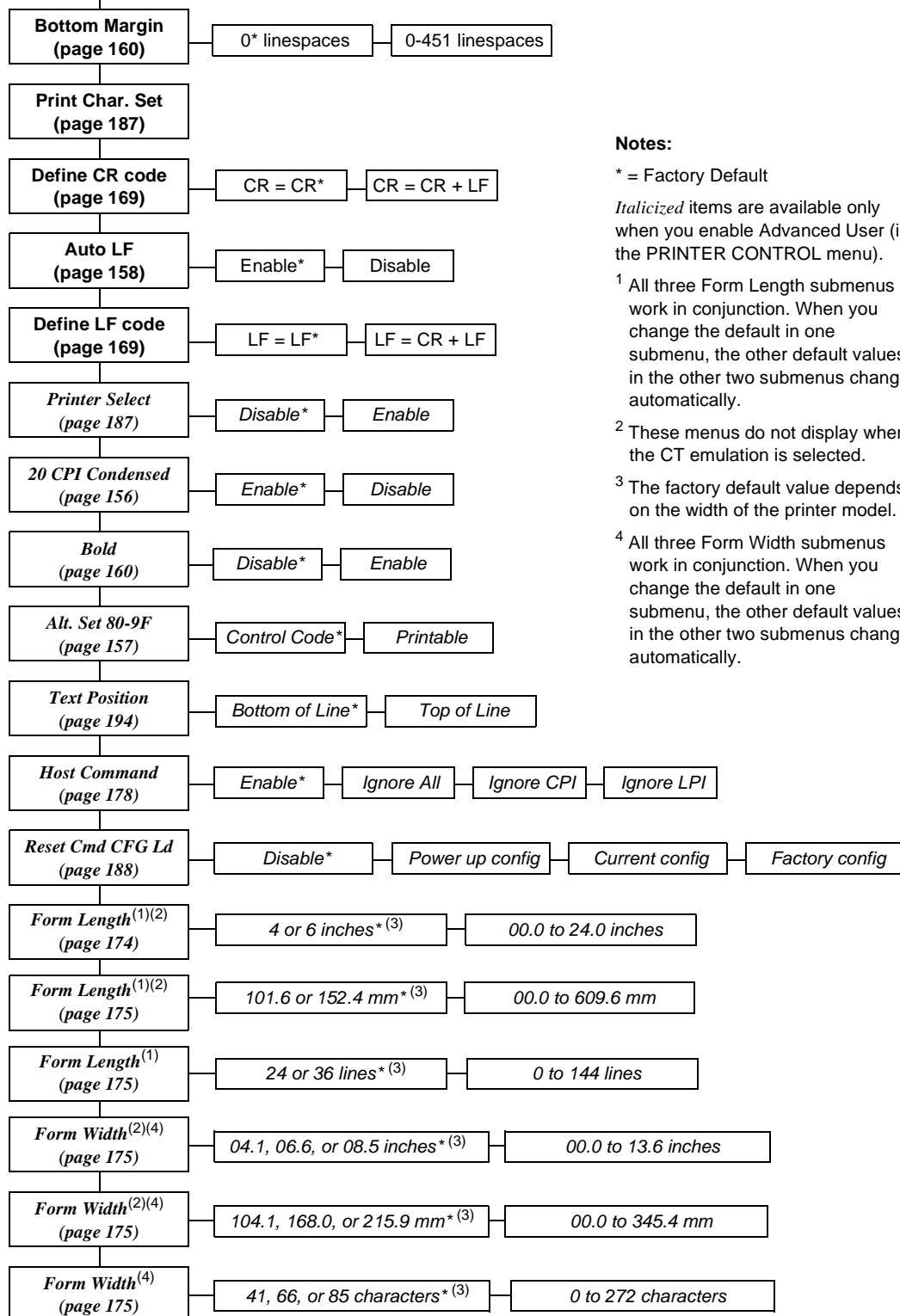


* = Factory Default

¹ These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

Continued at the top of next page

EPSON FX SETUP (cont. from prev. page)



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ All three Form Length submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

² These menus do not display when the CT emulation is selected.

³ The factory default value depends on the width of the printer model.

⁴ All three Form Width submenus work in conjunction. When you change the default in one submenu, the other default values in the other two submenus change automatically.

Emulation Submenus

NOTE: The following descriptions are grouped together for all emulations and are listed in alphabetical order.

^Dnn Dot Slew

(From page 143.)

- **Low Resolution.** Sets the dot slew command dot values to be interpreted as 60 dpi P-Series dots.
- **High Resolution.** Sets the dot slew command dot values to be interpreted as print engine dots.

The factory default is Low Resolution.

20 CPI Condensed

(From page 153, page 155.) Compressed print characters are narrower than the normal character set. This is helpful for applications where you need to print the maximum amount of information on a page.

- **Enable.** Prints about 60 percent of the width of normal characters when compressed print is chosen by the host computer.
- **Disable.** Does not compress print widths, even if condensed print is chosen by the host.

The factory default is Enable.

5225 World Trade

(From page 131.) The 5225 emulation has a standard multinational character set that serves as a base and 14 extended world trade character set assortments.

The options are Standard Char (the factory default) and Extended Char.

Absorb After ^PN

(From page 143.)

- **Disable.** The paper motion line terminators that immediately follow the ^PN command are sent to the printer and processed.
- **Enable.** The paper motion line terminators that immediately follow the ^PN command are ignored.

The factory default is Disable.

Absorb After ^PY

(From page 142.)

- **Absorb Motion.** The paper motion line terminator immediately following the graphics ^PY command will be ignored.
- **Absorb All.** The system ignores all the data and terminator until a host generated terminator is detected.
- **Disable.** System terminators following a graphics command are sent to the printer and result in paper motion.

The factory default is Absorb Motion.

Active Char Set

(From page 128, page 131, page 138.) Selects which group of character sets (Primary or Secondary) will be active.

The factory default is Secondary Set.

AI 00 Spaces

(From page 141.) This option is designated for EAN/UCC-128 barcodes whose application identifier (AI) is 00.

- **Disable.** The printable data field is printed with the AI enclosed in parentheses. This is the standard EAN/UCC-128 format.
- **Enable.** The printable data field is printed with the UCC fields separated by spaces. This option is IGP-X00 compatible.

The factory default is Disable.

Alt. Char Set

(From page 153.)

- **Set 1.** Interprets data in the range of hex 80 through hex 9F as a control code.
- **Set 2.** Prints data in the range of hex 80 through hex 9F.

The factory default is Set 1.

Alt. Set 80-9F (P-Series, Serial Matrix, Epson FX)

(From page 146, page 151, page 155.)

- **Control Code.** Interprets data in the range of hex 80 through hex 9F as a control code.
- **Printable.** Prints data in the range of hex 80 through hex 9F.

The factory default is Control Code.

Alt. Set 80-9F (Coax, Twinax, TN5250)

(From page 128, page 131, page 138.)

- **Printable.** Prints data in the range of hex 80 through hex 9F.
- **Control Code.** Interprets data in the range of hex 80 through hex 9F as a control code.

The factory default is Printable.

Append Rotated

(From page 142.)

- **Disable.** Logos and alphanumeric strings are treated as separate elements.
- **Enable.** Appends logos to an alphanumeric string rotated in a clockwise, counterclockwise, or inverted orientation.

The factory default is Disable.

Auto FF at ^PN

(From page 143.) When enabled, a FF will be generated automatically to slew to the end of form when the ^PN command is encountered, and when the current vertical position is not at the top of form.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Auto LF (P-Series, P-Series XQ)

(From page 146, page 148.) This option defines the printer action when print data is received past the forms width setting.

- **Disable.** Discards any data past the forms width.
- **Enable.** Performs an automatic carriage return and line feed when data is received past the forms width.

The factory default is Disable.

Auto LF (Serial Matrix, Proprinter XL, Epson FX)

(From page 151, page 153, page 155.) This option defines the printer action when print data is received past the forms width setting.

- **Enable.** Performs an automatic carriage return and line feed when data is received past the forms width.
- **Disable.** Discards any data past the forms width.

The factory default is Enable.

Auto Skip at End

(From page 129.) Specifies whether to perform an automatic form feed at the end of a print buffer. If form feed is the last character in the print order, the form feed function is supplied by the Auto Skip At End option.

- **Off.** Sets the printer to print at print position 1 of the next line.
- **On.** Sets the printer to print at print position 1 of the first line of the next form.

The factory default is Off.

Auto Uppercase

(From page 140.) This parameter enables the printer to print text in all uppercase when using the ALPHA command.

- **Disable.** The printer will print text in upper and lowercase.
- **Enable.** The printer will print text in uppercase only.

The factory default is Disable.

Autoeject (PGL)

(From page 141.) If the last page of a job is not full, that is, the data does not fill the entire page, you can instruct the printer to eject the page or to stop and hold the page at the last print position.

- **Disable.** The printer does not eject the last page unless you send a Page Eject command or until the printer receives another print job.
- **Enable.** The printer ejects the last page after the entire job has been processed and printed.

The factory default is Disable.

Autoeject (VGL)

(From page 142.) Determines paper handling upon exiting the VGL Repeated Form and Dynamic Form commands.

- **Disable.** Holds the print position at the bottom of the form.
- **Enable.** Issues a form feed after the last form is printed so all pages will be physically printed.

The factory default is Disable.

Autowrap

(From page 140.) This parameter determines if text will wrap to the next line when the line of text exceeds the right margin.

- **Disable.** Truncates the text beyond the right margin until a CR or CR + LF is received.
- **Enable.** Automatically inserts a CR + LF after a full print line.

The factory default is Disable.

Barcode Errors

(From page 143.)

- **Enable.** An error message will print when invalid bar code data is encountered.
- **Disable.** VGL will not print an error for illegal bar code data; the bar code will be skipped.

NOTE: When Barcode Errors is disabled, the VGL emulation will try to make the best use of invalid data by either truncating extra digits or adding zeros to the end of bar code data to meet minimum data length requirements for some bar codes. Not all errors will be corrected.

The factory default is Enable.

Barcode var.

(From page 144.) This command only applies for IBARC barcode command format.

- **Low Resolution.** Sets barcode ratio dot values to be interpreted as line matrix printer (60 x72) dots.
- **High Resolution.** Sets barcode ratio dot values to be interpreted as print engine dots (300 x 300 or 203 x 203).

The factory default is Low Resolution.

Bold

(From page 146, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

- **Disable.** Text is printed normally.
- **Enable.** Text is printed with a heavy line thickness.

The factory default is Disable.

Bottom Margin

(From page 146, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 155.)

Defined in linespaces, starting from line zero at the bottom of the page and incrementing from the bottom up.

The range is 0-451 linespaces, and the factory default is 0 linespaces.

Btm Margin Ctl

(From page 142.) Determines the page's bottom margin. If this option is set to VGL Text Length, then Text Length changes the bottom margin value in the LP+ Emulation sub-menu as follows: bottom = physical page length-top margin-text length. If the option is set to LP+ Emulation Menu, then a change in text length has no effect and the bottom margin setting in the LP+ Emulation menu will be used although the new text length value still shows in the menu.

The options are LP+ Menu (the factory default) and VGL Text Length.

Buffer Print

(From page 128, page 131, page 134, page 135, page 138.)

- **Disable.** The printer will print normally.
- **Enable.** The printer prints the EBCDIC data and control codes received from the host as hex values.

NOTE: Use of this parameter may alter print attributes set by the host computer. A power cycle may be required after changing Buffer Print from enable to disable.

The factory default is Disable.

Buffer Reprint

(From page 128, page 134.) This option is valid only when the printer is printing in Coax SCS mode. When the ENTER key is pressed, "Buffer Reprint Enabled" is displayed and an Intervention Required status is sent to the host. Pressing ENTER again cancels the Buffer Reprint function and "Buffer Reprint Disabled" is displayed.

Cancel IGP/DCU

(From page 129, page 131.)

- **Enable.** Cancels all buffers when a job is put on hold from the host or when the CANCEL key is pressed.
- **Disable.** Does not cancel any internal buffer in the printer when a job is put on hold from the host, or when the CANCEL key is pressed.

The factory default is Enable.

Change Case

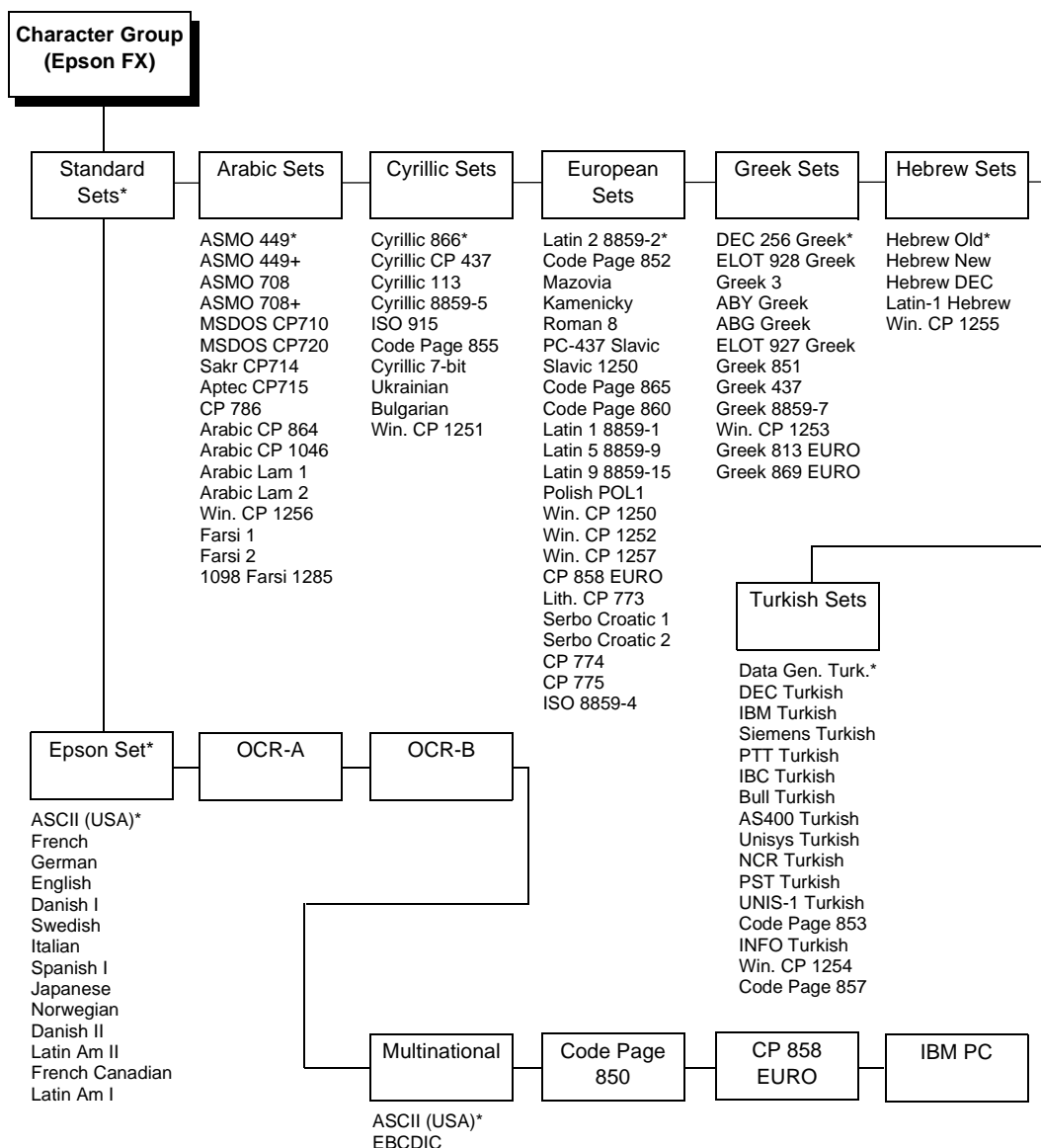
(From page 129.) Specifies the font as Mono or Dual Case. This option is available only in Coax non-SCS mode. The host will be notified of the change when the printer is put online. Mono Case prints the same as Dual Case if the character set is one of the following "right to left" sets: Katak, Hebrew, Old Hebrew, and Farsi.

SCS (Systems Network Architecture Character String) Mode is controlled by the host computer.

The options are Dual Case (the factory default) and Mono Case.

Character Group and Character Sets (Epson FX)

(From page 154.) This menu item selects the character set used by the printer. The available character sets are shown below.



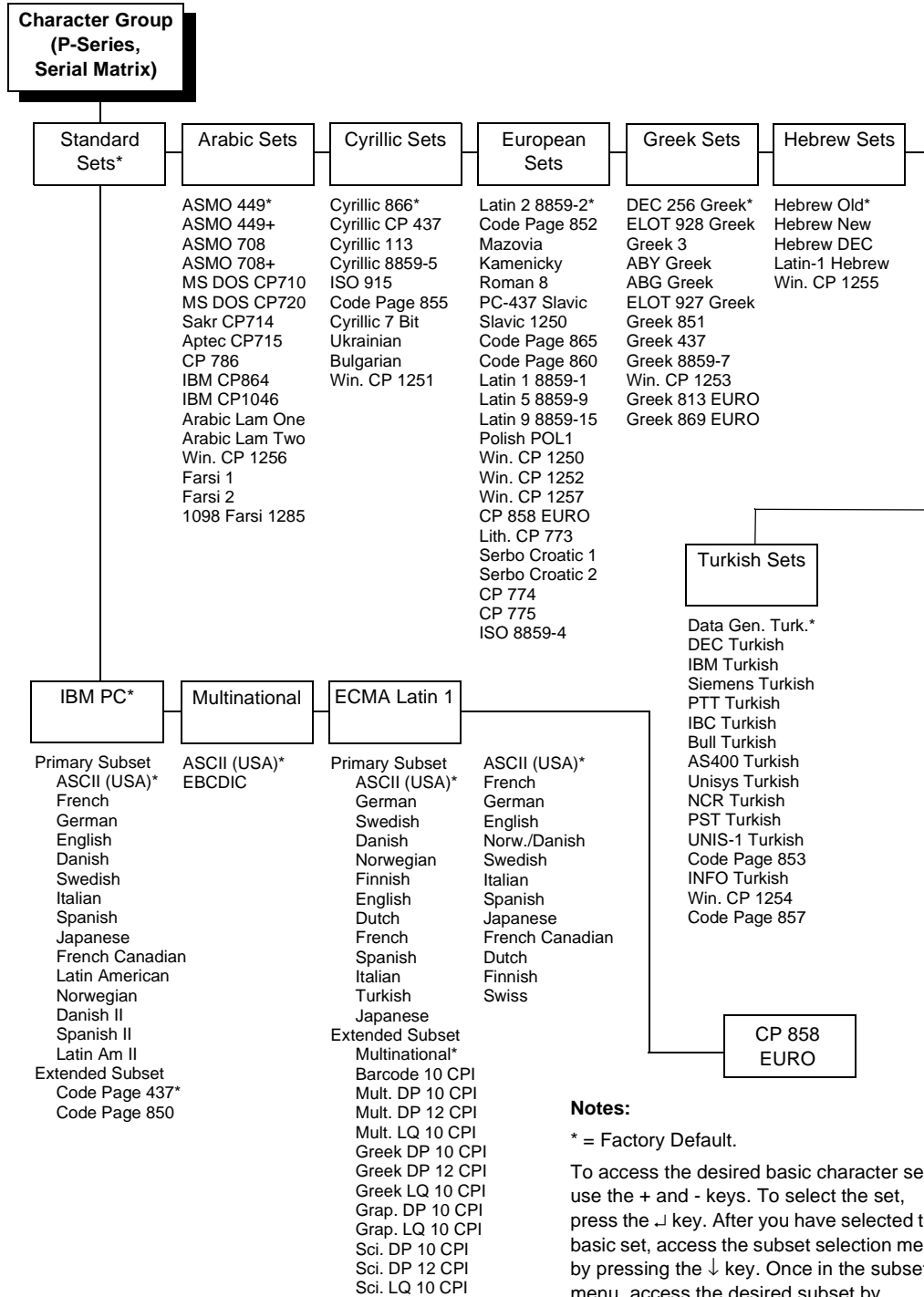
Notes:

* = Factory Default.

To access the desired basic character set, use the + and - keys. To select the set, press the ↵ key. After you have selected the basic set, access the subset selection menu by pressing the ↓ key. Once in the subset menu, access the desired subset by pressing the + and - keys and select it by pressing the ↵ key. The Epson subset is accessed and selected in the same manner.

Character Group and Character Sets (P-Series, Serial Matrix)

(From page 145, page 150.) This menu item selects the character set used by the printer. The available character sets are shown below.



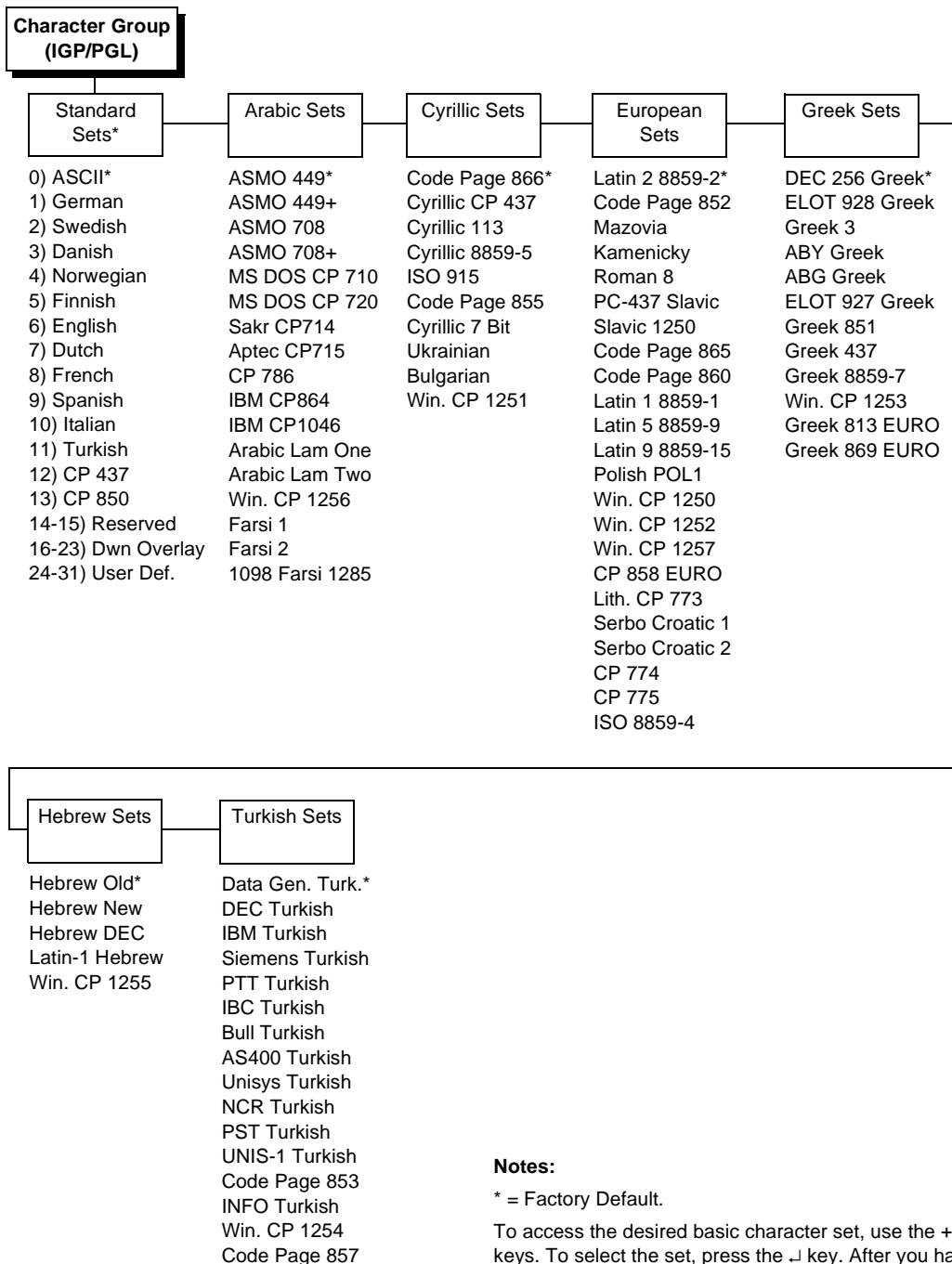
Notes:

* = Factory Default.

To access the desired basic character set, use the + and - keys. To select the set, press the ↵ key. After you have selected the basic set, access the subset selection menu by pressing the ↓ key. Once in the subset menu, access the desired subset by pressing the + and - keys and select it by pressing the ↵ key. Primary and extended character subsets are accessed and selected in the same manner.

Character Group and Character Sets (IGP/PGL)

(From page 140.) This menu item selects the character set used by the printer. The available character sets are shown below.



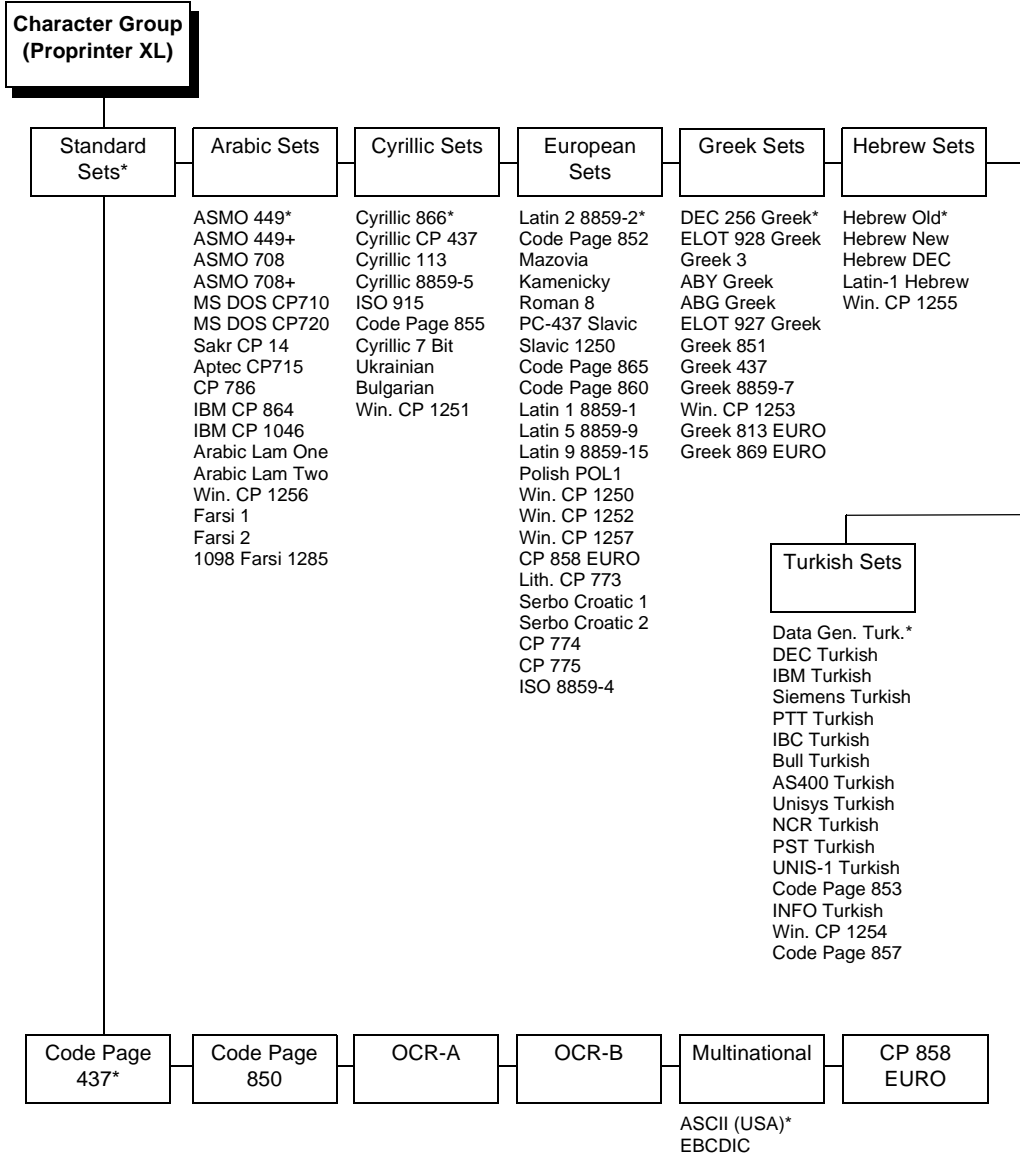
Notes:

* = Factory Default.

To access the desired basic character set, use the + and - keys. To select the set, press the ↵ key. After you have selected the basic set, access the subset selection menu by pressing the ↓ key. Once in the subset menu, access the desired subset by pressing the + and - keys and select it by pressing the ↵ key.

Character Group and Character Sets (Proprinter XL)

(From page 152.) This menu item selects the character set used by the printer. The available character sets are shown below.



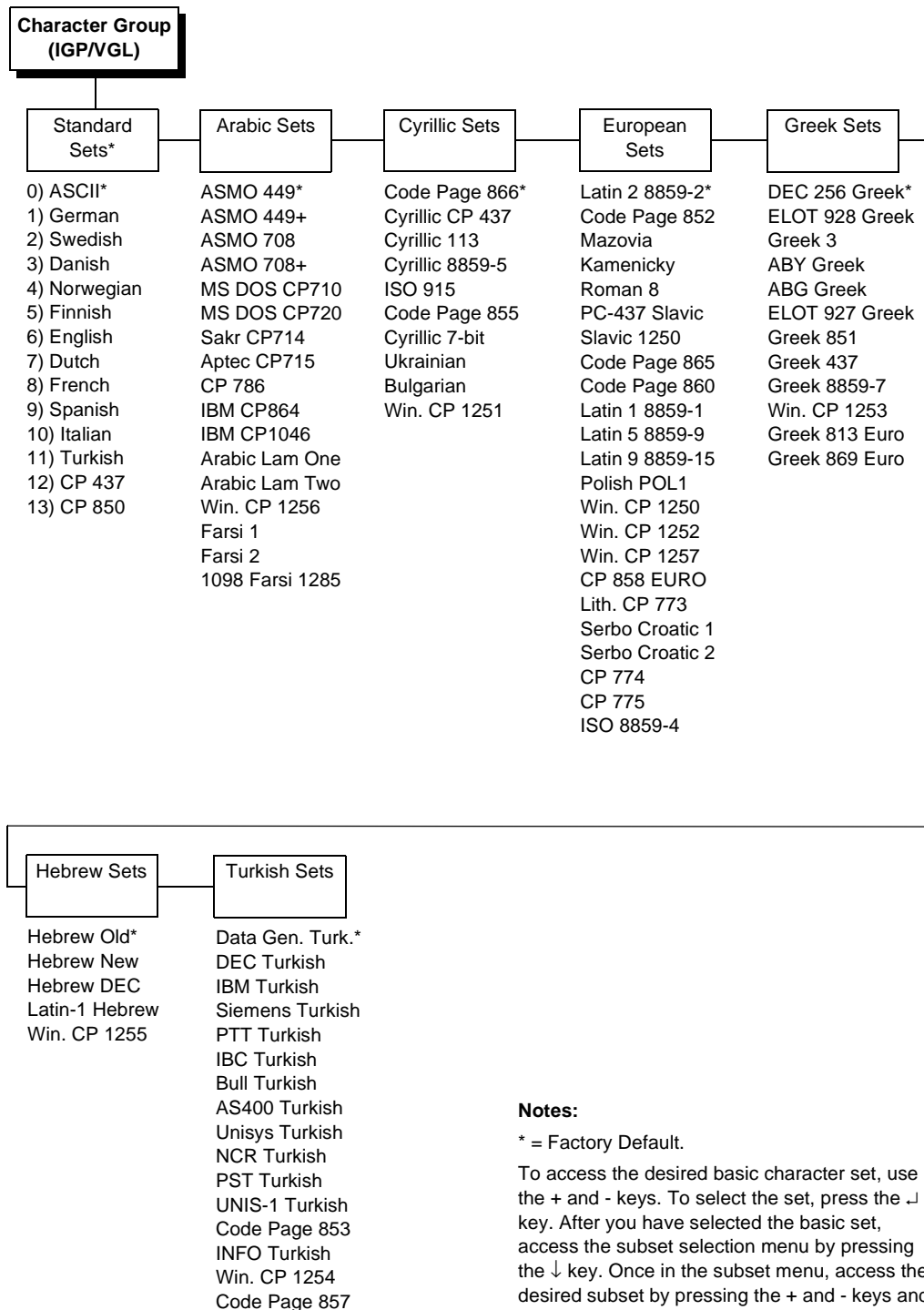
Notes:

* = Factory Default.

To access the desired basic character set, use the + and - keys. To select the set, press the ↵ key. After you have selected the basic set, access the subset selection menu by pressing the ↓ key. Once in the subset menu, access the desired subset by pressing the + and - keys and select it by pressing the ↵ key. Character subsets are accessed and selected in the same manner.

Character Group and Character Sets (IGP/VGL)

(From page 144.) This menu item selects the character set used by the printer. The available character sets are shown below.



Character Set

(From page 145, page 150, page 152, page 154.) This menu item allows selection of the character set to be used by the printer.

Cmd Resolution

(From page 143.)

- **Low Resolution.** Sets a low command resolution mode.
- **High Resolution.** Sets a high command resolution mode.

The factory default is Low Resolution.

Coax Type

(From page 128.) This parameter defines the printer emulation, as follows:

- 4234
- 3287

After the emulation has been changed, a POR status is sent to the host.

The factory default is 4234.

Code Page Subset

(From page 136.) This menu item allows the user to select the desired version of the following code pages - 037, 273, 274, 275, 277, 278, 280, 281, 282, 284, 285, 297, 500 and 871.

The options are Version 0 (the factory default) and Version 1.

Compressed Print

(From page 149.) Controls which host command sets compressed printing.

- Char 01 SOH
- Char 03 ETX
- Char 09 HT

The factory default is Char 01 SOH.

Control Code 06

(From page 146, page 149, page 151.) Control Code 06 defines the function of ASCII code 06 hex (ACK). You can select an alternate line spacing of 6.0, 8.0 or 10.3 LPI.

The options factory default is 8.0 LPI.

Control Code 08

(From page 146.) Control Code 08 defines the function of ASCII code 08 hex (BS). You can define the code to output an Elongated character or a Backspace. The factory default is Elongated.

Copy Count

(From page 142.) Determines the number of identical copies of each physical page that will be printed.

The range is 1-999, and the factory default is 1.

CR at MPP+1

(From page 128.) MPP is Maximum Print Position, which is also known as line length. This option controls a carriage return at the end of a print line and at MPP+1.

- **On.** Produces a carriage return to the first print position of the next line.
- **Off.** Produces a carriage return to the first print position of the current line.

The factory default is On.

CR Edit

(From page 140.) This parameter determines if a carriage return will be followed by a line feed.

- **Disable.** The printer ignores all carriage returns that are not followed by line feeds.
- **Enable.** The printer processes all carriage returns, even for those that are not followed by line feeds.

The factory default is Disable.

CR, EM, & NL

(From page 129.) CR (Carriage Return), EM (Error Message), & NL (New Line) specify that the printer treat the CR, EM, and NL control codes either as spaces or as control codes.

- **On.** Treats the CR, EM and NL commands as control codes.
- **Off.** Treats the CR, EM and NL commands as spaces.

The factory default is On.

Data Bit 8

(From page 143.)

- **Enable.** The PI line is not passed directly from host to printer; all 8 bits are used for data bits, and characters in the hex 80-FF range can be accessed.
- **Disable.** When the host PI line is enabled, data bit 8 internally indicates PI line status. To use the PI line, disable data bit 8, and enable the Host PI configuration option (under the PI Ignored option).

NOTE: Data bit 8 is interpreted as either data bit 8 or PI signal, but never both. When enabled as data bit 8, data bit 8 has priority over the PI signal, and all data above hex 7F is used to access character data and not to interpret PI line data.

Conversely, when data bit 8 is disabled and the PI signal is used, data bit 8 of the data is reserved for use as the PI function, and you cannot access characters in the hex 80-FF range. Therefore, to access characters in the hex 80-FF range, data bit 8 must be enabled.

The factory default is Enable.

Default Code Pag

(From page 136.)

This menu item allows the user to select the desired default codepage to be used when IPDS is not activating a Code Page Id. Refer to the *IPDS Programmer's Reference Manual* for a list of the code pages.

The factory default is English/USA/Can.

Default Font

(From page 136.)

This menu item allows the user to select the desired default resident font to be used when IPDS is not activating a Font Global Id. Refer to the *IPDS Programmer's Reference Manual* for a list of the fonts.

The factory default is Courier 10.

Define CR code

(From page 140, page 148, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

This option controls the action of the printer when it receives a Carriage Return code (0D hex) from the host computer. If this feature is enabled, each time the printer receives a Carriage Return, it inserts an additional Line Feed code (0A hex) into the data stream. Do not use this feature if the host computer sends Line Feeds to the printer.

- **CR = CR.** Does not insert an extra Line Feed after each Carriage Return.
- **CR = CR + LF.** Inserts an extra Line Feed after each Carriage Return. The next print position will be print position 1 of the next line.

The factory default is CR = CR.

Define LF code (PGL, Serial Matrix, Proprinter XL, Epson FX)

(From page 140, page 151, page 153, page 155.) This parameter forces the printer to insert an automatic Carriage Return code into the data stream whenever a Line Feed code occurs. This can be used in most installations, but it is required if the host computer does not send Carriage Returns to the printer.

- **LF = LF.** Does not perform an automatic carriage return. The next print position will be at the current print character position on the next line.

- **LF = CR + LF.** Performs an automatic carriage return. The next print position will be print position 1 of the next line.

The factory default is LF = LF.

Define LF code (P-Series, P-Series XQ)

(From page 146, page 148.)

- **LF = CR + LF.** Forces an automatic carriage return with each line feed command received. The next print position is position 1 of the next line.
- **LF = LF.** Does not perform an automatic carriage return when a line feed command is received. The next print position will be the current print position on the next line.

The factory default is LF = CR + LF.

Do FF at TOF

(From page 141.) Determines whether the printer, with media already set at the TOF (Top-of-form) position, will advance media to the next TOF position upon receipt of a FF command.

- **Enable.** The printer will advance media from the present TOF position to the next TOF position upon receipt of a FF command, causing a blank form.
- **Disable.** The printer will not advance media from the present TOF position to the next TOF position upon receipt of a FF command.

The factory default is Enable.

Early Print Cmpl (Coax)

(From page 128.) Early Print Complete capability allows the printer to send print (order) complete status to the host before the printer is actually done printing all data. This option is valid only when the printer is in DSC/DSE mode.

- **Disable.** The printer will suppress the Early Print Complete response until all printing is complete.
- **Enable.** The printer will send an acknowledgement to the host when it is able to accept more data.

NOTE: When an Early Print Complete is enabled and an error occurs, there may be data loss experienced.

The factory default is Disable.

Early Print Comp (IPDS)

(From page 136.) This parameter chooses when to send a Print Complete to the Controller.

- **Off.** Print Complete is sent if page is printed completely.

-
- **On.** Print Complete is sent immediately. The next page will be created. This improves the print performance when starting the next page, but degrades error recovery.

The factory default is Off.

Elong./Alt. Font

(From page 149.) Controls which host command sets elongated (double high) fonts and extended character set.

- ELNG=BS (hex 08) FONT=SO (hex 0E)
- ELNG=SO FONT=BS

The factory default is Elng=BS Font=SO.

Emulation

(From page 136.) This menu item allows the user to select the desired IPDS emulation, either 4028 IPDS or 3816 IPDS.

The factory default is 4028 IPDS.

Epson Set

(From page 154.) This menu item allows selection of the desired Epson character subset used by the printer. The options are listed on page 154.

The factory default is ASCII (USA).

Error Markers

(From page 143.)

- **Enable.** Prints the following error markers for those elements that print beyond the page boundaries:
 - >> for elements that begin off the right side of the page;
 - << for elements that begin at the indicated position but end off the page;
 - ◆ for elements where the starting position of the command contains an error other than an off-page error.
- **Disable.**

The factory default is Enable.

Error Msgs

(From page 143.)

- **Enable.** Command syntax is checked and error messages printed when command parameters are incorrect.
- **Disable.** Error checking and error messages are suppressed.

The factory default is Enable.

Error Report

(From page 141.) This menu item sets the error reporting capability of the printer for PGL forms. The selections are the following:

- **On.** Full error boundary checking reported. Any element that falls off the current page is reported as an error.
- **Debug Mode.** Puts the printer in debug mode whenever a form is defined in CREATE mode. Each line of the CREATE form will be printed along with an error if one has occurred.
- **Fault.** Allows you to halt the printer if a PGL error occurs. If you select this option, the PGL error prints on the paper, the message "IGP/PGL Error" displays on the front panel, and the printer goes offline. You must clear the error before the printer can resume normal operation.
- **Off.** There is no form boundary checking whatsoever. Graphic elements such as alpha, line, barcodes, etc. will be clipped if they are beyond the page boundaries.

The factory default is On.

ESC d command

(From page 151.) This menu option is for backward compatibility.

- **Even dot plot.** This option interprets the ESC d command as even dot plot.
- **Double high.** This option interprets the ESC d command as double high. Select this option for backward compatibility.

The factory default is Even dot plot.

EVFU Select

(From page 146, page 149.) Controls how the printer handles vertical formatting.

- **Enable.** Selects P-Series compatible Electronic Vertical Format Unit (EVFU).
- **Disable.** Disables all EVFU processing.

The factory default is Enable.

Expanded Font (PGL)

(From page 141.) Expanded font allows the user to print characters in different sizes with specified parameters. It also allows the selection of which font face to use.

- **Scalable.** Uses Gothic font.
- **Block.** Uses Block font.
- **Alt Block 1.** Uses alternative Block font with a different character set.

The factory default is Scalable.

Expanded Font (VGL)

(From page 143.) Expanded font allows you to print characters in different sizes with specified parameters. It also allows you to select block or non-block font face.

- **Scalable.** Uses Gothic font as default. Other font faces can be selected by using the IFONT command.
- **Block.** Uses Block font.

The factory default is Scalable.

Expanded Fonts (IPDS)

(From page 136.) This option specifies which algorithm is used for expanding a character string in Write Graphics.

- **Compatible.** A resizing and smoothing algorithm will be performed on the bitmapped font.
- **Scalable.** A substitution will be done to a scalable outline font. Using Scalable will increase performance and quality, however, the substitution will only be done for Latin 1 characters of resident bitmapped fonts, and the type is limited to Courier and Gothic. A scalable font cannot be selected directly, and an LF3 format cannot be downloaded.

The factory default is Scalable.

Ext Execute Copy

(From page 141.)

- **Disable.** Dynamic data, overlay data, etc. are not allowed if the optional Form Count parameter (number of forms to print) is specified as part of the Execute command. (This setting is IGP-100 compatible.)
- **Enable.** Dynamic data, overlay data, etc. are allowed within a form where the Form Count parameter is specified in the Execute command. In this case, the same form is printed for whatever the Form Count is. Incremental data is not incremented since the printing page is the same. The overlay data is only printed with the first form and not on subsequent forms, and each form is printed on a separate page.

The factory default is Disable.

Extended Subset

(From page 145, page 150.) This menu item allows selection of the desired extended character subset used by the printer.

The options are Code Page 437 (the factory default) and Code Page 850.

FF After Job

(From page 129.) Determines the print position after an operator-initiated local copy (print screen function).

- **Off.** Performs an automatic new line command after completing a print buffer (unless a new line, form feed or carriage return command was the last one executed). The printer is set to print at print position 1 of the next line.
- **On.** Performs an automatic form feed command unless a form feed was the last one executed. The printer is set to print at print position 1 of the first line on the next form.

The factory default is Off.

FF valid at TOF

(From page 146, page 153.) The FF valid at TOF option determines whether the printer will perform a Form Feed when the host sends a Form Feed command, if the printer is at the Top of Form.

- **Enable.** Performs a form feed when the host sends a Form Feed command and the printer is at the top of form.
- **Disable.** Will not perform a form feed when the host sends a Form Feed command and the printer is at the Top of Form.

The factory default is Enable.

FF Validity

(From page 129.) Determines if the position of a form feed command affects its execution.

- **Off.** Performs a form feed only if it occurs at the first print position in a line or at Maximum Print Position +1. A form feed command at any other position is recognized as a blank.
- **On.** Allows the printer to perform a form feed command anywhere in the data stream.

The factory default is Off.

Form Length (in.)

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

Form length is the number of lines that can be printed on a label. You can set forms length in inches.

The factory default is shown in Table 2 on page 98.

Form Length (lines)

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

Form length is the number of lines that can be printed on a label. You can set forms length as a function of the current LPI (lines per inch).

The factory default is shown in Table 2 on page 98.

Form Length (mm)

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

Form length is the number of lines that can be printed on a label. You can set forms length in millimeters.

The factory default is shown in Table 2 on page 98.

Form Width (char.)

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

The forms width can be specified as a function of the current CPI (characters per inch). The forms width set should not exceed the actual paper width.

The factory default is the maximum printing width divided by the selected number of characters per inch.

Form Width (in.)

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

In this submenu, form width is specified in inches. The forms width set should not exceed the actual paper width.

The factory default is the maximum printing width.

Form Width (mm.)

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

In this submenu, form width is specified in millimeters. The forms width set should not exceed the actual paper width.

The factory default is the maximum printing width.

Format Control

(From page 129, page 131, page 138.) Enables the printer to reflect the same spacing as CTPC model printers after absolute and relative move commands are executed.

- **Disable.** Reflects distance, generated by the VGL feature, PGL feature, and Hex Transparent control code sequence, in the new position (after horizontal and vertical tabs are executed).

- **Enable.** Does not reflect distance, generated by the VGL feature, PGL feature, and Hex Transparent control code sequence, in the new position (after horizontal and vertical tabs are executed).

The factory default is Disable.

Gothic Typeface

(From page 149.) Controls which host command sets high speed printing.

- Char 02 STX
- Char 03 ETX
- Char 09 HT

The factory default is Char 02 STX.

Graphic Chek Cod

(From page 131, page 138.) Specifies the replacement character to print in place of any unprintable character that is received from the host. Choose a hex character from 40 through FE. The character becomes the printer default when:

- The printer is powered off and then powered on.
- An SGEA command specifies to use the operator panel default.
- The Graphic Chek Err parameter is disabled.

The range is 40 through F4, and the factory default is 60.

Graphic Chek Err

(From page 131, page 138.) Allows overriding of the host setting for the SGEA (Set Graphic Error Action) command. For more information about the SGEA command, refer to the *Coax/Twinax Programmer's Reference Manual*.

- **Enable.** The host setting for the SGEA used by the printer. If the SGEA command is requested to stop on graphic errors, the printer will stop when a graphic error is detected.
- **Disable.** Ignores the SGEA command from the host. The printer does not stop when an error is detected; instead, it substitutes the character selected in the Graphic Chek Code parameter.

The factory default is Enable.

Hexdump mode

(From page 136.) Hexdump mode allows you to place the printer into the “hex dump” mode, in which the printer outputs a hexadecimal data stream. The purpose of hexdump mode is to see exactly what data is received by the printer, in order to debug forms, for example.

When enabled, the hexdump mode translates all host interface data to its hexadecimal equivalent, then prints the hex code and its printable symbol, if one exists. Figure 4 shows a partial example of a hex dump.

After the printer enters hexdump mode, all characters it prints (including any in the printer's input buffer) are printed in two forms: as a two-symbol hexadecimal code, and as the character's printable symbol (if it has one). A non printable code is printed as a period [.] symbol. Up to 16 characters can be printed per line of hexdump printout. While the printer is in hexdump mode, it does not act upon any control codes, other than to print their hexadecimal equivalents.

The 16 characters printed per line on the hexdump are formatted so that the 16 printable symbols are printed in columns 1 through 16. The 17th column is blank. Column 18 contains either a p (PI line active) or a blank (PI not active). Columns 19 and 20 contain the hexadecimal code for the first character, followed by a blank. The PI line condition and hexadecimal code for the second character are printed in columns 22, 23, and 24, followed by a blank. The third through 16th characters are printed in a similar manner. The hexadecimal code for the 16th character is printed in columns 78, 79, and 80.

NOTE: Values will vary based on printhead width.

Subsequent printing observes the current setting for skip-over perforation, form length, and top-of-form position parameters.

IMPORTANT

You must have a minimum of 4.1 inches of media installed and have Label Width set to 4.1 inches. If not, the hexdump data will be truncated and lost.

If a fault occurs while printing a hexdump, the printer reverts to the normal fault state. When the fault is cleared, the printer resumes printing the hexdump (either a partial line with a form feed, or nothing at all). Top-of-form remains unaffected.

.The Impact Prin	09	54	68	65	20	49	6D	70	61	63	74	20	50	72	69	6E
ter Emulation pr	74	65	72	20	45	6D	75	6C	61	74	69	6F	6E	20	70	72
ints in one-up..	69	6E	74	73	20	69	6E	20	6F	6E	65	2D	75	70	2C	0A
.two-up, and fou	09	74	77	6F	2D	75	70	2C	20	61	6E	64	20	66	6F	75
r up page window	72	20	75	70	20	70	61	67	65	20	77	69	6E	64	6F	77
s....	73	2E	0C	0D	0A											

Figure 4. Sample Hex Dump

To begin a hex dump, first place the printer offline and enable the Hex Dump Mode option from the control panel. Next, place the printer online. Finally, send data to the printer from the host computer. Any data received from the host is "dumped" to the printout.

To cancel a hex dump, first place the printer offline. Then, disable the Hex Dump Mode option from the control panel. The paper may then be advanced to the next top-of-form.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Horizontal DPI

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

This feature enables the thermal printer to print images as close as possible to the same size as those originally programmed for a line matrix or laser

printer by selecting a horizontal resolution that matches that of the printer that the file was originally generated for.

Although the range allows a selection of up to 400 dpi, the T5000 is capable of printing up to 203 (T5204, T5206, T5208) and 300 (T5304, T5306, T5308) dpi horizontal resolution.

The range is 60-400 dpi, and the factory default is 120 dpi.

Host Command

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

This menu item allows the user to select certain host commands to be ignored by the printer.

The options are Enable, Ignore All, Ignore CPI, and Ignore LPI.

The factory default is Enable (all host commands accepted by the printer).

Host Form Length (PGL)

(From page 140.) Determines how the physical label size is affected upon receiving an EXECUTE command.

- **Enable.** The physical label length will change to match the form length (defined in CREATE mode). The physical label size remains at the new setting until another EXECUTE command is received, or the PRINTER CONTROL menu settings are changed.
- **Var. Length.** The form length is the longest element printed plus the setting of "Var Form Adjust."
- **Disable.** Forms printed in EXECUTE mode do not change the physical label size. Therefore, the size of the form (defined in CREATE mode) must fit within the current label dimensions, or errors may occur.

NOTE: Changing the form length via the EXECUTE command changes the LP+ Emulation logical dimensions.

The factory default is Enable.

Host Form Length (IPDS)

(From page 136.) Enables or disables changing the form length by the host.

- **Disable.** The host is unable to change the form length.
- **Enable.** The host may change the form length.

The factory default is Disable.

Host Form Length (VGL)

(From page 142.) Sets the printer page size.

- **Enable.** Sets the printer label size equal to Label Length from the host form length command. (For more information, refer to the *IGP/VGL Programmer's Reference Manual*.)

-
- **Disable.** Sets the printer label size equal to the Label Length set in the front panel under the PRINTER CONTROL menu.

The factory default is Enable.

Host Override

(From page 129, page 131, page 138.) Determines whether the printer accepts certain commands sent by the host, or continues to use the current operator panel settings.

- **Disable.** Allows these host commands to override operator panel settings: line length, forms length, lines per inch (LPI), characters per inch (CPI), print quality, and text orientation. Note the information appearing on the message display may not match the data stream setting. No values will change upon initial selection of the disable option.
- **Enable.** The operator panel settings override the host commands.

The factory default is Disable.

Host PI

(From page 144.)

- **Disable.** The host does not send PI signals.
- **Enable.** The host sends PI signals. The Data Bit 8 configuration option must be disabled to transmit the PI line to the printer.

The factory default is Disable.

I-2/5 Selection

(From page 141.) This option is added to be compatible with a special IGP-X00 customization. Usually, if Interleaved 2/5 bar codes have an odd number of digits, a leading zero is inserted in front of the data. However, this special IGP-X00 customization gives you the option of adding a space character at the end of the bar code instead.

- **Leading Zero.** A leading zero is inserted in front of the data.
- **Trailing Space.** A space is inserted at the end of the data instead of a leading zero.
- **X2 DPD.** When selected, I-2/5 bar code with a magnification X2 will use the specially configured ratios 3:3:6:5 rather than 3:6:9:12 for compatibility issues.
- **Modulo 7 CD.** The I-2/5 bar code uses a modulo 7 check digit instead of the default modulo 10 check digit.

The factory default is Leading Zero.

Ignore Ch#1

(From page 143.) Specifies character 1 for the character filtering option. Valid decimal values are from 0 through 255.

The factory default is 0.

Ignore Ch#2

(From page 143.) Specifies character 2 for the character filtering option. Valid decimal values are from 0 through 255.

The factory default is 0.

Ignore Chars

(From page 143.)

- **Disable.** Character filtering is not enabled.
- **Char 1.** Character 1 will be filtered. Select the option “Ignore ch#1” to specify character 1.
- **Char 2.** Character 2 will be filtered. Select the option “Ignore ch#2” to specify character 2.
- **Char 1&2.** Characters 1 & 2 will be filtered. Select the options “Ignore ch#1” and “Ignore ch#2” to specify values for these characters.

The factory default is Disable.

Ignore Dots

(From page 142.)

- **Disable.** The VGL expects position values to be specified in tenth inches and dot rows.
- **Enable.** Causes the VGL to expect position values to be specified in only 1/10ths of an inch. If the dot position is also given, it is treated as text.

The factory default is Disable.

Ignore Mode

(From page 141.) This parameter instructs the IGP to ignore the character selected under the Select Character menu.

- **Disable.** The IGP does not ignore any characters.
- **Enable.** The IGP ignores the character specified in the Select Character menu.

The factory default is Disable.

Ignore Spaces

(From page 143.)

- **Disable.** Trailing spaces are not deleted from alphanumeric elements in a graphics pass.
- **Enable.** Trailing spaces are deleted from alphanumeric elements in a graphics pass.

The factory default is Disable.

Ignore Text

(From page 141.)

- **Disable.** When disabled, text in Normal Mode will be printed. Attributes to be printed depend on the PGL Normal menu setting.
- **Enable.** When enabled, any line of text (non-PGL commands) in Normal mode will be ignored.

The factory default is Disable.

IGP100 Compatibl.

(From page 141.) This parameter forces the output to correspond with IGP-100 printer output in cases where there are differences.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Intervention Req

(From page 128, page 134.)

- **Send To Host.** The printer sends a signal to the host computer when a printer fault or hold mode time-out occurs.
- **Do Not Send.** No signal will be sent to the host computer.

The factory default is Send To Host.

Italic Print

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

- **Disable.** Text is printed normally.
- **Forward Slant.** Text is printed with a forward slant.
- **Backward Slant.** Text is printed with a backward slant.

The factory default is Disable.

LAC Approx.

(From page 131.) This submenu controls whether the LAC Approximation (See your *Coax/Twinax Programmer's Reference Manual*) is used or not.

When set to On, then Approximation is used. When set to Off, Approximation is not used, and incoming data will print as is.

The factory default is On.

LAC Option

(From page 131.) Allows the host system to load alternate character images into the printer. This may be used for designing graphics, bar codes, and charts, or for printing in foreign languages.

- **Enable.** Prints the LAC character as defined.

- **Disable.** Ignores the LAC definition from the host and prints from the currently selected character set.

The factory default is Enable.

Last Char = FF

(From page 129.) Determines the print line position when a form feed command is the last code encountered in the print buffer.

- **On.** Moves to the first print position on the second line of the next form.
- **Off.** Moves to the first print position on the first line of the next form.

NOTE: This option is ignored if Auto Skip At End is on.

If configured as a 3287, and a form feed occurs in the middle of a print buffer, the printer defaults to the first print position on the second line of the next form, regardless of the setting of this option.

The factory default is On.

Lead-in Chars

(From page 129, page 131, page 138.) You can enable additional printer features which are not accessible through standard coax emulations. To access these features, send text commands in the data stream. The commands must have a start and end code. Three sets (each containing a start and end code) are available:

- **Set 1** start code: <%
end code: >
- **Set 2** start code: ~
end code: \$
- **Set 3** start code: _%
end code: _

The factory default is Set 1<%>.

Left Margin

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

Set in characters. Character zero is defined as the far left edge of the page, and column numbering increments from left to right.

The range is 0-369 characters, and the factory default is 0 characters.

Logical Buf Size

(From page 134.) Refers to the size of the printer buffer, which should be set the same as the host screen (buffer) size. If the host screen size is unknown, use 1920.

The options are 960, 1920, 2560, 3440, and 3564.

The factory default is 1920.

LPI

(From page 142.) This menu item selects the number of lines printed per inch. The range is 6-10, and the factory default is 6.

Max PI 16

(From page 144.)

- **Enable.** A paper slew of 0-15 will move 1-16 lines.
- **Disable.** A paper slew of 1-15 will move 1-15 lines. A paper slew of 0 will always move 1 line.

The factory default is Enable.

Max. Print Width

(From page 129, page 131, page 138.) Set the maximum print width the printer will print when using a C/T host interface. Set for 13.2 inches when printing files larger than the width of the printer. All data exceeding the width of the maximum Printer Width will be truncated.

- 13.2 inches
- Printer Width (the maximum width of the printer)

The factory default is 13.2 inches.

Midline PY (includes ^PN)

(From page 143.)

- **Disable.** The Graphics mode Enabled command, ^PY, must be the first three characters of a line.
- **Enable.** The ^PY or ^PN can occur anywhere in a line.

The factory default is Disable.

NL at MPP+1

(From page 128, page 134.) Specifies the linespacing action when the printline exceeds the rightmost print position and text continues from the leftmost print position on a new line.

- **On.** Moves to the first print position two lines down from the current position.
- **Off.** Moves to the first print position of the next print line.

The factory default is On.

Null Handling

(From page 134.) This item allows the printer to either treat nulls as blank spaces or ignore them. If nulls are ignored, the print position does not move.

- **Space.** Treats nulls as spaces.

- **Ignore.** Ignores nulls.

The factory default is Space.

Null Suppression (Coax)

(From page 129.) This item allows the printer to either treat nulls as blank spaces or ignore them. If nulls are ignored, the print position does not move.

- **Off.** Ignores nulls.
- **On.** Treats nulls as spaces.

The factory default is Off.

Null Suppression (IPDS)

(From page 136.)

- **Disable.** When disabled, an exception is generated when the IPDS data stream contains a 0x00. Disable is the default.
- **Enable.** When enabled, this option ignores the EBCDIC value 0x00 in the IPDS data stream.

The factory default is Disable.

Offpage Errors

(From page 143.)

- **Disable.** Does not report errors for elements that start or end beyond the right edge of the page.
- **Enable.** Reports errors for elements that start or end beyond the right edge of the page.

The factory default is Disable.

Optimized Ratio

(From page 140.) This option selects different bar code ratios for certain bar codes including Code 39 and Interleaved 2 of 5. It is included for compatibility with the IGP-X00 printers.

- **Disable.** Use standard bar code ratios.
- **Enable.** Select the alternate bar code ratios.

The factory default is Disable.

Overstrike

(From page 146, page 151.) Overstrike determines the action required when a line is printed over a previous line because a carriage return was received without a line feed.

- **Enable.** Prints the second line on top of the first line.
- **Disable.** Replaces the characters from the first line with the second line.

The factory default is Enable.

PA1

(From page 128, page 134.) PA1 is only valid when the printer is in the offline state and the coax Systems Network Architecture Character Set (SCS) data stream is active. This function displays the “PA1 ENABLED” message when the ENTER key is pressed and sends a special operator request to the host when the printer is put back in online mode. Refer to the *Coax/Twinax Programmer's Reference Manual* for more information about SCS.

NOTE: Selecting the PA1 menu item again (“PA1 DISABLED” appears on the operator panel) or selecting the PA2 menu item will reset the pending PA1 function.

PA2

(From page 128, page 134.) PA2 is only valid when the printer is in the offline state and the coax SCS data stream is active. This function displays the “PA2 ENABLED” message when the ENTER key is pressed and sends a special operator request to the host when the printer is put back in online mode.

NOTE: Selecting the PA2 menu item again (“PA2 DISABLED” appears on the operator panel) or selecting the PA1 menu item will reset the pending PA2 function.

Page Rotation

(From page 136.) This option rotates the physical IPDS page.

The options are 0, 90, 180, and 270.

The factory default is 0.

PGL Normal

(From page 141.) This option determines whether PGL prints the text data in NORMAL mode according to the LP+ menu settings or whether PGL will print the text data according to its own internal state.

The options are LP+ Menu (the factory default) and PGL Menu.

PI Slew Range

(From page 140.) You can specify how many lines the paper will feed.

- **15.** A paper slew of 1-15 will move 1-15 lines. A paper slew of 0 will move 1 line.
- **16.** A paper slew of 0-15 will move 1-16 lines.

The factory default is 16.

Position Aft FF

(From page 128.) Allows you to select the location of the print position after a form feed command is sent.

- **Off.** Sets the printer to print at position 2 of the first print line on the next form.

- **On.** Sets the printer to print at print position 1 of the first print line on the next form.

The factory default is Off.

Power on IGP/PGL

(From page 141.) You can set the IGP/PGL feature so that it is enabled or disabled when the printer is powered on.

- **Enable.** The IGP/PGL is enabled when the printer is powered on. (The IGP/PGL feature is initialized in the Normal mode.)
- **Disable.** The IGP/PGL is disabled when the printer is powered on. (The IGP/PGL feature is initialized to the Quiet mode.)

The factory default is Enable.

Power-up ^F

(From page 142.)

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** Selects free format mode as the power-up default, and selects the graphics mode ^PY as the power-up default. Free format causes the VGL to ignore carriage returns, line feeds and all characters below 20 hex sent from the host.

The factory default is Disable.

Power-up ^PY

(From page 142.)

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** Selects the graphics mode ^PY as the power-up default.

The factory default is Disable.

Power-up ^X

(From page 142.)

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** Selects the ignore mode as the power-up default, and selects the graphics mode ^PY as the power-up default. All characters are ignored until a ^A command is received.

The factory default is Disable.

Primary Subset

(From page 145, page 150.) This menu item allows selection of the desired primary character subset used by the printer. The factory default is ASCII (USA).

Print Char. Set

(From page 146, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 155.)

Selecting this menu item by pressing the ↵ key causes the printer to print the currently selected character set.

Printer PI

(From page 144.)

- **Disable.** The LP+ Emulation is configured with the PI line disabled.
- **Enable.** The LP+ Emulation is configured with the PI line enabled.

The factory default is Disable.

Printer Select

(From page 151, page 155.)

- **Disable.** Ignores the ASCII DC1 and DC3 control codes.
- **Enable.** Disables the printer when a DC1 control code is received, and enables the printer when a DC3 control code is received.

The factory default is Disable.

Prop Line Length

(From page 144.)

- **Enable.** The position of the next graphic element will be determined by the physical length of a text string (when using a proportional spaced font).
- **Disable.** The position of the next graphic element will be determined as if the font was monospaced (all characters had the same specified width).

The factory default is Enable.

Prop. Spacing

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

Each printed character is contained inside a character cell. The width of the character cell includes the character and the space around the character.

- **Enable.** The width of each character cell varies with the width of the character. For example, [i] takes less space to print than [m]. Using proportional fonts generally increases the readability of printed documents, giving text a typeset appearance.
- **Disable.** Each character cell is printed with the same width. Each column in the printed text will line up.

The factory default is Enable.

PSeries Dbl High

(From page 146.) This menu option allows printing compatibility between the current and older models of Printronix printers.

- **Normal.** This is normal Double High printing for current model printers.
- **P3/4/6/9 Compat.** Where older printers printed two dot rows higher, this option allows for compatibility by raising the print two dot rows to match the current models dot row value (two dot rows lower).

The factory default is Normal.

Repeat Form Opt

(From page 141.)

- **Enable.** Speeds up the processing of repeated forms for PGL, thereby resulting in increased printer throughput. This option provides no speed benefit for forms that are unrelated to one another and should be disabled under those circumstances.
- **Disable.** Should be selected when subsequent forms are unrelated to one another.

The factory default is Enable.

Reset Cmd CFG Ld

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

When the printer receives a host data stream reset command (ESC @ or ESC[K) in addition to resetting printer variables, the selected configuration is loaded.

- **Disable.** The active emulation parameters are loaded when the reset command is executed.
- **Power up config.** The power-up configuration is loaded when the reset command is executed.
- **Current config.** The currently selected configuration is loaded when the reset command is executed.
- **Factory config.** The factory installed configuration is loaded when the reset command is executed.

The factory default is Disable.

Right Margin

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

Set in characters. Character zero is defined as the far right edge of the page, and column numbering increments from right to left.

The range is 0-369 characters, and the factory default is 0 characters.

Rot. Char Size

(From page 143.)

- **Adjusted.** Rotated (clockwise/counterclockwise), expanded characters have a different size than an unrotated character with the same size parameters.
- **Not Adjusted.** Rotated, expanded characters will be the same size as unrotated characters with the same size parameters.

The factory default is Adjusted.

Scalable Size

(From page 141.) This option determines whether scalable characters are sized based on normal scaling or based on the size of block characters. If the option Block is set, then the scalable character are made to be the same size as block characters in the old IGP-X00 printers.

The options are Normal (the factory default) and Block.

SCS Buffer Cntrl

(From page 128.) This option functions like the Early Print Complete feature ("Early Print Cmpl (Coax)" on page 170) but is for SCS only.

- **Don't Wait.** The printer does not wait until the buffer is printed before sending the print complete back to the host.
- **Wait Until Done.** The printer waits until the buffer has printed before sending the print complete back to the host.

NOTE: If set to Wait Until Done, printer speed may be reduced.

The factory default is Don't Wait.

Select Char

(From page 141.) Instructs the IGP which decimal character (0-255) to ignore from the host.

The range is 0-255, and the factory default is 0.

Select CPI

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.) This menu item selects the characters per inch (CPI) value.

The options are 10.0, 12.0, 13.3, 15.0, 17.1, and 20.0 CPI.

The factory default is 10.0 CPI.

Select LPI

(From page 140, page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.) This is the number of lines to be printed per inch. For example, at 6 lpi there is 1/6 inch from the top of one print line to the top of the next print line.

The options are 6.0, 8.0, and 10.3 LPI.

The factory default is 6.0 LPI.

Select SFCC (PGL)

(From page 140.) You can specify which decimal code (1-255) will be used as the Special Function Control Code (SFCC). The SFCC denotes that the following data is a PGL command.

The range is 1-255, and the factory default is 126.

Select SFCC (P-Series)

(From page 146.) This P-Series feature allows you to select an ASCII code which defines the Special Function Control Code (SFCC) command code value. The factory default value is hex 01, but the P-Series options allow selection of any value ranging from hex 00 through hex 7F. This powerful feature permits the SFCC code to be assigned a value compatible with the application environment where the P-Series jobs originate. The most commonly used values include the following:

- SOH (01 hex)
- ESC (1B hex)
- ETX (03 hex)
- Circumflex (5e hex) - also called caret (^)
- Tilde (7F hex) - (~)

NOTE: Non-Printable ASCII code values range from hex 00 through hex 1F and also include hex 7F. Printable ASCII code values range from hex 20 through hex 7E. If a printable code value is chosen to define the SFCC code value, you must ensure that the printer data stream will not contain the same code value in printable text. Otherwise text containing the character for the SFCC control code value may be incorrectly processed as an SFCC command causing print errors.

The range is 0-7F, and the factory default is 1.

Select SO Char

(From page 141, page 143.) Allows you to specify a decimal code from 0 through 255 to be used in place of SO (Shift Out) as the control code which allows access for the alternate set of control function characters. See the description of the Code 128 barcodes in the *PGL Programmer's Reference Manual* for details.

The range is 0-255, and the factory default is 14.

Set Text Orientn

(From page 129, page 131, page 138.) Specifies the direction in which characters are printed on the page. This allows the printer to print languages which are printed right to left instead of left to right.

- **Control By Host.** Allows printers configured as a 4234 to use the “Set Text Orientation” command from the host.
- **Left to Right.**
- **Right to Left.** When a right to left language is selected, the host will be notified of print direction changes when the printer is put online.

The factory default is Control By Host.

SFCC

(From page 142.) This option selects the Special Function Control Code. The default value is the caret ^ (decimal 94). Valid values are 17 through 255. Run a configuration printout to determine the currently selected SFCC.

The range is 17-255, and the factory default is 94.

SFCC Char (SPC Coax, SPC Twinax)

(From page 134, page 135.) Determines what character is printed when an EBCDIC Logical Not character ¬ (Hex 5F) is received from the host.

- Set 1 <%>*
- Set 2 ^^\$
- Set 3 _%_
- User Defined

The factory default is Set 1 <%>.

SFCC d command

(From page 146.) This menu option is for backward compatibility.

- **Even dot plot.** This option interprets the SFCC d command as even dot plot.
- **Double high.** This option interprets the SFCC d command as double high. Select this option for backward compatibility.

The factory default is Even dot plot.

Skip Cmd Prefix

(From page 140.) Stands for Skip Command Prefix. This parameter determines if the printer will print any data before a PGL command is received.

- **Enable.** The printer ignores all data before a PGL command.
- **Disable.** The printer will print all data before a PGL command.

The factory default is Enable.

Slash 0

(From page 140, page 142.) This parameter allows you to print the numeral “0” with or without the slash. This option applies to all character sets except OCR A and OCR B.

- **Disable.** Zero is printed without a slash.
- **Enable.** Zero is printed with a slash.

The factory default is Disable.

Slashed Zero

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

This parameter allows you to print the numeral “0” with or without the slash. This option applies to all character sets except OCR-A and OCR-B.

- **Disable.** Zero is printed without a slash.
- **Enable.** Zero is printed with a slash.

The factory default is Disable.

Slew Relative

(From page 149.) “Slewing” is rapid vertical paper movement. This parameter determines the number of lines slewed (either 1-15 lines or 1-16 lines) when an EVFU Slew Relative command is received.

The options are 1-15 lines (the factory default) and 1-16 lines.

SPC Char Set

(From page 135.) Allows you to select the print language character set. See page 135 for the options.

The factory default is 0500 Internat 5.

SPC Null Supp

(From page 134.) SPC Null Supp stands for SPC Null Suppression.

- **Disable.** Ignores nulls. The print position does not move.
- **Enable.** Treats nulls as blank spaces.

The factory default is Disable.

SPC Space Supp

(From page 134.) This option is only available in Coax SPC emulation and is used in LU3/DSC/DSE mode only.

- **Disable.** Treats nulls and spaces normally.
- **Enable.** If the entire line consists of spaces and nulls, the line will be discarded.

The factory default is Disable.

SPC Type (SPC Coax Setup)

(From page 134.)

- **PTX NI (Printronix Non-impact)**. This option causes the printer to not line wrap at 132 characters.
- **Avatar Comp**. This option causes the printer to line wrap at 132 characters despite the current print density allowing more characters per line.

The factory default is PTX NI.

SPC Type (SPC Twinax Setup)

(From page 135.) Allows you to select a convertor which mimics a specific type of external protocol convertor:

- **MODE PTX NI** for Printronix non-impact
- **MODE 219** for Model 219 protocol convertor
- **MODE P5000** for Printronix protocol convertor
- **MODE IBM** for the IBM protocol convertor

The factory default is MODE PTX NI.

Standard Sets

(From page 140, page 144.) This menu item allows the user to select various character sets available from the “Character Group” menu item.

The options are Standard, Arabic, Cyrillic, European, Greek, Hebrew, and Turkish Sets.

The factory default is Standard Sets.

Text Length

(From page 142.) Text Length is the printable length on the page below the top margin. It is in character lines at the lpi in effect when the new value is entered.

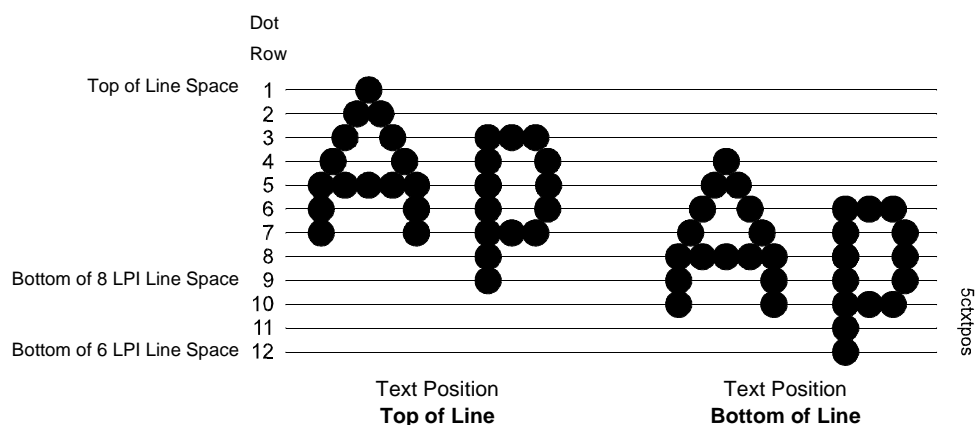
The range is 1-255, and the factory default is 66.

Text Position

(From page 147, page 149, page 151, page 153, page 155.)

Specifies where the text will be positioned in the line space.

- **Top of Line.** Text is positioned at the top of the line space.
- **Bottom of Line.** Text is positioned as if it were at the bottom of a 6 lpi line space. The following example shows both Top of Line and Bottom of Line text positions:



The factory default is Bottom of Line.

Top Margin

(From page 146, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

Defined in linespaces, starting from line zero at the top of the page and incrementing from the top down.

The range is 0-451 linespaces, and the factory default is 0 linespaces.

Translate Table

(From page 129.)

- **Default.** The option is disabled. The table is not stored in the real translation table until the option is enabled.
- **Downloaded.** The option is enabled. The LU3 Translation Table is loaded from the buffer into the permanent table.

The factory default is Default.

Translation Tbl (Coax)

(From page 128.) Prints out SCS and DSC/DSE tables of the coax interface's current character set. This operation is valid only when the coax interface is selected as the current interface.

Translation Tbl (SPC Coax)

(From page 134.) Prints out a table of the coax interface's current character set. This operation is valid only when the coax interface is selected.

Translation Tbl (SPC Twinax)

(From page 135.) Prints out a table of the twinax interface's current character set. This operation is valid only when the twinax interface is selected.

Translation Tbl (TN5250, Twinax)

(From page 138, page 131.) Prints out a table of the twinax interface's current character set. This operation is valid only when the twinax interface is the current interface.

True Vert 1/10

(From page 142.)

- **Disable.** When disabled and in High Resolution, a vertical line's length in one inch and 1/10 inch increments is interpreted as 70/72 inch and 7/72 inch respectively.
- **Enable.** When enabled, a vertical line's length is interpreted exactly, which is 72/72 inch in one inch increments.

The factory default is Disable.

Truncate Alpha

(From page 142.)

- **Enable.** Prevents the printing of Error 48 (Element Off Page Error) if alphanumeric data, including spaces, extends beyond the right side of the form.
- **Disable.**

The factory default is Enable.

Twinax Type

(From page 131.) This parameter defines the printer emulation as follows:

- **IPDS 256 Bytes**
- **IPDS 1024 Bytes**
- **5225**
- **4234**

After the emulation has been changed, a POR status is sent to the host.

The factory default is IPDS 256 Bytes.

Typeface

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

- **Letter Gothic.** Letter Gothic is a non-proportional font where all of the characters take up the same amount of space when printed.
- **Courier.** Courier is a non-proportional (monospaced) font where all characters take up the same amount of space when printed.
- **OCR-A / OCR-B.** Optical character recognition fonts printing at 120 dpi horizontally and 144 dpi vertically. Both fonts print only at 10 cpi.

The factory default is Letter Gothic.

Uniform Fonts

(From page 144.)

- **Disable.** The typeface selected while in Extended Graphics Mode will be cancelled when the graphics pass is complete.
- **Enable.** The typeface selected while in Extended Graphics Mode will also be used in Standard Graphics Mode and Normal Mode.

The factory default is Disable.

UPC Descenders (PGL)

(From page 141.) This parameter allows you to print bar code descenders when human readable data is not presented in the UPC/EAN bar codes.

- **Always.** UPC/EAN bar codes are printed with descenders, even if there is no human readable data.
- **Never.** UPC/EAN bar codes are printed without descenders if there is no human readable data.
- **Only With PDF.** UPC/EAN bar codes are printed with descenders only when the PDF command is presented.

The factory default is Always.

UPC Descenders (VGL)

(From page 142.)

- **Enable.** UPC/EAN bar codes are printed with descenders, even if there is no human readable data.
- **Disable.** UPC/EAN bar codes are printed without descenders if there is no human readable data.

The factory default is Enable.

Upr. Case Select

(From page 149.) Controls how the printer handles lowercase characters it receives from the host computer. When enabled, all characters will be printed in uppercase.

- **Disable.** Prints lowercase characters received from the host computer as lowercase, and uppercase characters received from the computer as uppercase.
- **Enable.** Prints lowercase characters received from the host computer as their corresponding uppercase equivalents; uppercase characters received from the computer are printed as uppercase.

The factory default is Disable.

User-Def Ratio

(From page 141.) This option is used when the user has a predefined barcode ratio and does not want to use the standard default ratio (X1).

- **Enable.** Lets the user define the barcode ratio.
- **Disable.** Sets the barcode ratio to the standard default ratio.

The factory default is Enable.

Var Form Adjust

(From page 140.) This specifies an amount (in tenths of inches) to add to the length of variable-length forms. Variable-length forms are those that use a semicolon at the end of the CREATE command:

~CREATE;<FORMNAME>;0. Typically, variable-length forms are determined by the elements within the form. The longest form element becomes the overall form length. This option allows an additional space to be added to the form length.

The range is 00.0 to 03.0 inches, and the factory default is 00.0 inches.

Var Form Type

(From page 140.)

- **Add Nothing.** (The default.) When selected, no action is taken.
- **Add ;0.** When selected, the form length ends at the longest printed element.
- **Add ;X.** When selected, the form length is the same as the physical page length (the Label Length menu under MEDIA CONTROL).

Vertical DPI

(From page 145, page 148, page 150, page 150, page 152, page 154.)

This feature enables the thermal printer to print images as close as possible to the same size as those originally programmed for a line matrix or laser printer by selecting a vertical resolution that matches that of the printer that the file was originally generated for.

Although the range allows a selection of up to 400 DPI, the thermal printer is capable of printing up to 203 (T5204, T5206, T5208) and 300 (T5304, T5306, T5308) DPI vertical resolution.

The range is 72-400 DPI, and the factory default is 72 DPI.

VPA Check

(From page 136.)

- **Enable.** The printer checks for dots that fall outside the intersection of the logical and physical pages. If dots fall outside the area, the printer reports and error to the host if the IPDS Exception Handling Control command setting requires error reporting.
- **Disable.** The printer does not report dots outside the valid printable area.

The factory default is Enable.

Width Limit

(From page 143.) When enabled, the system will limit the length and width for expanded characters to a limit shown in Table 5, which shows the maximum width allowed for a specific height in the range of 00 through 40 (0.0 through 4.0 inches).

The factory default is Disable.

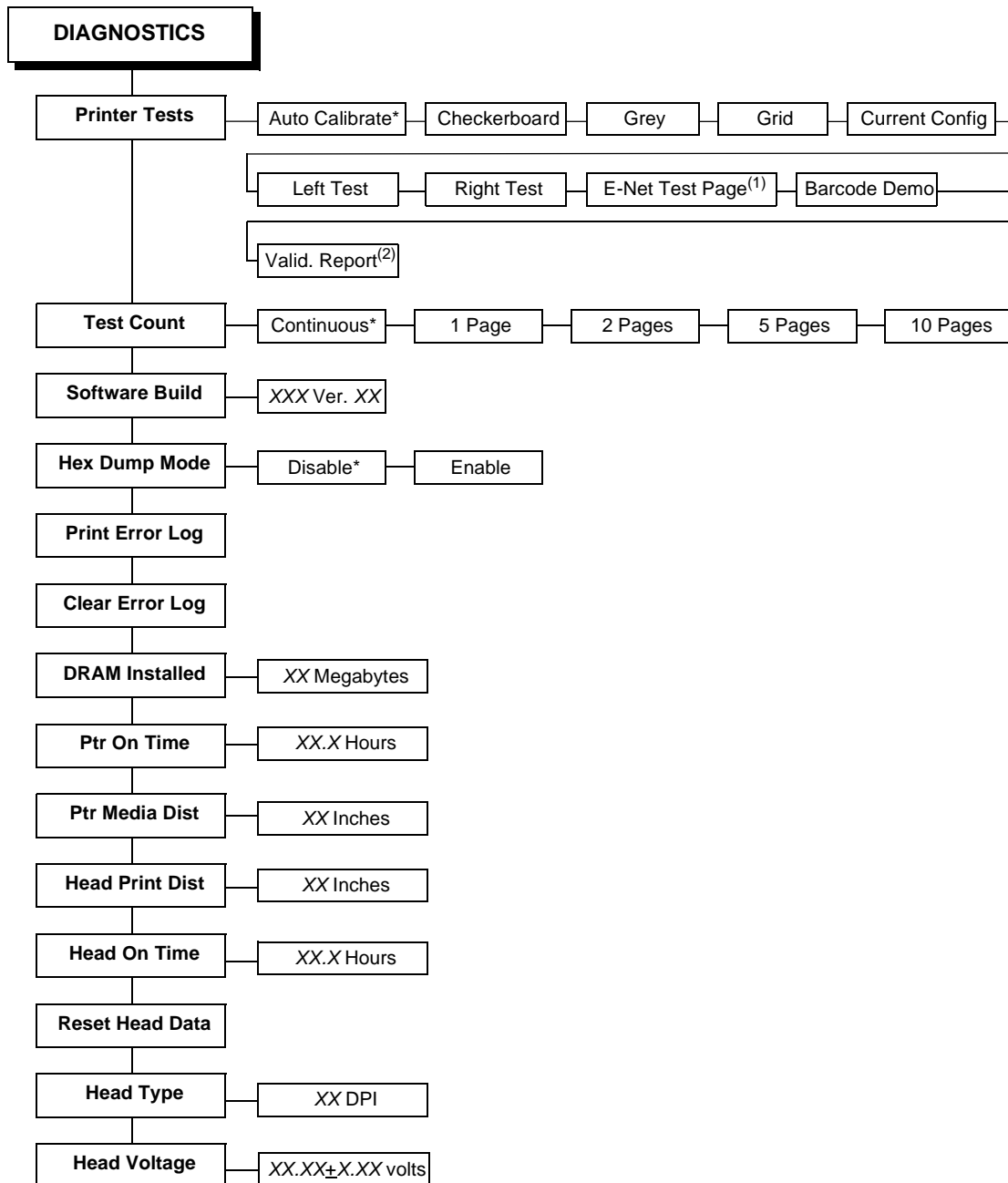
Table 5. Width Limit Table

Height Param.	Max. Width Allowed	Height Param.	Max. Width Allowed
00	99	21	51
01	99	22	53
02	3	23	56
03	6	24	58
04	8	25	61
05	11	26	63
06	13	27	66
07	16	28	68
08	18	29	71
09	21	30	73
10	23	31	76
11	26	32	78
12	28	33	81
13	31	34	83

Table 5. Width Limit Table

14	33	35	86
15	36	36	88
16	38	37	91
17	41	38	93
18	43	39	96
19	46	40	98
20	48		

DIAGNOSTICS



* = Factory Default

¹ Appears only if the Ethernet Interface adapter is installed.

² Appears only if the validator is installed.

DIAGNOSTICS Submenus

Printer Tests

This menu item selects the test pattern to be printed. These patterns are typically used to check the print quality and operation of the printer. The following tests can be selected.

- **Auto Calibrate.** Senses paperout, perforation, gap, or mark, and calibrates the printer for the currently installed media.
- **Checkerboard.** This pattern helps identify marginal printhead elements, quality of edge sharpness, and uneven print quality.
- **Grey.** This pattern helps identify burned out printhead elements and uneven print quality.
- **Grid.** This pattern helps identify edge sharpness and uneven print quality.
- **Current Config.** Prints the current printer configuration and helps identify the text print quality.
- **Left Test.** This pattern contains a series of ladder-type bar code symbols. The first prints four ladder symbols and the last prints a single ladder symbol. This pattern helps to identify ribbon wrinkle problems.
- **Right Test.** This pattern contains a series of ladder-type bar code symbols, starting with four, and decrementing by one symbol on each print until a single symbol prints. This pattern helps to identify ribbon wrinkle problems.
- **E-NET Test Page.** Prints the Ethernet statistics stored on the Ethernet Interface adapter. This menu item appears only if the Ethernet Interface adapter is installed.
- **Barcode Demo.** Prints text and barcodes with the barcodes positioned at the left and right margins of the standard label media supplied with the printer. The test automatically produces output for 4, 6, and 8 inch printers at 203 dpi and 300 dpi.
- **Valid. Report.** This item appears only if the validator is installed. Prints a report of the validation statistics since the printer was turned on or since the last data reset.

Once the desired test pattern has been selected, printing is initiated by pressing the ↵ key. In the case of the Checkerboard, Grey and Grid test patterns, the number of times the pattern will be repeated is determined by the setting of the Test Count menu item. If the Test Count menu item is set at Continuous, printing is stopped by pressing the ↵ key again.

The factory default is Auto Calibrate.

Test Count

This menu item selects the number of times the selected test pattern will be printed.

The options are Continuous, 1 Page, 2 Pages, 5 Pages, and 10 Pages.

The factory default is Continuous.

Software Build

The reference number, which includes the program file part number and revision number, of the software installed in the printer, e.g., 358186 V1.07G.

Hex Dump Mode

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** The printer prints out data sent from the host in hexadecimal format.

Also see page 176.

The factory default is Disable.

Print Error Log

Prints the current log of errors. Most non-routine faults (RIBBON FAULT, PRINT HEAD HOT) are stored in the error log.

Clear Error Log

Clears entries in the error log.

DRAM Installed

Displays the amount of DRAM installed.

Ptr On Time

Displays the cumulative time in hours the printer has been powered on.

This value is set to zero at the factory after burn-in testing.

Ptr Media Dist

Displays the cumulative number of inches the printer has moved media.

This value is set to zero at the factory after burn-in testing.

Head Print Dist

Displays the length of media actually printed since the last Reset Head Data operation. This value is set to zero at the factory after burn-in testing.

Head On Time

Displays the time that power has been applied to the printhead since the last Reset Head Data operation. This value is set to zero at the factory after burn-in testing.

Reset Head Data

Resets all printhead statistics values (Head Prt Dist and Head On Time) to zero.

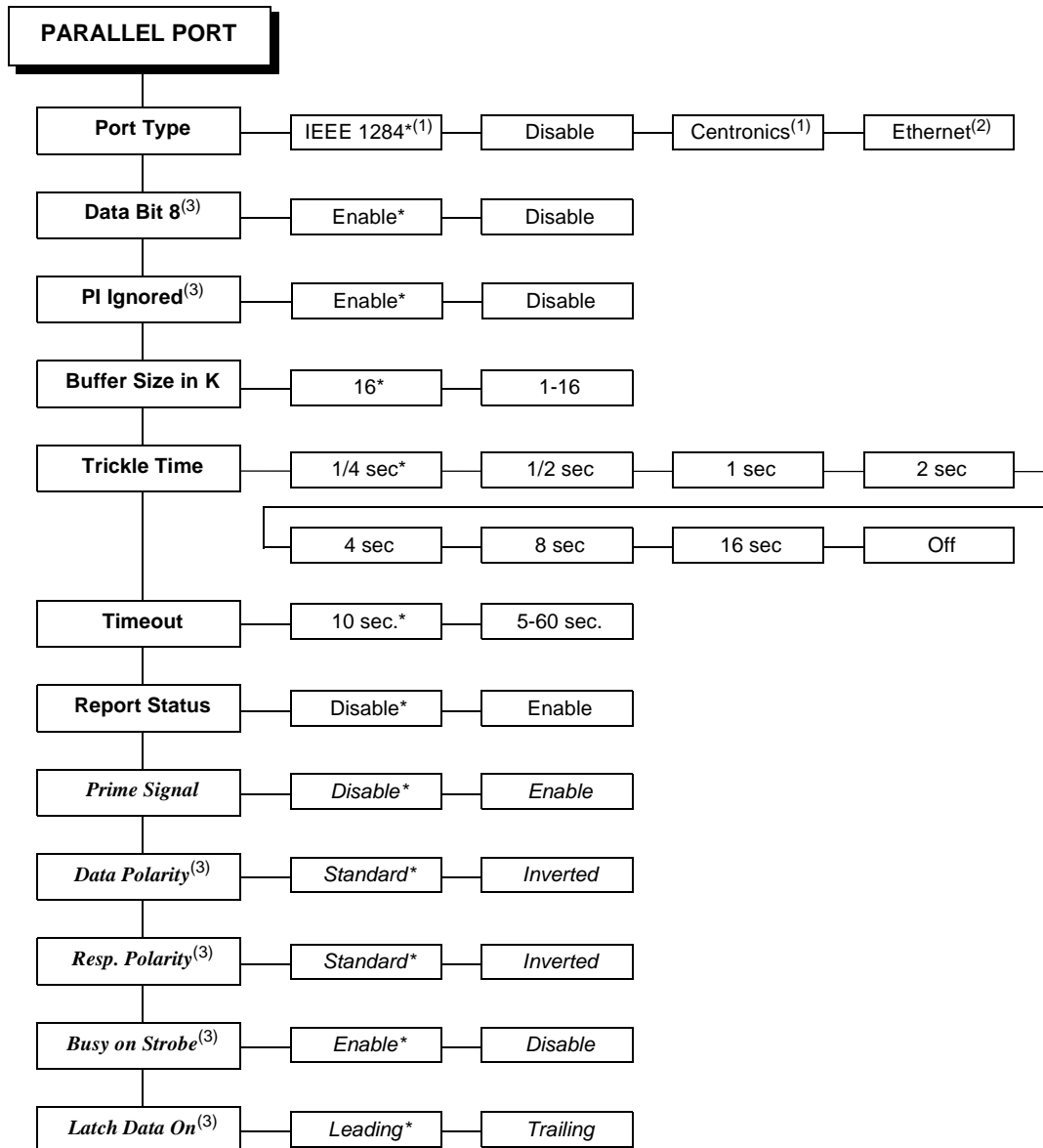
Head Type

Displays the printhead dot density.

Head Voltage

Displays the applied printhead voltage.

PARALLEL PORT



Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when Advanced User is enabled (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

¹ Does not display when Ethernet is installed.

² Available only when Ethernet is installed.

³ Available only when the Centronics option is enabled (in the Port Type submenu of PARALLEL PORT).

PARALLEL PORT Submenus

Port Type

This menu item selects the type of printer parallel port interface to be used with the host.

The options are IEEE 1284, Disable, Centronics, and Ethernet.

NOTE: The Ethernet option is available only if Ethernet is installed. When Ethernet is installed, the IEEE 1284 and Centronics options do not display.

The factory default is IEEE 1284.

Data Bit 8

- **Enable.** The PI line is not passed directly from host to printer; all 8 bits are used for data bits, and characters in the hex 80-FF range can be accessed.
- **Disable.** When the host PI line is enabled, data bit 8 internally indicates PI line status. To use the PI line, disable data bit 8, and enable the Host PI configuration option (under the PI Ignored option).

NOTE: Data bit 8 is interpreted as either data bit 8 or PI signal, but never both. When enabled as data bit 8, data bit 8 has priority over the PI signal, and all data above hex 7F is used to access character data and not to interpret PI line data.

Conversely, when data bit 8 is disabled and the PI signal is used, data bit 8 of the data is reserved for use as the PI function, and you cannot access characters in the hex 80-FF range. Therefore, to access characters in the hex 80-FF range, data bit 8 must be enabled.

The factory default is Enable.

PI Ignored

The PI (Paper Instruction) signal is used to control vertical paper motion.

- **Enable.** Ignores the PI signal and treats the data as characters or control codes.
- **Disable.** Causes the printer to interpret the eight data lines as VFU commands when the PI signal is true.

The factory default is Enable.

Buffer Size in K

This option configures the amount of memory allocated for the Ethernet buffer. The range is 1-16 Kbytes, in 1-Kbyte increments.

The factory default is 16 Kbytes.

Trickle Time

When the printer is printing data from a host and a second print job is received by the printer from a different host, Trickle Time prevents the second host from timing out while it is waiting for its data to be printed. In order to support this feature, the port has to be able to accept data from the host and store it for future use.

For example, if the printer is printing a job from the serial port, and then receives a second print job from the parallel port, the data from the parallel port will “trickle” bit by bit into the printer buffer to prevent a timeout error from being sent back to the host connected to the parallel port.

The selected value is the time that the printer waits before getting the next byte of data from the host. The Trickle Time value should be less than the host time out value, but not too much shorter or else the printer fills up its buffer too fast. This function is not applicable for C/T hotport.

The options are 1/4, 1/2, 1, 2, 4, 8, and 16 seconds and Off.

The factory default is 1/4 second.

Timeout

This is the value used by the printer to time out from the current port and check the other selected port types for data to print. When the printer has not received data from the host after a certain period of time, it needs to timeout in order to service the other ports.

The range is 5-60 seconds, and the factory default is 10 seconds.

Report Status

- **Disable.** When a fault occurs on the printer, only the active port reports the fault to the host.
- **Enable.** The port will report any fault even when it is not the current active port.

The factory default is Disable.

Prime Signal

- **Disable.** The parallel port will not perform a warm start (reboot) if the host asserts the Prime Signal.
- **Enable.** The parallel port will perform a warm start (reboot) if the host asserts the Prime Signal.

The factory default is Disable.

Data Polarity

The Data Polarity parameter must be set to match the data polarity of your host computer.

- **Standard.** Does not expect the host computer to invert the data.
- **Inverted.** Expects the data received on the data lines from the host computer to be inverted. Ones become zeros, and vice versa.

The factory default is Standard.

Resp. Polarity

The Response Polarity parameter must be set to match the response polarity of your host computer.

- **Standard.** Does not invert the response signal.
- **Inverted.** Inverts the response signal sent to the host computer.

The factory default is Standard.

Busy on Strobe

- **Enable.** Asserts a busy signal after each character is received.
- **Disable.** Asserts a busy signal only when the print buffers are full.

The factory default is Enable.

Latch Data On

Specifies whether the data is read on the leading or trailing edge of the data strobe signal.

The options are Leading (the factory default) and Trailing.

SERIAL PORT

SERIAL PORT	
Port Type	RS 232* RS 422 Disable
Baud Rate	9600 BAUD* 19200 BAUD 38400 BAUD 57600 BAUD 115200 BAUD 600 BAUD 1200 BAUD 2400 BAUD 4800 BAUD
Word Length	8* 7
Stop Bits	1* 2
Parity	None* Odd Even Mark Sense
Data Protocol	XON / XOFF* ETX / ACK ACK / NAK Series1 1 Char Series1 2 Char DTR
Buffer Size in K	16* 1-16
Trickle Time	1/4 sec* 1/2 sec. 1 sec 2 sec 4 sec 8 sec 16 sec Off
Timeout	10 sec.* 5-60 sec.
Report Status	Disable* Enable
Data Term Ready	True* On-Line and BNF Off-Line or BF On-Line False
Request to Send	On-Line and BNF* Off-Line or BF On-Line False True
Poll Character	00 Hex* 00-FF Hex
Poll Response	0 ms* 0-30 ms
Idle Response	Disable* Enable
One Char Enquiry	Disable* Enable
Printer Status	Disable* ENQ/STX ENQ
Framing Errors	Enable* Disable

Notes:

* = Factory Default

Italicized items are available only when you enable Advanced User (in the PRINTER CONTROL menu).

SERIAL PORT Submenus

Port Type

This menu item selects the type of printer serial port interface, RS 232 or RS 422, to be used with its host. The serial port can also be disabled.

The factory default is RS 232.

Baud Rate

Sets the baud rate of the serial interface in the printer. Baud rate is the speed at which serial data is transferred between the host computer and the printer. The options for the RS-232 and RS-422 interfaces are 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, and 115200 Baud.

NOTE: If you select a baud rate that is greater than 19200, you may need to use RS-422 to prevent data loss. You also may need to increase the Buffer Size in K parameter from the default (1 Kbyte) to improve performance.

The factory default is 9600.

Word Length

Sets the length of the serial data word. The length of the data word can be set to 7 or 8 bits, and must match the corresponding data bits setting in the host computer.

The factory default is 8.

Stop Bits

Sets the number of stop bits in the serial data word. Either 1 or 2 stop bits can be selected. The setting must match the corresponding stop bit setting in the host computer.

The factory default is 1.

Parity

The options are Odd, Even, Mark, Sense, or None. The setting must match the corresponding parity setting in the host computer.

The factory default is None.

Data Protocol

You can select one of the following serial interface protocols to meet the host interface requirements.

- **XON / XOFF.** The printer controls the flow of communication from the host by turning the transmission on and off. In some situations, such as when the buffer is full or the timing of signals is too slow or too fast, the printer will tell the host to stop transmission by sending an XOFF character. An XOFF character is sent when the number of empty bytes in the buffer is less than or equal to 25 percent of the buffer size. If the host keeps sending data after an XOFF is sent, the printer firmware will continue to send an XOFF for every 16 characters received. When cleared, the printer will resume receiving data (XON). The data does not have any End of Text codes; XON / XOFF is a non-block protocol.
- **ETX / ACK.** End of Text / Acknowledge. The host controls the flow of communication to the printer by sending a block of data and ending the block with an End of Text (ETX) signal. When the printer receives the ETX signal, it will acknowledge the ETX, thereby acknowledging it has received the entire block of data.
- **ACK / NAK.** ACK means acknowledge; the device acknowledges it has accepted a transmission. NAK means negative acknowledge; the device did not receive the transmission.
- **Series1 1 Char.** The printer controls the flow of communication from the host by turning the transmission on and off using response characters sent to the host. If the number of valid bytes in the buffer reaches 75 percent of the buffer size, the online or offline and buffer full response character is sent. If the buffer is completely full, an online or offline buffer full response is sent every time a character is sent from the host. Whenever the printer state changes to online or offline, the appropriate response character is sent. If the idle response option is enabled, the printer will send a response character every two seconds while the number of valid bytes in the buffer is less than 75 percent of the buffer size. If a poll character is received (configurable from the Poll Character xx Hex option on the front panel from hex 0 through FF), the printer will send a response character n milliseconds later (configurable from the Poll Character xx MS on the front panel from 0 through 30). This n milliseconds is called the poll delay. The poll character will be removed from the input data stream and will not be processed. This may cause problems with the transmission of binary data (e.g. control codes, bit image, etc.). If a poll delay is started due to the receipt of a poll character and another poll character is received, the second poll character has no effect, and is removed from the input data stream. If a transition (from buffer full to empty or online to offline) occurs during a poll delay, the new printer state will be sent at the end of the poll delay.

The response characters are described below.

Printer State	Response
Online and Buffer Empty	CR
Online and Buffer Full	3
Offline and Buffer Empty	0
Offline and Buffer Full	2

- **Series1 2 Char.** This protocol behaves exactly the same as the Series 1 Char except there is a two-character response to the host. The response characters are described in the following table:

Printer State	Response
Online and Buffer Empty	1 CR
Online and Buffer Full	3 CR
Offline and Buffer Empty	0 CR
Offline and Buffer Full	2 CR

- **DTR.** The printer controls the data flow by sending this hardware signal to the host. If there is enough room in the printer buffer, the printer will send a high signal; if the buffer is full the printer will send a low signal. DTR tells the host if it is safe to send more data. (If the host sends data during an unsafe condition, data will be lost.) DTR is not available when RS-422 is selected.

The factory default is XON / XOFF.

Buffer Size in K

This option configures the amount of memory allocated for the serial port buffer. The range is 1-16 Kbytes, in 1-Kbyte increments.

NOTE: If you select a baud rate that is 19200 or greater, you may need to increase the Buffer Size in K parameter from the default to 16 Kbytes to improve performance.

The factory default is 16.

Trickle Time

When the printer is printing data from a host and a second job is received by the printer from a different host, Trickle Time prevents the second host from timing out while it is waiting for its data to be printed. In order to support this feature, the port has to be able to accept data from the host and store it for future use.

For example, if the printer is printing a job from the serial port, and then receives a second print job from the parallel port, the data from the parallel port will “trickle” bit by bit into the printer buffer to prevent a timeout error from being sent back to the host connected to the parallel port.

The selected value is the time that the printer waits before getting the next byte of data from the host. The Trickle Time value should be less than the host time out value, but not too much shorter or else the printer fills up its buffer too fast. This function is not applicable for C/T hotport.

The options are 1/4, 1/2, 1, 2, 4, 8, and 16 seconds and Off.

The factory default is 1/4 sec.

Timeout

This is the value used by the printer to time out from the current port and check the other selected Port Types for data to print. When the printer has not received data from the host after certain period of time, it needs to Timeout in order to service the other ports.

The range is 5-60 seconds, and the factory default is 10 seconds.

Report Status

When a fault condition occurs in the printer, normally only the active port reports the fault to the host. With this menu item enabled, the port will report any fault even when it is not the current, active port.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Data Term Ready

Stands for Data Terminal Ready. This configuration is part of hardware flow control and determines when the Data Terminal Ready (DTR) signal is generated. This signal indicates if the printer is ready to receive data.

- **True.** Continuously asserts the DTR signal.
- **On-Line and BNF (buffer not full).** Asserts the DTR signal when the printer is online and the internal serial buffer is not full.
- **Off-Line or BF (buffer full).** Asserts the DTR signal when the printer is offline or the internal serial buffer is full.
- **On-Line.** Asserts the DTR signal when the printer is online.
- **False.** Never asserts the DTR signal.

The factory default is True.

Request to Send

This configuration is part of hardware flow control and determines when the Request to Send (RTS) signal is generated. This signal indicates whether or not the printer is ready to receive data.

- **On-Line and BNF.** Asserts the RTS signal when the printer is online and the internal serial buffer is not full.
- **Off-Line or BF.** Asserts the RTS signal when the printer is offline or the internal serial buffer is full.
- **On-Line.** Asserts the RTS signal when the printer is online.
- **False.** Never asserts the RTS signal.
- **True.** Continuously asserts the RTS signal.

The factory default is On-Line and BNF.

Poll Character

This option is for the Series1 protocol. Whenever the printer receives this character, it sends a response to the host indicating the current state of the printer (see Series1 protocol).

The range is 00-FF Hex, and the factory default is 00 Hex.

Poll Response

This option is for the Series1 protocol. After receiving a poll character, the printer will wait the poll response time in milliseconds before sending the response.

The range is 0-30 ms, and the factory default is 0 ms.

Idle Response

This option is for the Series1 protocol.

- **Disable.**
- **Enable.** The printer sends a response character every two seconds while the number of valid bytes in the buffer is less than 75 percent of the buffer size.

The factory default is Disable.

One Char Enquiry

The One Char Enquiry mode uses the Poll Character to detect a request from the host and sends a response back to the host. This option also allows you to turn on and off this feature.

Table 6. One Char Enquiry Response Characters

Printer State	Response (hex)
Online and Buffer Not Full	20
Online and Buffer Full	21
Offline and Buffer Not Full	22
Offline and Buffer Full	23

The Poll Character is removed from the data stream. If the Data Protocol is set to ETX/ACK, ACK/NAK, or Series1, One Char Enquiry is automatically disabled.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Printer Status

- **Disable.** Printer status ignored.
- **ENQ/STX** (see Table 7).
- **ENQ** (see Table 8).

When enabled, the printer will respond to an ENQ character by sending a status byte to the host. The type of status byte is determined by a Front Panel Menu selection. The selections allowed are ENQ/STX and ENQ. The ENQ is removed from the data stream.

Table 7. ENQ/STX Status Byte

Bit	Printer Status
0	Set when the printer is not online or the buffer is full.
1	Set when the printer is offline.
2	Clear during a paper out or RibbonMinder fault.
3	Always set.
4	Set during a Head Open fault.
5	Set during a buffer overflow fault.
6	Set during a parity or framing error fault.
7	Always clear.

Table 8. ENQ Status Byte

Bit	Printer Status
0	Set when the label has printed.
1	Set when the label is presented.
2	Set while the printer is online.
3	Always set.
4	Set printing in the batch mode.
5	Set during a Ribbon fault.
6	Set during a Paper Out fault.
7	Set during a Head Open fault.

The factory default is Disable.

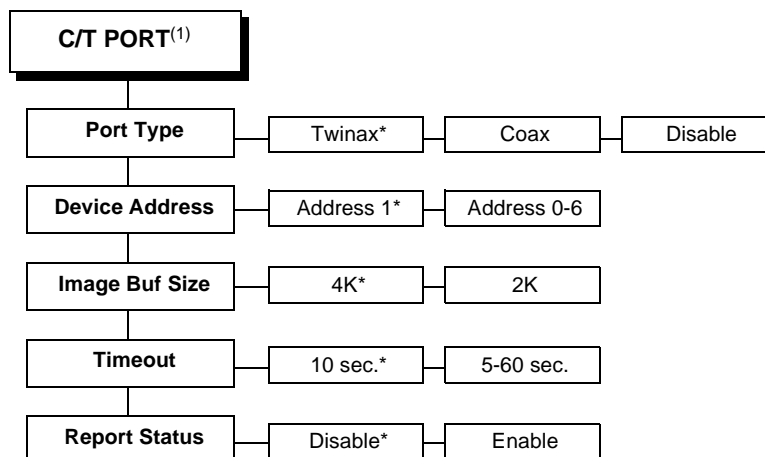
Framing Errors

These are possible errors that can occur when serial interface settings of the printer do not match those of the host computer.

- **Enable.** If a framing error occurs, a fault message will display on the control panel.
- **Disable.** If a framing error occurs, a fault message will not display on the control panel.

The factory default is Enable.

C/T PORT



Notes:

* = Factory Default

¹ Appears only if the CTHI option is installed.

C/T PORT Submenus

Port Type

This menu item selects the desired active CTHI interface and appears only when the CTHI option is installed.

The factory default is Twinax.

Device Address

Allows you to set the device address from 0 through 6. The host directs data and commands on the twinax line to a specific device based on its unique device address. After the address has been changed, a Power On Reset (POR) status is sent to the host.

The factory default is 1.

Image Buf Size

Allows you to select 4K or 2K as the image buffer size. This option is only valid when the printer emulates 3287. For the 4234 emulation, the buffer size is fixed at 4K. A POR status is sent to the host when the printer is put online.

The factory default is 4K.

Timeout

This menu item allows the user to set the time that, when the printer has not received data from its host, it will begin to service all other host ports looking for data to print.

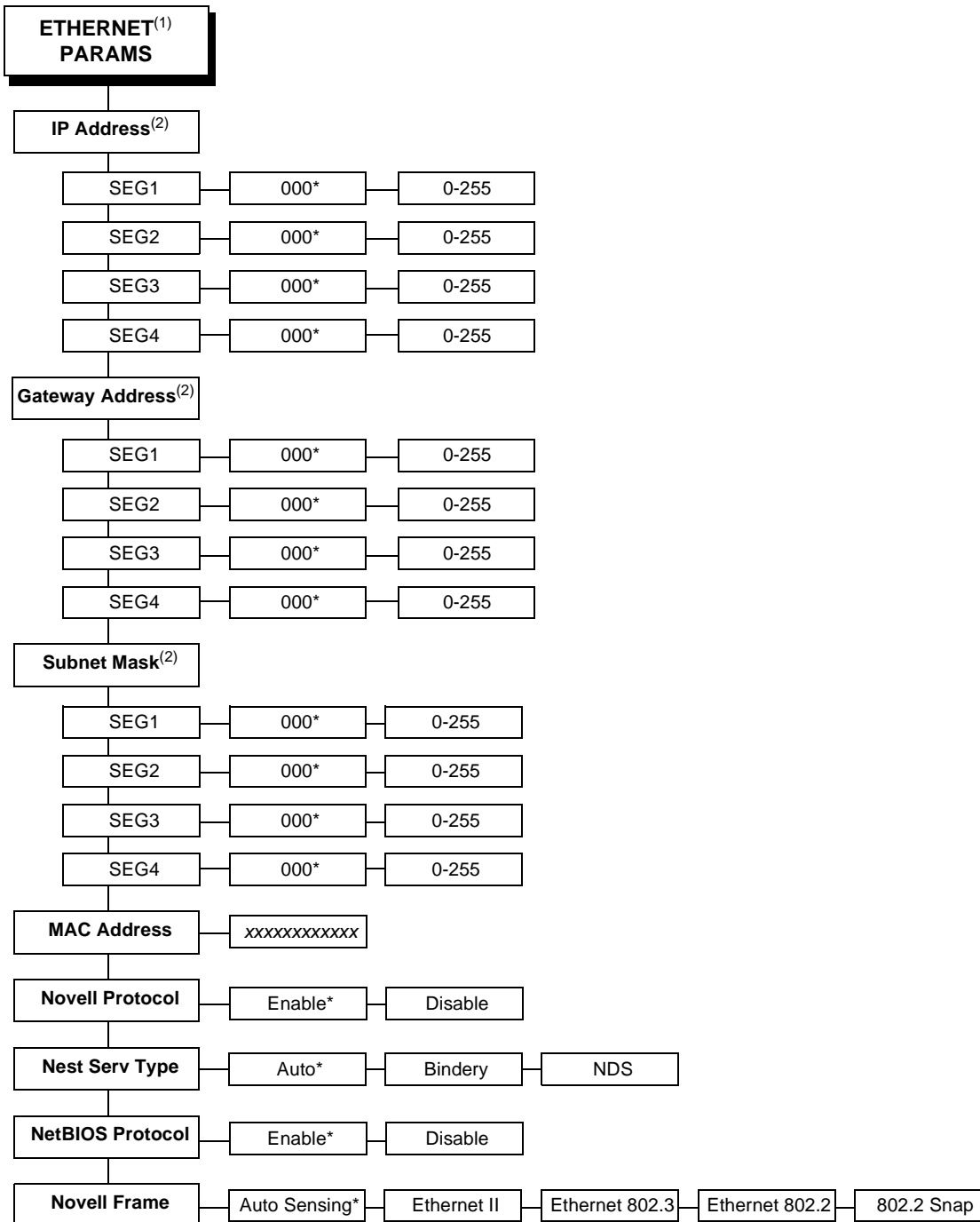
The range is 5-60 seconds, and the factory default is 10 seconds.

Report Status

When a fault condition occurs in the printer, normally only the active port reports the fault to the host. With this menu item enabled, the port will report any fault even when it is not the current, active port.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

ETHERNET PARAMS

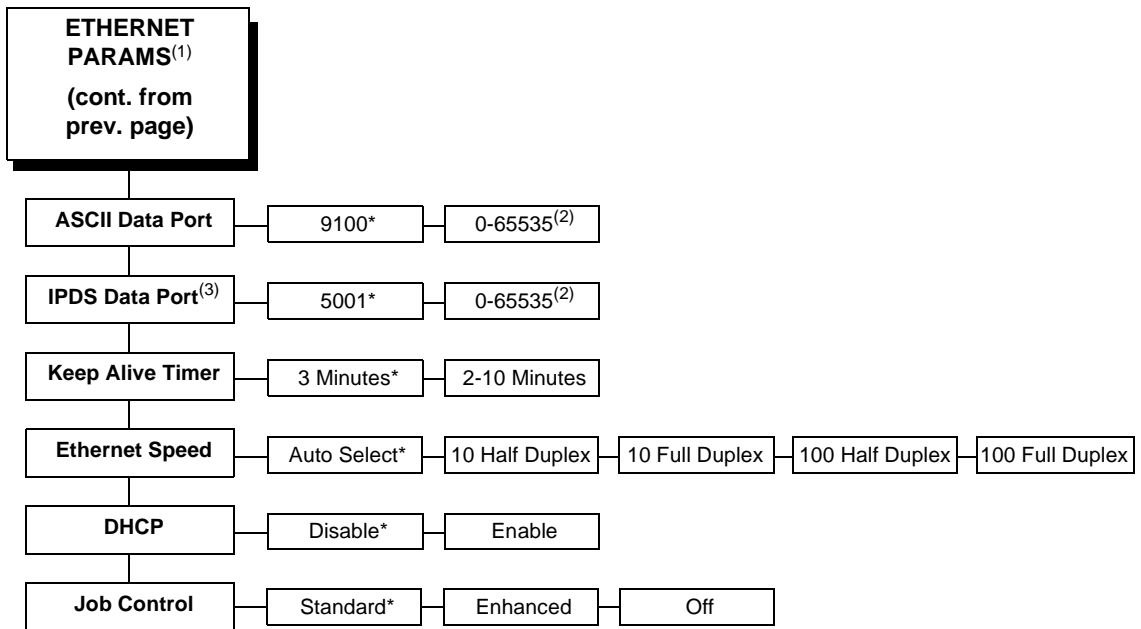


Notes:

* = Factory Default

¹ Appears only if an Ethernet Network Interface Card (NIC) is installed.

² This menu includes four submenus (i.e., SEG1, SEG2, SEG3, SEG4). To move through the submenus, press ↓ or ↑. To move through the numerical options (i.e., 0-255) of a selected submenu, press + or −.

**Notes:**

* = Factory Default

¹ Appears only if an Ethernet Network Interface Card (NIC) is installed.² Set the port number that works with your host system.³ Appears only if the IPDS emulation is installed.

ETHERNET PARAMS Submenus

IP Address

This item allows you to set the IP Address for the TCP/IP protocol. If the IP Address is assigned by Bootp, ARP or DHCP, it is dynamic and read-only.

The factory defaults for the SEG1 through SEG4 are 000, 000, 000, and 000.

NOTE: When changing the IP Address, the printer resets the Network Interface Card (NIC) when the printer is placed online. When the printer resets the NIC, the LCD displays DO NOT POWER OFF. After the NIC has completed its initialization, the LCD displays E-NET INIT to signal that the NIC and printer are in the initialization process. When both the NIC and printer have completed initialization, the LCD displays E-NET READY.

Gateway Address

This item allows you to set the Gateway Address for the TCP/IP protocol. If the Gateway Address is assigned by Bootp, ARP or DHCP, it is dynamic and read-only.

The factory defaults for the SEG1 through SEG4 are 000, 000, 000, and 000.

NOTE: When changing the Gateway Address, the printer resets the NIC when the printer is placed online. When the printer resets the NIC, the LCD displays DO NOT POWER OFF. After the NIC has completed its initialization, the LCD displays E-NET INIT to signal that the NIC and printer are in the initialization process. When both the NIC and printer have completed initialization, the LCD displays E-NET READY.

Subnet Mask

This item allows you to set the Subnet Mask for the TCP/IP protocol. If the Subnet Mask is assigned by Bootp, Arp or DHCP, it is dynamic and read-only.

The factory defaults for the SEG1 through SEG4 are 000, 000, 000, and 000.

NOTE: When changing the Subnet Mask, the printer resets the NIC when the printer is placed online. When the printer resets the NIC, the LCD displays DO NOT POWER OFF. After the NIC has completed its initialization, the LCD displays E-NET INIT to signal that the NIC and printer are in the initialization process. When both the NIC and printer have completed initialization, the LCD displays E-NET READY.

MAC Address

This item is the Manufacturer's Assigned Number, and is unique for each NIC. It is read-only.

Novell Protocol

- **Enable.** The NIC will respond to the Novell protocol.
- **Disable.** The NIC does not recognize the Novell protocol.

The factory default is Enable.

Nest Serv Type

You can change the Nest Server using this option, but consult your administrator for the appropriate setting.

The options are Auto (the factory default), Bindery, and NDS.

NetBIOS Protocol

- **Enable.** The NIC will respond to the NetBIOS protocol.
- **Disable.** The NIC does not recognize the NetBIOS protocol.

The factory default is Enable.

Novell Frame

This menu option provides selection of the frame type for the Novell protocol. For the definition of each frame type, refer to the appropriate Novell-authorized documents.

The factory default is Auto Sensing.

ASCII Data Port

This option allows you to set the port number for ASCII print jobs. The data port number needs to match your host system setting.

The range is 0 - 65535, and the factory default is 9100.

IPDS Data Port (IPDS emulation only)

This option allows you to set the port number for IPDS print jobs.

The range is 0 - 65536, and the factory default is 5001.

Keep Alive Timer

This is the time that the Keep Alive Timer will run. Keep in mind that with the Keep Alive Timer on, the tcp connection will stay connected even after the print job has terminated.

The range is 2-10 minutes, and the factory default is 3 minutes.

Ethernet Speed

This menu appears only if a 10/100Base-T Network Interface Card (NIC) is installed.

The Ethernet Speed menu has five different speed modes to allow compatibility with different systems and networks:

- **Auto Select.** Tells the 10/100Base-T NIC to perform an auto detection scheme and configure itself to be 10 Half Duplex, 10 Full Duplex, 100 Half Duplex, or 100 Full Duplex.
- **10 Half Duplex.** Tells the 10/100Base-T NIC to communicate at 10 Megabits per second using half duplex.
- **10 Full Duplex.** Tells the 10/100Base-T NIC to communicate at 10 Megabits per second using full duplex.
- **100 Half Duplex.** Tells the 10/100Base-T NIC to communicate at 100 Megabits per second using half duplex.
- **100 Full Duplex.** Tells the 10/100Base-T NIC to communicate at 100 Megabits per second using full duplex.

The factory default is Auto Select.

DHCP

You can enable/disable the DHCP protocol using this option, but consult your administrator for the appropriate setting.

The options are Disable (the factory default) and Enable.

Job Control

- **Standard.** The NIC waits for the entire job to be *received* before it indicates the job is done.
- **Enhanced.** The NIC waits for the entire job to be *printed* before it indicates the job is done.
- **Off.** There is no synchronization between the NIC and the printer.

The factory default is Standard.

NOTE: For detailed information about using the NIC, refer to the *Network Interface Card User's Manual*.

Downloading Emulation And Operating System Software

Flash Memory

Flash memory retains its contents when printer power is turned off. (Compare this to RAM, which loses its contents when power is removed.) Flash memory is contained in an 80-pin 4MB (or optional 10MB) SIMM (Single Inline Memory Module) at location J38 on the controller board.

Printer emulation and operating system software are loaded into flash memory at the factory, but you will install software in some situations:

- The IPDS or Expansion-C/T options are added after the printer is installed
- A printer software upgrade is installed
- The printer controller board has been replaced
- The flash memory SIMM has been replaced

Emulation and operating system software are stored on a CD. You will copy the appropriate file to your computer's hard disk, then download that file to the printer.

IMPORTANT

When downloading emulation and operating system software to the printer, all other optional font files, customer-supplied logos, setup files, and TIFF files will be erased. You will then need to reload those files. Before starting a download procedure, be sure that you have all the necessary files on hand.

You can load software through the serial, parallel, or Ethernet NIC port of the printer:

- If you are going to load memory through the serial or parallel port of the printer, see "Downloading Emulation And Operating System Software" on page 223. The load commands are different, depending on the printer port you use. These differences are explained in the note following step 22, page 226.
- If the printer has the NIC installed, see "Downloading Software Through The Network Interface Card (NIC)" on page 227.

Downloading Software Through The Serial Or Parallel Port

1. Make a printout of all saved configurations. (Installing new software erases all saved configurations. You will use the printouts to restore the printer configurations.)
2. Set the printer power switch to O (Off).
3. If the printer is already connected to the serial or parallel port of an IBM-compatible computer running the PC-DOS™ or MS-DOS operating system, go to step 9. If not, go to step 4.
4. Unplug the AC power cord from the printer.
5. Disconnect all data input cables from the printer interfaces.
6. Connect a parallel data cable to the LPT1 port or a serial data cable to the COM1 port of an IBM-compatible computer running the PC-DOS or MS-DOS operating system.

NOTE: You can connect the cable to the LPT2 port if the LPT1 port is already in use. The load commands are different if you use this port, as described in the note after step 22.

7. Connect the data cable to the appropriate I/O port of the printer.
8. Plug the AC power cord into the printer.
9. On the printer control panel, press and hold down the and ↓ keys. Without releasing the keys, power the printer on. Continue holding down the and ↓ keys.
10. When you see "TESTING HARDWARE PLEASE WAIT" on the LCD, release the and ↓ keys.
11. Wait until you see "WAITING FOR PROGRAM DOWNLOAD" on the LCD before proceeding. This can take up to 30 seconds to appear, depending on the emulations and interfaces installed in the printer.
12. Press the + key. "SELECT DOWNLOAD PORT=CENTRONICS" appears on the LCD.

NOTE: The default port is CENTRONICS; this is the standard load through the parallel port. If you want to use the default, continue at step 14.

13. Press + again to cycle through the download ports available in the printer:

RS232-9600 (RS-232 serial, 9600 baud)
 RS232-19.2K (RS-232 serial, 19200 baud)
 RS232-38.4K (RS-232 serial, 38400 baud)
 RS232-115K (RS-232 serial, 115000 baud)
 RS422-9600 (RS-422 serial, 9600 baud)
 RS422-19.2 (RS-422 serial, 19200 baud)
 RS422-38.4K (RS-422 serial, 38400 baud)
 RS422-115K (RS-422 serial, 115000 baud)
 DEBUG

14. When the printer download port you want to use is displayed on the LCD, press ↵. "WAITING DOWNLOAD / PORT = <your selection>" appears on the display.
15. Using Windows Explorer, create a directory named **download** at the root level of your C: hard drive.
16. Insert the printer emulation software CD into your computer.

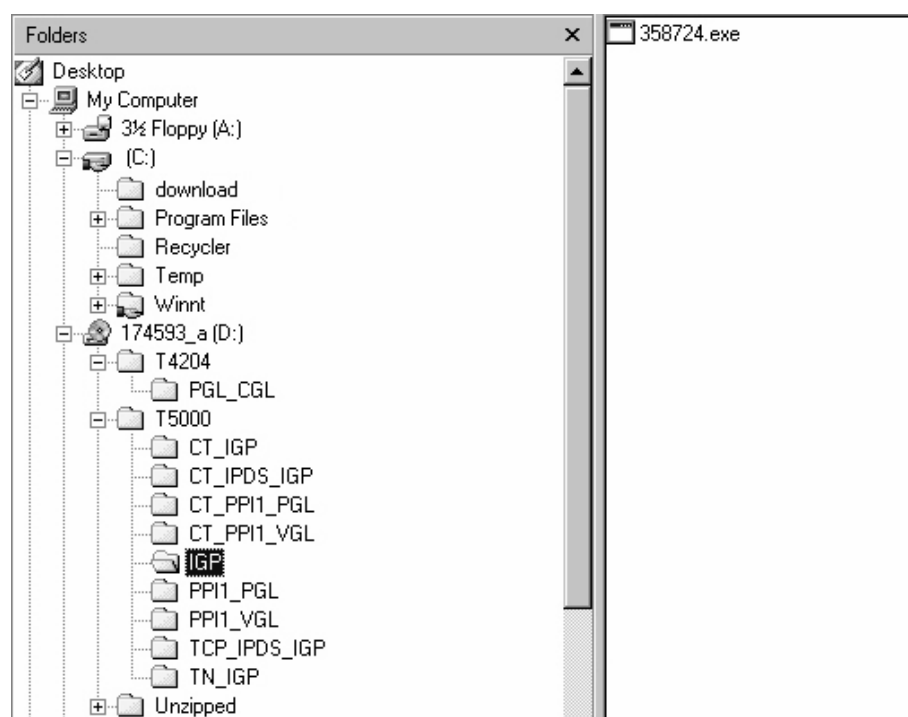


Figure 5. Navigating to the Appropriate Emulation File on the CD

17. Using Windows Explorer, navigate to the appropriate file on the CD based on the printer model number and desired emulation, e.g., T5000 ► IGP. (See Figure 5.)
18. Make note of the file name, which is a six digit number plus **.exe**, e.g., 123456.exe.
This is the file you will download into the printer.

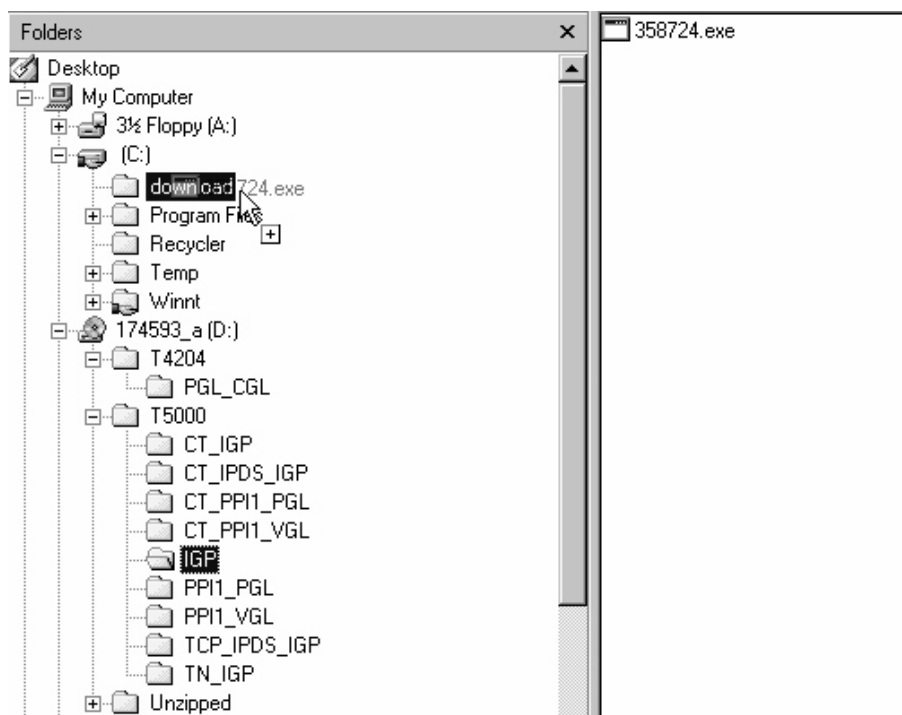


Figure 6. Copying the Emulation File to the Download Directory

19. Copy the file to the download directory.

NOTE: You may need to hold **Ctrl** to make sure a **+** appears to the right of the pointer. (See Figure 6.)

20. Start a command prompt session. (The Start Menu icon is usually labeled MS-DOS Prompt or Command Prompt.)

21. At the command prompt type:

```
c:><Enter>
cd \download<Enter>
```

22. At the command prompt on the computer type:

```
filename.exe -pb<Enter>
```

where *filename.exe* is the file name you noted in step 18. This command decompresses the file on the hard drive and copies it as a binary file into the flash memory on the printer controller board.

NOTE: If you are loading the file using the LPT2 port on the computer, enter the following command:

```
filename.exe -pb2 <Enter>
```

The 9600 baud rate is the only selection older versions of MS-DOS can use. The baud rate information entered in the following commands must match the selection you made in step 13.

If you are loading the file through the printer serial port, enter the following commands:

```
mode COM1:9600,N,8,1,P<Enter>
filename.exe -pbc1<Enter>
```

CAUTION Do not interrupt the downloading process once it has started. Interrupting a download will damage the flash memory on the controller board and NIC card.

While the file is copied into memory, the printer LCD informs you of the load process and status.

23. When the new program has successfully loaded into memory and the printer has reset itself, set the printer power switch to O (Off).
24. Unplug the AC power cord from the printer.
25. Remove the CD from the host computer and store it with the printer.
26. Power off the computer.
27. If you had to install a data cable to the computer and printer in step 6, disconnect it from the computer and printer.
28. If required, reconnect the data input cable(s) to the printer.

Using the configuration printout(s) you made in step 1, reconfigure the printer and reload any optional font files.

Downloading Software Through The Network Interface Card (NIC)

1. Make a printout of all saved configurations. (Installing new software erases all saved configurations. You will use the printouts to restore the printer configurations.)
2. Set the printer power switch to O (Off).
3. On the printer control panel, press and hold down the and ↓ keys. Without releasing the keys, power the printer on. Continue holding the and ↓ keys down.
4. When you see "TESTING HARDWARE PLEASE WAIT" on the LCD, release the and ↓ keys.
5. Wait until you see "WAITING FOR PROGRAM DOWNLOAD" on the LCD before proceeding. This can take up to 30 seconds to appear, depending on the emulations and interfaces installed in the printer.
6. Using Windows Explorer, create a directory named **download** at the root level of your C: hard drive.
7. Insert the printer emulation software CD into your computer.

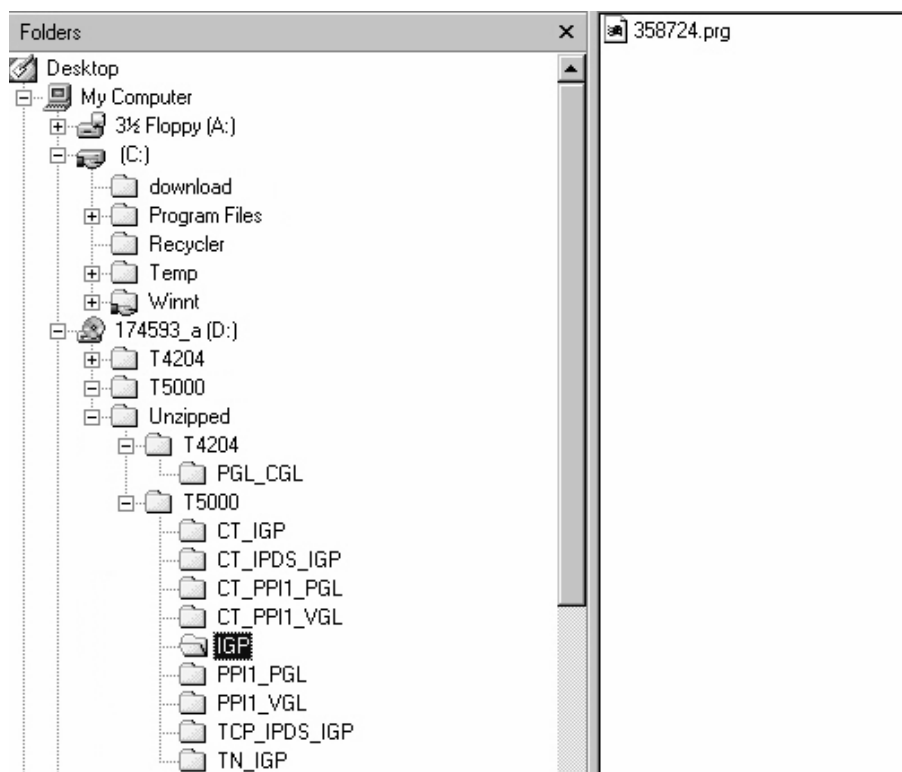


Figure 7. Navigating to the Appropriate Emulation File on the CD

8. Using Windows Explorer, navigate to the appropriate file on the CD (using the Unzipped directory) based on the printer model number and desired emulation, e.g., Unzipped ► T5000 ► IGP. (See Figure 7.)

IMPORTANT

You must use the Unzipped directory, since this contains the uncompressed files necessary for NIC download.

9. Make note of the file name, which is a six digit number plus .prg, e.g., 123456.prg.
This is the file you will download into the NIC.
10. Copy the file to the download directory.
11. Start a command prompt session. (The Start Menu icon is usually labeled MS-DOS Prompt or Command Prompt.)
12. At the command prompt type:


```
c:>cd \download
```
13. Start the FTP protocol by typing:


```
ftp xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
```

 (where xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx represents the IP Address of the printer.)
14. Log in to the printer by typing:


```
root
```

 You are given a password prompt.

NOTE: The default is no password. If the FTP program requires a password, contact your system administrator.

15. At the password prompt, press <Enter>.
16. Once logged in, type the following sequence at the command prompt to download the *filename.prg* file to the printer:

```
cd dest<Enter>
cd d1prn<Enter>
bin<Enter>
put filename.prg<Enter>
(where filename.prg is the file name you noted in step 9.)
```

CAUTION Do not interrupt the downloading process once it has started. Interrupting a download will damage the flash memory on the controller board and NIC card.

17. As the file downloads, the FTP program shows the progress as a percentage. Once the download is complete, exit out of the FTP program by typing:

```
quit<Enter>
```
18. When the new program has successfully loaded into flash memory and the printer has reset itself, set the printer power switch to O (off).
19. Unplug the AC power cord from the printer.
20. Remove the CD from the host computer and store it with the printer.
21. Using the configuration printout(s), reconfigure the printer and reload any optional font files.

Downloading Optional Font Files To Flash Memory

Optional font files are stored on a 3.5 inch floppy diskette that contains file names comprised of a part number with a **.dwn** extension. You will insert the diskette in your IBM-compatible computer and use either the parallel or serial port to download the desired font file(s) to the printer's flash memory.

1. Set the printer power switch to O (off).
2. Connect a parallel data cable to the LPT1 port or a serial cable to the COM1 port of an IBM-compatible computer running the PC-DOS or MS-DOS operating system.

NOTE: You can connect the cable to the LPT2 port on the computer if the LPT1 port is already in use. The load commands are different if you use this port, as described in the notes after step 15.

3. Verify that the data cable is connected to the appropriate I/O port on the printer and to the host computer.
4. Power on the computer and allow it to boot up.
5. On the printer control panel, press and hold down the and ↓ keys while powering the printer on. Continue holding the and ↓ keys down.
6. When you see "WAITING FOR PROGRAM DOWNLOAD" on the LCD, release the and ↓ keys.

NOTE: The printer default port is CENTRONICS; if you want to use this port, continue to step 15.

7. Press the **+** key; "SELECT DOWNLOAD PORT = CENTRONICS" appears on the LCD.
8. Press the **+** key again to cycle through the download ports available in the printer:
RS232-9600 (RS-232 serial, 9600 baud)
RS232-9600 (RS-232 serial, 19200 baud)
RS232-9600 (RS-232 serial, 38400 baud)
RS232-9600 (RS-232 serial, 115000 baud)
RS422-9600 (RS422 serial, 9600 baud)
RS422-9600 (RS422 serial, 19200 baud)
RS422-9600 (RS422 serial, 38400 baud)
RS422-9600 (RS422 serial, 115000 baud)
DEBUG
9. When the printer download port you want to use is displayed on the LCD, press **↵**. "WAITING DOWNLOAD / PORT" = *<your selection>* appears on the display.
10. Insert the optional font diskette into diskette drive A (or B) of the computer.
11. Start a command prompt session. (The Start Menu icon is usually labeled MS-DOS Prompt or Command Prompt.)
12. Make the diskette drive the active drive by typing:
A: <Enter> (if the diskette is in drive B, type **B:** <Enter>)
13. List the contents of the diskette at the command prompt by typing the following:
dir<Enter>

You will see a directory listing containing files with a **.dwn** extension, e.g., 94021.dwn, 94022.dwn, 94023.dwn.
14. Make note of the file name with the **.dwn** extension of each file you want to download to the printer.

NOTE: The numeric portion of the file name will match the numbers of the font typefaces listed in Appendix E of the PGL and VGL Programmer's Reference Manuals and provide you with a description and print sample of the typeface.

15. At the command prompt type:

```
copy /b filename.dwn LPT1<Enter>
(where filename.dwn is file name you noted in step 14.)
```

NOTE: If you are loading the file using the LPT2 port on the computer, type the following command:

```
copy /b filename.dwn LPT2<Enter>
(where filename.dwn is a file you noted in step 14.)
```

If you are loading the file using the serial port on the computer, type the following commands:

```
mode COM1:9600,N,8,1,P<Enter>
copy /b filename.dwn COM1<Enter>
(where filename.dwn is a file you noted in step 14.)
```

The 9600 baud rate is the only selection older versions of MS-DOS can use. The baud rate information entered in the above commands must match the selection you made in step 8.

You can download the optional font files one at a time by entering one file name per the **copy** command or you can copy multiple files in one **copy** command.

To download one file at a time, enter the following at the command prompt:

```
copy /b filename.dwn LPT1<Enter>
```

To download multiple files, enter the following at the command prompt, for example:

```
copy /b filename1.dwn+filename2.dwn+...LPT1<Enter>
```

16. While the font file is copied into flash memory, the printer LCD informs you of the load process and status. When the new file is successfully loaded into memory, the printer will reset itself and go online.

17. To verify that the optional fonts have been downloaded:

a. Perform a configuration printout.

— OR —

b. Select **PRINTER CONTROL ▶ View File List**. The new file names will appear with the same part number file name you downloaded, but with an **.sf** extension.

NOTE: The optional font typefaces cannot be selected via the printer control panel. They can only be selected via a software command from the host.

18. Press the **PAUSE** key to place the printer online and return the printer to normal operation.

Downloading True Type Fonts

There are several ways to download TrueType fonts to your Thermaline printer.

Printronix Windows Driver

Load the Printronix Windows driver (provided with your printer on the Manuals and Utilities CD). Follow the instructions within the driver to download and access TrueType fonts.

Font Download Utility

The Manuals and Utilities CD that comes with your printer also contains a stand alone Font Download Utility which from a Windows-based system will allow you to download the fonts. A parallel I/O connection is assumed.

Create and Send Download File - Online (PGL only)

A TrueType font can be converted to a downloadable form by appending a header to the file as described in the *PGL Programmer's Reference Manual*, Font Load command. After conversion, the file can be copied to the appropriate I/O port of the printer while it is online, just like any other print file (for example: copy/b *filename.ext* lpt1).

Create and Send Download File - Download Mode

Create a download file as described above. Power up the printer as described in the "Downloading Optional Font Files To Flash Memory" section. Substitute the name of the file you just created for "*FILENAME.DWN*."

Using Downloaded True Type Fonts

If downloaded from the Printronix Windows driver, TrueType fonts can be accessed by any program using the driver as native fonts. Many WYSIWYG bar code labelling application programs also provide the utility to download and access TrueType fonts as printer resident (as opposed to bitmapped images). Otherwise, use the FONT command as described in the *PGL Programmer's Reference Manual* to access the downloaded fonts.

4

Interfaces

Overview

This chapter describes the host interfaces provided with the printer. The printer interface is the point where the data line from the host computer plugs into the printer. The interface processes all communications signals and data to and from the host computer. Plus, with the Auto Switching feature, you can configure the printer to accept several interfaces at the same time.

Auto Switching

This feature gives the printer the ability to handle multiple data streams sequentially. With Auto Switching, the printer can service hosts attached to the serial, parallel, coax and twinax ports as if they were the only interface connected.

For example, if the host computer sends one print job to the RS-232 serial port and a separate print job to the IEEE 1284 parallel port, the printer's Auto Switching is able to handle both jobs, in the order they were received, without the user having to reconfigure the selected interface between jobs.

This chapter describes the interfaces provided with the printer.

Standard Host Interfaces

- Centronics parallel
- IEEE 1284 parallel bidirectional
- High Speed Serial Port (RS-232/RS-422)

Optional Host Interfaces

- Coax / Twinax
- Ethernet 10/100Base-T

In addition to descriptions for the multi-line interfaces, this chapter also provides instructions for configuration of terminating resistors for the parallel interfaces.

Centronics Parallel Interface

Table 9. Centronics Interface Connector Pin Assignments

Input Signals		Output Signals		Miscellaneous	
Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin
DATA LINE 1	2	ACKNOWLEDGE	10	CHASSIS GROUND	17
Return	20	Return	28		
DATA LINE 2	3	ONLINE	13	GROUND	30
Return	21	Return	28		
DATA LINE 3	4	FAULT	32	Spares	14
Return	22	Return	29		
DATA LINE 4	5	PAPER EMPTY	12	No Connection	34,35,
Return	23	Return	28		36
DATA LINE 5	6	BUSY	11	+5 Volts	18
Return	24	Return	29		
DATA LINE 6	7				
Return	25				
DATA LINE 7	8				
Return	26				
DATA LINE 8	9				
Return	27				
DATA STROBE	1				
Return	19				
PAPER INSTRUCTION	15				
Return	29				
PRIME	31				
Return	30				

NOTE: The length of the data cable from the host computer to the printer must not exceed 15 feet (5 meters).

Centronics Parallel Interface Signals

Table 10. Centronix Parallel Interface Signals

Signals	Purpose
Data Lines 1 through 8	Provide eight standard or inverted levels from the host that specify character data, plot data, or a control code. Data Line 8 allows access to the extended ASCII character set. You may enable or disable this line via the Data Bit 8 parameter on the Centronics Parallel submenu.
Data Strobe	Carries a low true, 100 ns minimum pulse from the host that clocks data into the printer.
Acknowledge	A low true pulse from the printer indicating the character or function code has been received and the printer is ready for the next data transfer.
Online	A high true level from the printer to indicate the printer is ready for data transfer and the PAUSE key on the control panel has been activated. When the printer is in online mode, it may accept data from the host.
Paper Empty (PE)	A high true level from the printer to indicate the printer is in a paper empty or paper jam fault.
Busy	A high true level from the printer to indicate the printer cannot receive data.
Prime	A high true level from the host to indicate the printer should perform a warm start (printer is reset to the power-up configuration values).
Paper Instruction (PI)	Carries a VFU signal from the host with the same timing and polarity as the data line.
Fault	A low true level from the printer indicates a printer fault.

IEEE 1284 Parallel Interface

The IEEE 1284 supports three operating modes, which are determined by negotiation between the printer and the host.

Compatibility Mode

This mode provides compatibility with Centronics-like host I/O (see Table 9). Data is transferred from the host to the printer in 8-bit bytes over the data lines.

Compatibility Mode can be combined with Nibble and Byte Modes to provide bidirectional communication.

Nibble Mode

Eight bits equals one byte. When a byte of data is sent to the printer, the eight bits are sent over eight data lines.

Some devices cannot send data over their eight data lines. To bypass this, the IEEE 1284 permits data to be sent as half a byte over four status lines. (Half a byte equals one nibble.) Two sequential four-bit nibbles are sent over the lines.

Data is transferred from printer to host in four-bit nibbles over the status lines, and the host controls the transmission.

Byte Mode

The printer and host send data to each other along eight data lines (one bit per line).

If bidirectional communication is supported by the printer and the host, the host will take control of the data transfer.

Signals

Table 11 lists each of the signals associated with the corresponding pins on the IEEE 1284 interface. Descriptions of the signals follow.

Table 11. IEEE 1284 Signals

Pin	Source of Data	Type of Mode		
		Compatible	Nibble	Byte
1	Host	nStrobe	HostClk	Host/Clk
2	Host/Printer	Data 1 (LSB)		
3	Host/Printer	Data 2		
4	Host/Printer	Data 3		
5	Host/Printer	Data 4		
6	Host/Printer	Data 5		
7	Host/Printer	Data 6		
8	Host/Printer	Data 7		
9	Host/Printer	Data 8 (MSB)		
10	Printer	nAck	PtrClk	PtrClk
11	Printer	Busy	PtrBusy	PtrBusy

Table 11. IEEE 1284 Signals (continued)

Pin	Source of Data	Type of Mode		
		Compatible	Nibble	Byte
12	Printer	PError	AckDataReq	AckDataReq
13	Printer	Select	Xflag	Xflag
14	Host	nAutoFd	Host Busy	HostAck
15		Not Defined		
16		Logic Grid		
17		Chassis Grid		
18	Printer	Peripheral Logic High		
19		Signal Ground (nStrobe)		
20		Signal Ground (Data 1)		
21		Signal Ground (Data 2)		
22		Signal Ground (Data 3)		
23		Signal Ground (Data 4)		
24		Signal Ground (Data 5)		
25		Signal Ground (Data 6)		
26		Signal Ground (Data 7)		
27		Signal Ground (Data 8)		
28		Signal Ground (PError, Select, nAck)		
29		Signal Ground (Busy, nFault)		
30		Signal Ground (nAutoFd, nSelectIn, nInit)		
31	Host	nInit		
32	Printer	NFault	nDataAvail	aDataAvail
33		Not Defined		
34		Not Defined		
35		Not Defined		
36	Host	nSelectIn	1284 Active	1284 Active

NOTE: The length of the data cable from the host computer to the printer should not exceed 32 feet (10 meters).

Host Clock / nWrite. Driven by host. Data transferred from host to printer. When printer sends data, two types are available. If Nibble Mode, signal is set high. If Byte Mode, signal is set low.

Data 1 through Data 8. These pins are host-driven in Compatibility Mode and bidirectional in Byte Mode. They are not used in Nibble Mode. Data 1 is the least significant bit; Data 8 is the most significant bit.

Printer Clock / Peripheral Clock / Interrupt. Driven by the printer. A signal from the printer indicating the character or function code has been received and the printer is ready for the next data transfer.

Printer Busy / Peripheral Acknowledge / nWait. Driven by the printer. Indicates the printer cannot receive data. (Data bits 4 and 8 in Nibble Mode.)

Acknowledge Data Request / nAcknowledge Reverse. Driven by the printer. Indicates the printer is in a fault condition. (Data bits 3 and 7 in Nibble Mode.)

Xflag. Driven by the printer. A high true level indicating the printer is ready for data transfer and the printer is on-line. (Data bits 2 and 6 in Nibble Mode.)

Host Busy / Host Acknowledge / NDStrobe. Driven by the host. Activates auto-line feed mode.

Peripheral Logic High. Driven by the printer. When the line is high, the printer indicates all of its signals are in a valid state. When the line is low, the printer indicates its power is off or its signals are in an invalid state.

nReverse Request. Driven by the host. Resets the interface and forces a return to Compatibility Mode idle phase.

nData Available / nPeripheral Request. Driven by the printer. Indicates the printer has encountered an error. (Data bits 1 and 5 in Nibble Mode.)

1284 Active / nAStrobe. Driven by the host. A peripheral device is selected.

Host Logic High—Driven by the host. When set to high, the host indicates all of its signals are in a valid state. When set to low, the host indicates its power is off or its signals are in an invalid state.

nInit —Resets init interface from the host.

Terminating Resistor Configurations

The factory equips the printer with terminating resistors that are used for parallel interface configurations suitable for most applications. These 470 ohm pull-up and 1K ohm pull-down terminating resistors are located at RP2 and RP1 on the Controller PCBA.

If the values of these terminating resistors are not compatible with the particular interface driver requirements of your host computer, you must call your printer service representative to have this situation addressed.

RS-232 And RS-422 Serial Interfaces

NOTE: The RS-232 and RS-422 serial interface circuit characteristics are compatible with the Electronic Industry Association Specifications EIA®-232-E and EIA-422-B.

The RS-232 and RS-422 serial interfaces enable the printer to operate with bit serial devices that are compatible with an RS-232 controller. The input serial data transfer rate (in baud) is selectable from the printer's control panel. Baud rates of 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, and 115200 baud rates are available.

NOTE: If you select a baud rate that is greater than 19200, you may need to use RS-422 to prevent data loss. You may also need to increase the Buffer Size in K parameter from the default (1 Kbyte), to improve performance.

The length of the data cable from the host computer to the printer must not exceed 50 feet (15 meters) for RS-232 or 4000 feet (1220 meters) for RS-422. (A copper conductor, twisted-pair telephone cable with a shunt capacitance of 16 pF/foot [52.5 pF/meter] terminated in a 100 ohm resistive load must be used for the RS-422.

RS-232

Table 12. RS-232 Serial Interface Connector Pin Assignments

Input Signals		Output Signals		Miscellaneous	
Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin
Receive Data (RD)	3	Transmit Data (TD)	2	Chassis Ground	1
Clear To Send (CTS)	5	Request To Send (RTS)	4	Signal Ground	7
Data Set Ready (DSR)	6	Data Terminal Ready (DTR)	20		
Data Carrier Detect (DCD)	8				

Received Data (RD). Serial data stream to the printer.

Transmitted Data (TD). Serial data stream from the printer for transmitting status and control information to the host. Subject to protocol selection.

Request To Send (RTS). Control signal from the printer. Subject to configuration.

Clear To Send (CTS). Status signal to the printer indicating the host is ready to receive data/status signals from the printer.

Data Set Ready (DSR). Status signal to the printer indicating the host is in a ready condition.

Data Carrier Detect (DCD). Status signal to the printer. The ON condition is required for the printer to receive data.

Data Terminal Ready (DTR). Control signal from the printer. Subject to configuration.

RS-422

Table 13. RS-422 Serial Interface Connector Pin Assignments

Input Signals		Output Signals		Miscellaneous	
Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin	Signal	Pin
- Receive Data (-RD)	15	- Transmit Data (-TD)	19	Chassis Ground	1
+ Receive Data (+RD)	17	+ Transmit Data (+TD)	25	Signal Ground	7

+RD, -RD—Serial data stream differentially received by printer.

+TD, -TD—Differentially driven serial data stream for transmitting status and control information to the host. Subject to protocol selection.

NOTE: \pm **RD** and \pm **TD** form signal and return paths of a differential line signal.

5

Diagnostics And Troubleshooting

Printer Self-Test

A sequence of automatic tests is performed during printer power-up. If any faults are detected at that time, a fault will display (see page 256).

Printer operation should also be verified before setting the printer for online operation. This is done by running the printer internal self-test diagnostic program, which will produce a selection of printed test labels. For more details, see page 202.

The Test Print program can be enabled from the printer through the TEST PRINT key or from the DIAGNOSTICS menu and provides the capability for printing a variety of test pattern labels.

NOTE: Before attempting to print test labels, the printer must be properly set up for the type of media installed. (See the MEDIA CONTROL menu selections on “Main Menu” on page 79).

Printing Test Labels

The printer has a built-in function that prints a selected number of test labels or test patterns. The patterns are useful for isolating printer faults and checking print quality. For an explanation of the different test patterns and how they are used, see “Printer Tests” on page 201.

Troubleshooting Common Situations

Occasionally, situations occur that require some troubleshooting skill. Possible problem situations and potential solutions are listed in this section. While not every conceivable situation is addressed here, you may find some of these tips helpful. Contact a qualified service technician for problems that persist or are not covered in this section.

Improving Processing Time

Before looking at solutions for decreasing processing time and increasing throughput, it may help to understand what happens during processing. When the printer receives a format command, it enters the label formatting mode. Label formatting requires time to process the label data into the printer buffers.

The time required varies, depending on the complexity of the label format and on the size of the area being printed. Once the data has been mapped into memory, the printer will start printing as many labels as requested by the quantity command. In most cases, there is no delay between labels; however, when using Automatic Label Peel-Off or Tear-Off media handling, the printer stops between each label and waits for the label to be removed.

Data Exchange

Many things can cause data loss or communications problems. This section suggests some ways to isolate these problems and determine their cause.

Handshaking

Handshaking is the exchange of signals between two computers (or a computer and a peripheral input or output device) to indicate the status of the data being transferred. In the serial mode, the printer uses both hardware and software handshaking and transmits both forms simultaneously when the input buffer is full.

The printer can be used with either serial or parallel host interfaces. Parallel interfaces are usually straightforward, with no special settings required. Serial interfaces, however, have a variety of possible communication parameter settings. The two methods of handshaking that can be used, hardware and software, are explained below.

- **Hardware Handshaking**

This electrical signal is controlled by the logic state on pin 20 of the serial interface connector J2 (at the back of the printer). The signal will go high when the printer is ready to receive data. The signal will go low when the printer is in the busy state, which indicates that the printer input buffer is full and can no longer receive data.

- **Software Handshaking**

XON and XOFF are software signals that control serial data flow between the printer and the host system. When the printer input buffer is full, the printer transmits an XOFF (CTRL S) character that signals the host to stop sending data. When memory space becomes available in the input buffer, the printer sends an XON (CTRL Q) character, which tells the host that the printer is ready to receive more data.

If the printer appears to have communication problems, the self-test configuration test labels (see page 201) and character hex dump modes (see page 202) should be checked. The tests can help identify printer configuration errors that can cause problems.

Both of these test procedures are covered in this chapter. Configuration items to check include the following:

- Check that the data string being sent to the printer contains the correct information.
- Verify that the correct host interface port is being used and that the communication parameters match those of the host (i.e., baud rate, parity, etc.).
- Verify that the correct interface cable is installed between the host and the printer.

Interfacing

The printer will not function properly with an incorrectly wired cable or the wrong interface cable installed. If the cable is suspect, contact Printronix or your authorized service representative.

When the printer is first powered up, it will reset itself to the communication default parameters. The parameters are listed in the following table:

PARAMETER	DEFAULT VALUE
Baud	9600
Data Bits	8
Parity	NONE
Stop Bits	1

The printer interface configuration settings may be entered from the control panel. See Chapter 3, "Configuring The Printer" for complete instructions.

Controlling Print Quality

Three factors have the greatest effect on print quality:

- The amount of heat applied by the printhead (print intensity)
- The speed at which media is moving under the printhead (print speed)
- The amount of printhead pressure.

For example, low-cost direct thermal media often have very high reaction temperatures, which means that it takes a great deal of heat to make a clear image. Resin ribbons and film media may require higher print intensity for a quality image.

The printer provides two ways to increase the heat:

- Running the printer slower by changing the print speed via the host or the MEDIA CONTROL menu.
- Setting the print intensity to a higher value with the Print Intensity function, accessed via the host or through the MEDIA CONTROL menu. This causes more heat to be transferred into the media, thereby generating a darker image.

Proper printhead pressure adjustment will affect print quality. To adjust pressure, rotate the printhead pressure adjustment dial (see Figure 8). For more information, refer to “Printhead Pressure Adjustment” on page 59.

Also, the printhead should be cleaned frequently to ensure that foreign material does not accumulate on the printhead and interfere with heat transfer. If smears, voids or white lines appear in the printed form, the printhead should be cleaned with a printhead cleaning pen (see Figure 8).

The cleaning should be done as a matter of routine whenever you install a new ribbon (thermal transfer mode) or when you install new media (direct thermal mode).

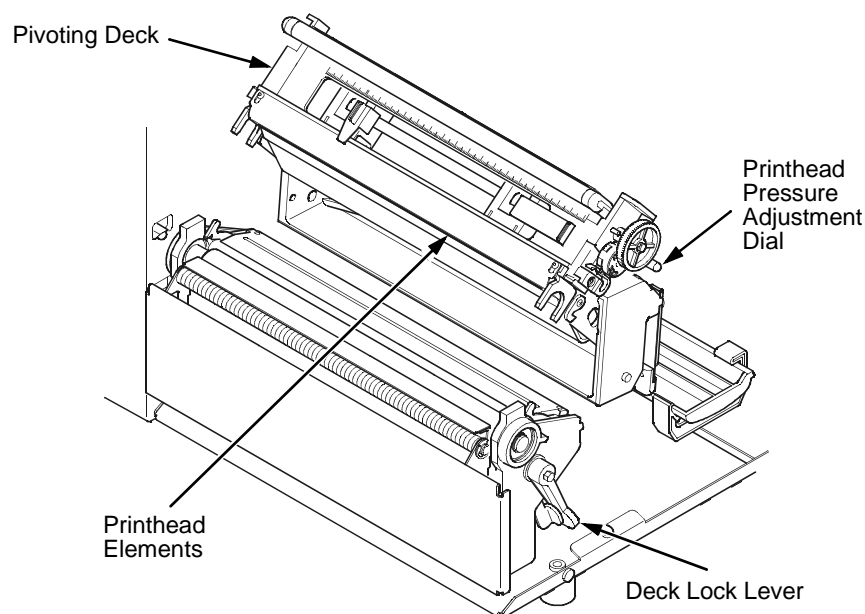


Figure 8. Cleaning the Printhead

Determining Printhead Wear

When a printhead is worn, the most common sign of wear are fixed vertical streaks that are always the same size and in the same place on the printout. To determine if the cause of these vertical streaks is a worn printhead, follow these methods.

1. Clean the printhead thoroughly with the printhead cleaning pen. Test again for vertical streaks.
2. Remove the printhead (see page 245) and examine it for contamination or damage such as scratches, dents, or other marks on the light brown area containing the heating elements. Clean and install it, then test again for vertical streaks.
3. Load an alternate roll of media. Test again for vertical streaks.
4. Load an alternate roll of ribbon. Test again for vertical streaks.

If after performing all these tests you still see fixed vertical streaks, you must replace the printhead.

Replacing The Printhead

Prepare The Printer

1. Set the printer power switch to O (off).
2. Unplug the printer power cord from the printer or the AC power source.
3. Remove the ribbon and print media.

Replace The Printhead

CAUTION Oils from your hands can damage the light brown area (heating elements) of the printhead. Do not touch the light brown area when you handle the printhead.

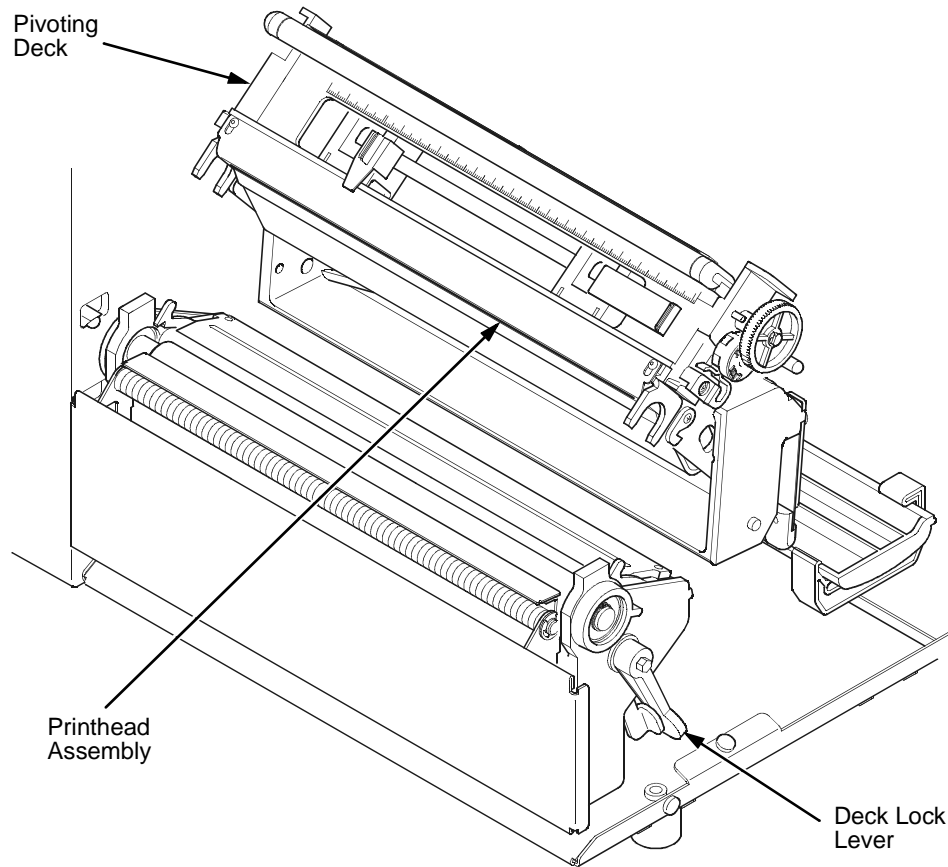
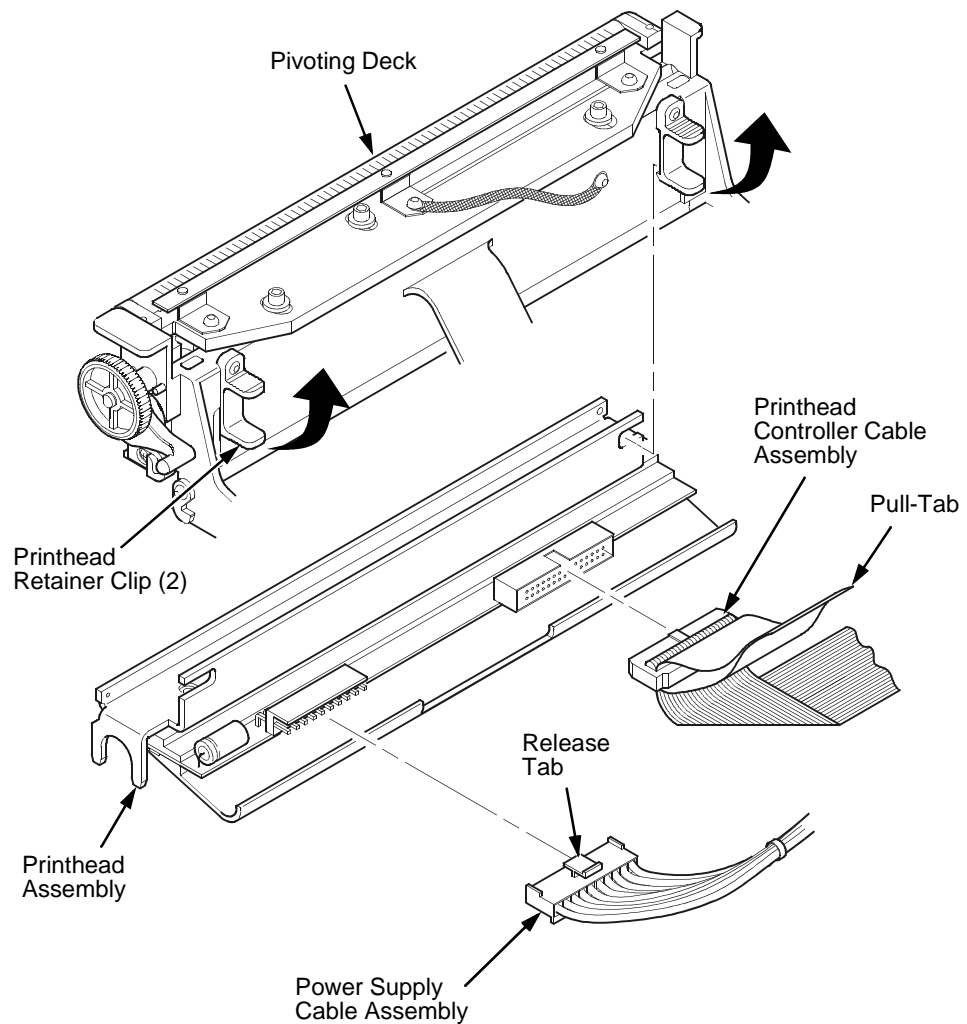


Figure 9. Opening the Pivoting Deck

1. Open the pivoting deck by rotating the deck lock lever fully clockwise. The pivoting deck will swing upward, exposing the bottom of the printhead assembly.

CAUTION To prevent electrostatic damage to electronic components, ground yourself by touching an unpainted part of the printer frame before handling and installing the printhead.

2. Touch an unpainted part of the printer frame before touching the printhead.



3. Behind the pivoting deck, gently pull the lower arms of the retainer clips upward to release printhead. You only need to push the clips a small amount to release the printhead.
4. Hold the printhead by the black powder coated aluminum cover as it drops down.
5. Push the release tab down and pull the power supply cable out of the printhead assembly.
6. Use the pull-tab to disconnect the printhead/controller cable from the printhead assembly.
7. Unwrap the new printhead.
8. Position the new printhead below the pivoting deck and install the power supply and printhead/controller cable assemblies to the printhead assembly.
9. Slide the printhead upward into the pivoting deck until the retainer clips catch it and it snaps into place. You can pull the printhead retainer clips up slightly to help engage the printhead.

Restore The Printer To Operation

1. Inspect the light brown area of the printhead for smudges or fingerprints. If necessary, gently clean the light brown area with a soft, lint-free cloth or a cotton swab moistened with isopropyl alcohol or a Cleaning Pen.
2. Install the ribbon and print media.
3. Close the pivoting deck and rotate the deck lock lever fully counterclockwise. (See Figure 9.)
4. Close the media cover.
5. Plug the AC power cord into the printer and the power source.
6. Set the printer power switch to | (on).
7. Test printer operation and check print quality by selecting the **Diagnostics** → **Printer Tests** menu and printing one of the test patterns. (Refer to page 201.)

Solving Other Printer Problems

Table 14. Printer Problems and Solutions

Symptom	Solution/Explanation
Communications Failures.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the interface cable. 2. Check the configuration to ensure the correct interface is enabled. 3. Verify the printer is receiving data by viewing the Job In Process indicator on the control panel.
CONTROL PANEL	
LCD message display is illuminated and the printer appears to be working, but nothing is printing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Verify that the labels are the correct type (direct or thermal transfer). 2. Check that the media is loaded with the direct thermal side facing up. 3. Check that the transfer ribbon is correctly routed. Route transfer ribbon with ink side out. 4. Check that the printhead assembly is properly closed by pressing down on both sides of the pivoting deck. Make sure the latches on each side of the pivoting deck are locked. 5. Verify that the ribbon and media are compatible; incompatibility can cause extremely light printing. Match the ribbon to the type of media being used. 6. Check that the Print Intensity is correct. Set the Print Intensity in the MEDIA CONTROL menu or via the host software. 7. Check that the Label Width parameter value does not exceed the width of the media installed. Set the Label Width in the MEDIA CONTROL menu. 8. Run the TEST PRINT Checkerboard test pattern. 9. Remove the printhead completely and re-install it ensuring the cables are correctly seated.
ONLINE status indicator is flashing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the LCD for a specific fault message. Press the PAUSE key, and if a fault message displays, refer to the LCD Message Troubleshooting table on page 257. 2. Check for an Out-of-Media condition or missing labels in the middle of a roll. Load the correct media. 3. Check that the ribbon and label stock are correctly routed. Load ribbon and label stock correctly.

Table 14. Printer Problems and Solutions (continued)

Symptom	Solution/Explanation
Power Failures	
Printer fails to turn on, the display is not backlit, and the fan is not running.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check that the printer AC power cord is correctly attached to the printer and to the AC power outlet. 2. Have a qualified electrician test the AC wall outlet for the correct power range. Locate the printer in an area that has the correct power range. 3. Check the AC power cord. Replace a damaged AC power cord or one that you suspect may be bad. 4. Call your authorized service representative.
PRINT QUALITY	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Label(s) did not get printed within a multi label print job. • A portion of the printed image was clipped off and the beginning of the next label was printed on the same physical label. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the serial interface is being used, verify that the correct data protocol is selected to match the host interface protocol. 2. If Clip Page = Enable in the MEDIA CONTROL menu, the printer may have falsely detected a gap, hole, or black mark and then clipped (discarded) the remaining printable data for the label. To fix this: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Perform Auto Calibrate. See “Running Auto Calibrate” on page 63. b. Decrease Gap Threshold value by 2 or 3 increments. See “Gap/Mark Thresh” on page 110. c. Set Clip Page to Disable. Set Label Length to correct physical length value. See “Clip Page” on page 106.
Media moves, but no image prints in ONLINE mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure the J402 power supply cable has a good connection to the right side of the printhead. 2. Place the printer offline and print the Checkerboard diagnostic test pattern (see page 201). If the pattern prints, there is a communication problem between the host computer and the printer.
Media moves, but no image prints in Direct Thermal mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Media is not the type for direct thermal printing. Install direct thermal media. 2. Direct thermal media is installed wrong side up. Reinstall the media with the correct side facing the printhead.

Table 14. Printer Problems and Solutions (continued)

Symptom	Solution/Explanation
Media and ribbon move, but no image prints in Thermal Transfer mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Print the Checkerboard diagnostic test pattern and check that the image appears on the used portion of ribbon. If the image is on the ribbon, the ribbon may be installed with the transfer side against the printhead, instead of against the media. 2. The ribbon may be designed for another model printer. 3. The ribbon may not be compatible with the media.
When narrow media is installed, the media moves but no image prints.	Verify the Label Width value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu agrees with the width of the installed media. Too large a value will start the image too far to the right and off the media.
Printing is faded or of poor quality.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the printhead. 2. Check that both latches on the pivoting deck are closed and latched. Close the printhead by pressing down on both sides of the pivoting deck and rotating the deck lock lever fully counterclockwise. 3. Verify that the head pressure adjustment dial is properly set. Try increasing the pressure. 4. Verify that the Print Speed and Print Intensity values are correct. Adjust Print Speed and Print Intensity in the MEDIA CONTROL menu or via host software.
Print is light on the left or right side of the label.	Check if the pressure blocks are set for the width of the media being used. Set each block near the edge of the media.
Prints strange characters instead of the correct label format.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the printer serial interface is being used, check that the printer serial baud rate setting matches the baud rate of the host computer. Reset the printer via software, or turn the printer off and then on. 2. Check if the printer serial host interface is set for 8 data bits but the transmitting device is set for 7 data bits (or vice-versa). Check the current setting by viewing it on the LCD, and use the SERIAL PORT menu to adjust the settings, if necessary. 3. If the printer parallel interface is being used, make sure the parallel interface terminating resistors are correct for the host computer drivers.

Table 14. Printer Problems and Solutions (continued)

Symptom	Solution/Explanation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start of image is printed an erroneous distance from the top-of-form. The printer starts to print one label and then another, all within the same physical label. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the MEDIA CONTROL menu, set Clip Page to Disable. Make sure the Label Length value matches the actual physical length of the label installed. <p>These symptoms could be caused by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> severely curled labels near the end of a media roll the media sensor triggering off of a dark, preprinted image on the label multiple gaps within the physical label.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Loss of one or more serialized labels within a print job. Start of image is printed in the middle of the gap. The top part of the image is lost when printing with Head First orientation selected. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Set Gap Length to equal the physical gap length of the media installed. The range is 0.05 to 1.00 inches. <p>The likely cause of these symptoms is that Clip Page = Enable and a cross-perforation, radical fold or flaw in the liner has caused the media sensor to detect this as the leading edge (TOF) of the new label or end of label (EOF), or both.</p>

Table 14. Printer Problems and Solutions (continued)

Symptom	Solution/Explanation
Smears or voids in printed image.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the printhead. 2. Make sure the printhead temperature (Print Intensity) is not too high. Change the Print Intensity value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu. (See "Print Intensity" on page 96.) 3. Verify that the printhead pressure blocks are positioned correctly to match the media width installed. (See "Printhead Pressure Block Adjustments" on page 60.) 4. Make sure the printhead pressure dial is set properly for the media thickness installed. 5. Skin oils can adhere to the surface of label stock, causing fingerprints which inhibit thermal transfer. Wipe label stock with a cloth, or remove a few feet of labels to expose a clean area. Handle labels by the edges. 6. Check that the media has not been mishandled before or during installation in the printer. Soiled media or media with fingerprints will prevent proper ribbon transfer. 7. Check that media has not been installed inside out. Surfaces on both sides may look identical but can produce big differences in print quality. 8. Make sure the correct ribbon and media combination are being used. Use the correct ribbon type. 9. Check the ribbon for creases or folds across its surface. Smooth out the ribbon to remove any creases. 10. Reduce the Print Speed value through the MEDIA CONTROL menu or via host software. 11. If using ribbon (Transfer Print mode), do not use direct thermal media.

Table 14. Printer Problems and Solutions (continued)

Symptom	Solution/Explanation
PRINTER OPERATION	
Advances several labels when FEED key is pressed.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check that labels are loaded correctly. (See “Loading Media And Ribbon” on page 34.) 2. Check that the Page Length (selected under the MEDIA CONTROL menu or sent by the host computer) agrees with the length of the media installed. Although gaps, holes, notches, or black marks are used to establish the Top-of-Form position, a larger page length will override the gap and skip a page or more if Clip Page (in the MEDIA CONTROL menu) is set to Disable. Set Page Length to match the media being used. 3. Check that the printer is optimized to detect the type of media installed. Perform Auto Calibrate for gapped and black mark media. (See “Running Auto Calibrate” on page 63.) 4. Adjust the media sensor horizontally to detect gaps, holes, notches, or narrow width black marks. (See “Positioning The Media Sensor” on page 61.) 5. If the problem persists, run the Media Profile printout to see if the label length indicators are being sensed. 6. Run Manual Calibrate. (See “Running Manual Calibrate” on page 66.)
Pivoting deck is difficult to close and lock when heavy tag stock media is installed.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set the printhead pressure adjustment dial to the MIN position. 2. Close the pivoting deck and lock the deck lock lever. 3. Position the printhead pressure adjustment dial to the desired head pressure setting.
Print is too small or too large.	Ensure the proper printhead is installed (203 or 300 dpi).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Print quality is good, but the printer skips every other label. • An occasional blank label occurs within a print job, but no labels are lost. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure that the label is not formatted too close to the top edge of the form. Leave white space equal to eight dot rows at the top of the label. 300 dpi = .0264 inches. 203 dpi = .04 inches. 2. Check that Clip Page = Enable in the MEDIA CONTROL menu. Clip Page = Enable causes any printable data to be clipped off and lost once the next TOF position (transmissive gap, notch, hole, or reflective mark) is detected. Clip Page = Disable allows the printer to ignore a gap or mark. The printer looks for the gap or mark after the specified Label Length is first reached.

Table 14. Printer Problems and Solutions (continued)

Symptom	Solution/Explanation
RIBBON	
Printer advances media, but the ribbon does not advance.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure the ribbon is installed correctly. 2. A poor ribbon/media combination can cause insufficient friction between the media and ribbon. Verify that the correct ribbon and media are being used. 3. The printhead pressure may not be set high enough. Set the pressure higher. 4. There may be adhesive on the printhead. Clean the printhead. 5. Verify that Print Mode in the MEDIA CONTROL menu is set for Transfer and not Direct Thermal.
Printer cuts (melts) through the transfer ribbon.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Verify that the printing heat setting (Print Intensity) is set to the proper level. In the MEDIA CONTROL menu, set Print Intensity to the correct level. 2. Verify that Print Mode in the MEDIA CONTROL menu is set for Transfer and not Direct Thermal.
Printing stops and the ONLINE status indicator flashes.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check that the media sensor is clean and undamaged. 2. Check that the gap between the bottom of a label and the top of the next label is at least 0.100 inch. Use only labels and tag stock approved for this printer. 3. Inspect for a jammed label. Remove the jammed label. 4. Check that the transfer ribbon and label stock are routed correctly.
Narrow width ribbon breaks frequently.	<p>The Ribbon Width value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu is set too large, which causes too great a ribbon take-up and ribbon supply spindle torque. Reduce the Ribbon Width value to decrease the torque on the ribbon spindles. The Ribbon Width value should be very close to the Label Width value.</p> <p>To reduce the torque further, set Ribbon Length (in the MEDIA CONTROL menu) from Save As Paper to Set In Menu. Then set a value less than the installed ribbon width.</p>
Wide width ribbon does not take up properly. The ribbon moves past the platen assembly.	<p>The Ribbon Width value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu is set too narrow for the ribbon installed. Set the Ribbon Width value to match the width of the ribbon installed. This will increase the torque on the ribbon take-up spindle.</p>

Printer Alarms

The printer has built in alarms that monitor printer status and media stock conditions. Alarm messages display indicating the present status of the printer and media stock levels. The alarms also indicate if the printer electronics detects an error condition.

Fault Messages

If a fault condition occurs in the printer, the status indicator on the control panel flashes on and off and the message display indicates the specific fault. Fault messages are summarized in Table 15.

Displayed faults fall into one of two categories:

- Operator correctable
- Field service required

Operator-Correctable Fault Messages

For the operator-correctable faults, follow the suggested corrective action under the solution section of the table. After correcting the displayed fault, press the PAUSE key to clear the error message and status indicator and resume printing. If the fault message reappears, power off the printer and wait 15 seconds before powering on the printer again. If the error condition persists, contact your authorized service representative.

Fault Messages Requiring Field Service Attention

If a fault is not correctable by the operator, the fault message is followed by an asterisk (*). This usually indicates that an authorized service representative is needed. You should try two steps to clear the fault before calling your authorized service representative:

1. Set the printer power switch to O (off), wait 15 seconds, then turn the printer on again. Run your print job again. If the message does not appear, it was a false indication and no further attention is required.
2. If the message reappears, press the PAUSE key. If the message goes away, it was a false indication and no further attention is required. If the message reappears, call your authorized service representative.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
BAD VFU CHANNEL	Yes	The user tried to use an undefined VFU channel.	Use defined channels.
BAR CODE IMPROPER Data Format	Yes	Data validation error: improper data format.	Fix application so it sends data in the correct bar code format.
BAR CODE QUIET Zone too small	Yes	Data validation error: Quiet Zone error.	1. Fix application. 2. Disable Quiet Zone Error reports.
BUFFER OVERFLOW	Yes	Host sent data after the printer buffer was full (serial interface).	1. Make a configuration printout. 2. Verify that the printer matches the host serial interface configuration settings for Data Protocol, Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits, Parity, Data Terminal Ready, and Request to Send. 3. Set printer serial interface parameters to match those of the host.
BUFFER OVERRUN	Yes	Receive overrun (serial interface).	1. Make a configuration printout. 2. Verify that the printer matches the host serial interface configuration settings for Data Protocol, Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits, Parity, Data Terminal Ready, and Request to Send. 3. Set the printer serial interface parameter to match those of the host.
CALIBRATION Warning	Yes	Data validation warning: needs calibration.	Calibrate the validator.
CALIBRATION FAIL See Manual	Yes	Calibration values derived from Manual Calibrate were not acceptable.	Run Manual Calibrate again.
CANNOT CALIBRATE Disable Peel-Off	Yes	Run Calibrate was attempted when Peel-Off was selected for Media Handling (under MEDIA CONTROL).	1. Select another Media Handling option via the MEDIA CONTROL menu, and install media without use of the rewind option. 2. Enable Cal in Peel Mode in CALIBRATE CTRL menu. 3. Retry Run Calibrate.
CLEARING PROGRAM FROM FLASH	Yes	Emulation software successfully loaded into printer RAM and the checksum matched. The old program is now being deleted from flash memory.	No action required.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
CONTRAST TOO LOW Check media	Yes	Data validation error: symbol contrast.	1. Adjust heat or change media. 2. Disable symbol contrast error reports.
CUTTER FAULT Jam or Cut Fail	Yes	1. Cutter assembly is not in the closed position. 2. Cutter option was not able to complete a full cut cycle due to a jam. 3. Cutter PCBA detected current overload and opened circuit breaker on cutter PCBA.	1. Place the cutter assembly in the closed (up) position. 2. Clear obstruction from the cutter assembly. 3. Insure media thickness is within specification. Wait a few minutes for the cutter circuit breaker to automatically reset. Press PAUSE to clear the fault message and resume printing.
DIAGNOSTICS PASSED	Yes	The printer passed its memory and hardware initialization tests.	No action required.
DO NOT POWER OFF	No	This is a standard warning message that displays while the printer is downloading software.	Do not power off the printer until downloading is complete.
E-NET INIT	Yes	Ethernet is initializing.	No action required.
E-NET READY	Yes	Ethernet has finished initializing.	No action required.
E-NET RESET	Yes	Ethernet interface is being reset.	No action required.
EC SOFTWARE FAIL See Manual	Yes/No	Engine control software failure.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: DC PROGRAM NOT VALID	Yes/No	The printer cannot find the data controller program or the validation checksum is corrupt.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: DRAM AT ADDRESS XXXXXXXX	Yes/No	The printer found a defective memory location.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: FLASH DID NOT PROGRAM	Yes/No	The printer encountered an error trying to program flash memory.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
ERROR: IPDS needs 300 DPI Head	Yes	The printer has detected a 203 DPI printhead installed with IPDS software downloaded. IPDS software only supports the 300 DPI printhead.	Power off the printer and replace the 203 DPI printhead with a 300 DPI printhead.
ERROR: NO DRAM DETECTED	Yes/No	The printer could not find any DRAM.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: PROGRAM NEEDS MORE DRAM	Yes/No	The printer requires more DRAM memory in order to run the downloaded program.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: PROGRAM NEEDS MORE FLASH	Yes/No	The printer requires more flash memory in order to run the downloaded program.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: PROGRAM NOT COMPATIBLE	Yes	The printer is not compatible with the downloaded program.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: PROGRAM NOT VALID	Yes	The printer does not see a program in flash memory.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: SECURITY PAL NOT DETECTED	Yes/No	The security PAL is not present or has failed.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: SHORT AT ADDRESS XXXX	Yes/No	Hardware failure in DRAM or Main PCBA controller circuitry.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: WRITING TO FLASH	Yes/No	Hardware or software fault in flash memory.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
ERROR: WRONG CHECKSUM	Yes/No	The printer received the complete program but the checksum did not match. The data may have been corrupted during download.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
ERROR OCCURRED FLUSHING QUEUES	Yes	An interim message displays while the printer discards host data it cannot use because a fault condition exists. While this message displays, the asterisk (*) rotates.	Wait. When the asterisk (*) stops rotating, a different fault message will appear; troubleshoot the final message.
FILE EXISTS Enable Overwrite	Yes	The printer operator tried to save a file using the name of an existing stored file.	Enter the PRINTER CONTROL menu and enable the Overwrite Files feature to overwrite the existing file.
FILE SYS FULL Add Flash	Yes/No	Insufficient flash memory available to store file.	Install a larger flash memory SIMM. For additional flash, contact your authorized service representative.
FILE SYS FULL Delete Files	Yes	Insufficient flash memory available to store file.	Enter the PRINTER CONTROL menu. Use Delete Files to delete unwanted files.
FILE SYS FULL Optimize & Reboot	Yes	Insufficient flash memory available to store file.	Enter the PRINTER CONTROL menu and use the Optimize & Reboot feature.
FILE SYS INVALID Optimize&Reboot	Yes/No	File system not detected or flash was corrupted.	Enter the PRINTER CONTROL menu and use the Optimize & Reboot feature.
FILE SYS WRITE Check Flash	Yes/No	Problem writing to flash memory.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
FRAMING ERROR	Yes	Serial framing error over a serial interface.	Match the serial interface settings of the printer to those of the host computer.
GAP NOT DETECTED See Manual	Yes	<p>The printer is set for Gap or Mark sensing, but a gap, notch, or black mark is not being detected.</p> <p>The media sensor is not positioned correctly.</p> <p>Gap/Mark Threshold is set too high or Paper Out Threshold is set too low.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check that the setting of the Gap/Mark Sensor in the CALIBRATE CTRL menu matches the installed media. 2. Check the position of the media sensor. (See "Positioning The Media Sensor" on page 61.) 3. Clean the sensor assembly and paper path. 4. Run Auto Calibrate to improve the sensor's ability to detect the media in use. 5. Run the Media Profile printout in the CALIBRATE CTRL menu. 6. Run Manual Calibrate. (See "Running Manual Calibrate" on page 66.) 7. Manually change the Gap/Mark Threshold and/or Paper Out Threshold values.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
GRF CHK ERROR PRESS PAUSE	Yes	In the CT emulation over a twinax interface, the printer received a non-printable character.	Press the PAUSE key twice.
Half Speed Mode	Yes	The printhead is approaching a hot state.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Allow the printer to continue printing. Full speed will resume automatically when a lower head temperature is achieved. 2. Let the printer cool down. Full speed will be restored when printing is resumed.
HEAD POWER FAIL	Yes/No	Printhead lost power.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace the printhead. 2. Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on again. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
IGP/PGL ERROR	Yes	Appears when the "Fault" option is selected from Error Report in the front panel.	Deselect "Fault" from Error Report on the front control panel.
INSUFFICIENT RAM Reboot/Add RAM	Yes/No	Not enough RAM memory available for a printer function.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on again. 2. To add more RAM memory to your printer, contact your authorized customer service representative.
LOADING PROGRAM FROM PORT XX%	Yes	The new emulation program is loading into printer RAM. XX% indicates how much of the program has loaded.	No action required.
LOADING PROGRAM INTO FLASH	Yes	A program is getting loaded into flash.	No action required.
MENU MODE VALIDATOR	Yes	This is the normal message that displays when you first press the MENU key to place the printer in Menu mode.	No action required.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
NON VOLATILE MEMORY FAILED	Yes/No	The printer assigns a certain amount of simulated NVRAM for storage of saved configurations. Large emulations reduce the amount of space available for saving configurations, which means that sometimes fewer than eight configurations can be saved. If this message appears when saving a configuration, it means the printer is out of memory. Previously saved configurations will still be available, but the one that was "saved" when the message appeared is not in memory. If this message appears at power-up, it means the flash memory is defective.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the message appears at power-up, call your authorized customer service representative. 2. If the message appears while saving a configuration, the printer is out of memory and will not save that or subsequent configurations. (Previously saved configurations are still okay.) 3. Limit the number of saved configurations to seven.
OPTION NOT INSTALLED	Yes	If the printer is powered on with the cutter enabled in the Media Handling menu, but the cutter itself is open (in the down position), the printer cannot detect the cutter. When using the cutter, the printer must be powered on with the cutter in the up position.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check that the cutter option is installed, connected, and in the up position before powering on the printer. 2. Install the cutter option or change to the correct Media Handling option in the MEDIA CONTROL menu. 3. If the error persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
PAPER OUT Load Paper	Yes	<p>The printer does not sense media:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Media was not installed or has run out. • A break in media has occurred. • Media was not routed or installed correctly. • The media sensor is not positioned correctly. • Media is installed correctly, but the sensor is not detecting it. • Gap/Mark Threshold value may be set too high and/or Paper Out Threshold may be set too low. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Install media. If a break occurred, reinstall the media. Press the PAUSE key to clear the fault message. Check the media installation procedures on page 34. 2. Verify the media sensor is properly positioned under the media. If the media is installed correctly, the media sensor may not be detecting it. Run Auto Calibrate to improve the ability of the sensor to detect the installed media. 3. Check if the Gap/Mark Threshold is too high or the Paper Out Threshold is too low. Lower the Gap/Mark Threshold or raise the Paper Out Threshold value. 4. If using media with no gaps or black marks, perform Auto Calibrate to establish a valid Paper Out Threshold.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
PAPER OUT TIMEOUT	Yes	In the CT emulation with a coax interface, a time-out message is sent to the host if paper is not loaded within 10 minutes after PAUSE was pressed to clear a paper out fault.	Load media and run a print test. If the message persists, contact your authorized service representative.
PARITY ERROR	Yes	Parity error (serial interface).	Check your serial host interface parameter settings. If necessary, change them so they match the settings of the attached host.
POOR SCANNING Check Head&Heat	Yes	Data validation failure: The ratio between bar code elements is too small.	Adjust heat/speed/pressure.
POOR SCANNING Check media	Yes	Data validation failure: The bar code is only good in small bands that are difficult to scan.	Check for ribbon wrinkle. Roll wrinkled area onto take-up spindle.
POOR SCANNING Inspect head	Yes/No	Data validation failure: Defects failure; blemishes with the bar code are detected.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check paper and ribbon to make sure they are clean, unwrinkled, and installed properly. 2. Clean printhead. 3. If message persists, replace the printhead.
POWER SAVER MODE	Yes	This is a status message. The printer is in low-energy idle state, the fan and higher voltages are off, and only +5Vdc logic circuits are active.	No action required.
PRINT HEAD COLD See Manual	Yes	Printer is in a cold environment or connector P401 has become dislodged.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reseat P401. 2. Change the printhead. 3. Place printer in a warmer location. 4. If problem persists, contact your authorized service representative.
PRINT HEAD HOT See Manual	Yes/No	The printhead has become overheated.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Allow the printhead to cool down for 5 minutes, then press PAUSE. Resume printing. 2. If possible, reduce print intensity. 3. If problem persists, contact your authorized service representative.
PRINT HEAD UP Close Print Head	Yes	Printhead is not closed and completely latched.	Close and latch the printhead pivoting deck.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
PRINTER HOT See Manual	Yes/No	The printer has detected higher than usual temperatures on the controller PCBA.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine that the fan is operating and that all air vents are unobstructed. 2. Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power the printer back on. 3. Move the printer to a cooler location. 4. If the problem persists after moving the printer to a cooler location, contact your authorized customer service representative.
PRINTER UNDER REMOTE CONTROL	Yes	Indicates that remote management software has control of the printer.	Press any key on the printer.
PWR SUPPLY HOT See Manual	Yes	Power supply is hot.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine that the fan is operating and that all air vents are unobstructed. 2. Move the printer to a cooler area. 3. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
RBN TAKEUP FULL Remove Used Rbn	Yes	The ribbon takeup spool is full.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Empty the takeup spool. 2. If the takeup spool is not full, try re-threading the ribbon. 3. Disable Rbn Takeup Full in the MEDIA CONTROL menu.
Remove Label	Yes	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This is the normal message when Peel-off or Tear-off has been selected for Media Handling. Label detected at front of the printer by the Label Taken Sensor. 2. The incorrect Media Handling method is selected. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the label from the front of the printer to allow the next label to print. 2. Change the Media Handling selection in the MEDIA CONTROL menu to the correct option. Select Tear-Off Strip or Continuous to prevent the printer from stopping for label removal after each label is printed.
RESETTING PLEASE WAIT	Yes	Printer finished loading the program into flash memory and is automatically resetting itself.	No action required.
RESTORING BOOT CODE	Yes	Normal download initialization message.	No action required.
RIBBON BROKEN Reload Ribbon	Yes	Ribbon is broken between the ribbon take up spindle and the printhead.	Reattach ribbon.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
RIBBON DETECTED In Direct Mode	Yes	Printer senses ribbon installed, but Print Mode is set for direct thermal printing (printing where no ribbon is required).	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the ribbon from the printer if direct thermal media is being used. 2. Change the Print Mode from Direct to Transfer if thermal transfer printing is being used.
RIBBON FAULT Timeout	Yes	In the CT emulation with a coax interface, the ribbon has not moved for 10 minutes after PAUSE was pressed to clear a ribbon fault.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Clean the printer. 2. Power off, wait 15 seconds, then power back on again. If the message persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
RIBBON LOAD BAD Reload Ribbon	Yes	Ribbon was incorrectly loaded on the take-up or supply spindle.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reload the ribbon correctly. For ribbon loading instructions, see page 45.
Ribbon Low	Yes	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The supply spool is getting low. 2. If there is a large amount of ribbon still on the supply spool, then the Ribbon Low message is being displayed falsely. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace ribbon, and if further adjustments are necessary, change the Ribbon Low value (in the MEDIA CONTROL menu) to a lower value. 2. Disable Ribbon Low in the MEDIA CONTROL menu.
RIBBON OUT Load Ribbon	Yes	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The ribbon supply spool is empty. 2. The ribbon has broken. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace ribbon. 2. Reinstall ribbon.
SECURITY CODE VIOLATION	Yes	The software being used is not correct for the printer.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Load the correct software. 2. Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on again. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
SIGNAL Clipping	Yes/No	Data validation error: The validator cannot read clearly because either the ambient light is too bright or there is a hardware failure inside the validator itself.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Dim ambient lighting. 2. Replace the validator.
SOFTWARE ERROR* Recycle Power	Yes/No	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Application software tried to perform an illegal printer function. 2. There are damaged logic circuits on the controller PCBA. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Recycle the printer power. If possible, print a job that has previously worked. 2. If the problem persists, contact your authorized service representative.

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
Speed Exceeds Validator Limit	Yes	The Print Speed or Slew Speed value is above 6 IPS as the power-up default with the validator option installed, or the user attempted to increase Print Speed or Slew Speed above 6 IPS.	Change the Print Speed or Slew Speed value in the MEDIA CONTROL menu to 6 IPS or less when using the validator option, and save the new value as the power-up default.
TESTING HARDWARE PLEASE WAIT	Yes	Normal power-up message. Printer is running its initialization routine.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. No action required. 2. If the printer does not complete initialization and continues displaying this message when the CT emulation is installed, the expansion CT board may not be connected to the controller PCBA.
Unscannable Code Check media	Yes	Data validation error: missing barcode.	Check the paper and ribbon for cleanliness, wrinkles, etc., or an obstructed validator beam. If there is no validator beam at all, or if the LED is not flashing as barcodes pass through the validator beam, recycle validator power. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
06 HOST REQUEST	Yes	Status message: in CT emulation, the host computer or printer controller requires attention.	Not a printer problem.
08 HOLD PRINT TIMEOUT	Yes	Status message: in CT emulation, the printer was offline more than 10 minutes and the "Intervention Required" parameter is set to "Send to Host."	Press PAUSE to put the printer online.
15 COMM CHECK	Yes/No	Communication Check: a message that appears in the CT emulation meaning the line is not active on a twinax interface.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check your network for proper operation. 2. Try a different cable from a known good device. 3. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
22 INVALID ADDR	Yes	Invalid Address: poll time-out on the twinax interface indicating the unit address is not recognized by printer.	Have the system administrator make sure the printer address is correct.
27 CU TIMED OUT	Yes	Controller Unit Timed Out: the printer was not enabled for one minute or more on a coax interface.	Check the cable connection and host system. (Refer to the line problem determination procedures, as recommended by the host system.)

Table 15. LCD Message Troubleshooting (continued)

Displayed Message	Can User Correct?	Explanation	Solution
28 CU NOT ENAB	Yes	Controller Unit Not Enabled. Poll time-out-error. The printer was not polled for one minute across a coax interface.	Check the cable connection and host system. (Refer to the line problem determination procedures, as recommended by the host system.)
33 HEAD OPEN TIMEOUT	Yes	Status message in the CT emulation: The printer was offline more than 10 minutes, and the "Intervention Required" parameter is set to "Send to Host."	Close and latch the printhead. Press PAUSE to put the printer online.
40V POWER FAIL	Yes	+40 VDC: an internal power failure.	Power off the printer for 15 seconds, then power back on. If the problem persists, contact your authorized customer service representative.
203 DPI Head Installed	Yes	Normal power-up message. The printer is running its initialization routine and indicating DPI resolution of the installed printhead.	No action required.
300 DPI Head Installed	Yes	Normal power-up message. The printer is running its initialization routine and indicating DPI resolution of the installed printhead.	No action required.

A

Specifications

Print Method

Table 16. Printing Specifications

	T5204	T5304	T5206	T5306	T5208	T5308
Print Resolution (dpi)	203	300	203	300	203	300
Min. Dot Size (sq. in)	.005 (.127 mm)	.0033 (.083 mm)	.005 (.127 mm)	.0033 (.083 mm)	.005 (.127 mm)	.0033 (.083 mm)
Bar Code Modulus (mils) Picket Fence Ladder	5 - 127 10 - 127	3.3 - 110 10 - 110	5 - 127 10 - 127	3.3 - 110 10 - 110	5 - 127 10 - 127	3.3 - 110 10 - 110
Max. Print Speed (ips)	10	8	10	8	8	6
Max. Print Width (in.)	4.1 (104.1 mm)	4.1 (104.1 mm)	6.6 (167.6 mm)	6.6 (167.6 mm)	8.5 (215.9 mm)	8.5 (215.9 mm)
Flash Memory (MB) Standard	4	4	4	4	4	4
Flash Memory (MB) Maximum	10	10	10	10	10	10
DRAM (MB) Standard	8	8	8	8	8	8
DRAM (MB) Maximum	16	16	16	16	16	16
Max. Print Length (in.) at max. width, std. DRAM ^(1,2)	47 (1194 mm)	21 (533 mm)	99 (2515 mm)	62 (1575 mm)	99 (2515 mm)	48 (1219 mm)
Max. Print Length (in.) at max. width, 16MB DRAM ⁽²⁾	99 (2515 mm)	99 (2515 mm)	99 (2515 mm)	99 (2515 mm)	99 (2515 mm)	99 (2515 mm)
NOTES: 1. These figures are approximate and depend upon the active emulation. 2. These values may not be supported at maximum throughput.						

Media

Table 17. Media - General Information

Type:	Roll-fed, die-cut continuous or fanfold labels, tags or tickets; most direct thermal or thermal transfer materials.
Supply Roll:	8 inch (203 mm) maximum diameter on 1.5 inch (37.5 mm) to 3 inch (76 mm) diameter cores.
Internal Rewinder:	Accepts up to a 5 inch diameter roll of label backing.
Label Material:	Thermal transfer plain-coated papers, vinyl, Mylar, metallized paper, non-woven fabric, fine woven fabric, thermal-visible light scannable paper, infrared scannable paper, thermal ticket/tag stock, thermally sensitive plastic stock.
Media Sensing:	Horizontally moveable sensor assembly. When set to Gap, the assembly detects die-cut labels on liner media and notches and holes in tag stock. When set to Mark, it senses a black mark on the underside of tag or label stock. When set to Disable, it senses no label indicators or ignores all existing label length indicators on the installed media.
Label Taken Sensor:	Detects when a printed label is at the printer exit throat. Used only for Tear-Off and Peel-Off Media Handling modes.
Automatic Label Peel-Off:	Peels and presents label to the operator, one at a time. Automatic Label Peel-Off is supported only when the internal rewinder is installed. (The internal rewinder is a factory-installed option.)

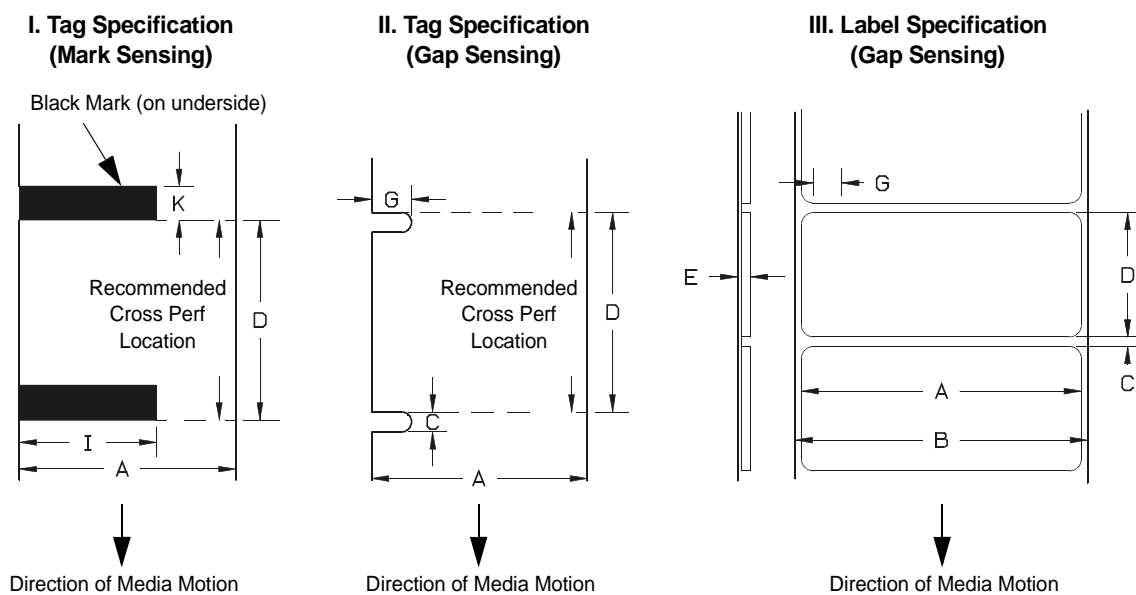


Figure 10. Media Dimensions

Table 18. Media Specifications

		T5X04	T5X06	T5X08
A	Label Width Range	0.75 -4.5 in. 19.1-114.3 mm	2.0-6.8 in. 50.8-172.7 mm	3.0-8.75 in. 76.2-222.3 mm
B	Backing Width Range	0.75-4.5 in. 19.1-114.3 mm	2.0-6.8 in. 19.1-114.3 mm	3.0-8.75 in. 19.1-114.3 mm
C	Min. Gap/Hole/Notch Height	0.10 in. 2.54 mm	0.10 in. 2.54 mm	0.10 in. 2.54 mm
K	Min. Refl. Mark Height	0.10 in. 2.54 mm	0.10 in. 2.54 mm	0.10 in. 2.54 mm
I	Min Refl. Mark Width	0.5 in. 12.7 mm	0.5 in. 12.7 mm	0.5 in. 12.7 mm
E	Media Thickness Range	.0025-.01 in. .0635-.254 mm	.0025-.01 in. .0635-.254 mm	.0025-.01 in. .0635-.254 mm
G	Width of Inter-label gap/hole	0.25-0.50 in. 6.35-12.7 mm	0.25-0.50 in. 6.35-12.7 mm	0.25-0.50 in. 6.35-12.7 mm
D	Media Length Range			
	Continuous/Batch Mode	0.25 in. (6.35mm) - 99 in. (2515mm)*		
	Tear-Off Strip Mode	0.25 in. (6.35mm) - 99 in. (2515mm)*		
	Tear-Off Mode	1 in. minimum (25.4 mm) - 99 in. (2515 mm)*		
	Peel-Off Mode	1 in. minimum (25.4 mm) - 99 in. (2515 mm)* ⁽¹⁾		
	Cut Mode	2 in. minimum (50.8 mm) - 99 in. (2515 mm)*		
	These figures are approximate and depend upon the active emulation and application.			
	* 99 in. requires DRAM upgrade.			
	⁽¹⁾ 1.5 inch with validator support.			

Ribbon

Table 19. Ribbon Specifications

	T5X04	T5X06	T5X08
Ribbon Width Range	0.75-4.5 in. 19 -114.3 mm	2.0-6.8 in. 50.8-172.7 mm	3.0-8.75 in. 76.2-222.25 mm
Max. Ribbon Length (m)	625	625	625

Indicators And Switches

Table 20. Indicators and Switches

Indicator Lights:	ONLINE, Job-In-Process
Switches:	POWER
Keys:	PAUSE, JOB SELECT/ - (Decrement), FEED/↑ (Up), TEST PRINT, ≡ (Menu), ✕ (Cancel)/↓ (Down), ↵ (Enter)
Message Display:	2-row 16-characters per row for error messages, print status, and recalling stored formats

Memory

Table 21. Memory Specifications

Flash Memory (standard)	4MB SIMM installed on Controller PCBA
DRAM (standard)	8MB

Host Interfaces

Table 22. Host Interface Characteristics

1. Serial RS-232 or RS-422 at 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200 baud. 2. Parallel (Centronics compatible) or IEEE 1284 bi-directional. The RS-232 and RS-422 host interfaces shall have the following characteristics:	
Character Set:	ANSI [®] ASCII character set
Word Length:	Selectable 7-bit or 8-bit data format
Handshaking:	XON/XOFF (in receive mode only) and CTS/DTR
Input Buffer:	Selectable from 1k through 16 kbytes. XOFF is transmitted and DTR goes low when buffer is equal to or less than 25% of full. XON is transmitted and DTR goes high when buffer is 25% above empty. Characters are transmitted with no parity from the printer

Power

Table 23. Power Source and Grounding

Power Source:	115 or 230 VAC 50/60Hz switching power supply.
Grounding:	Unit must be connected to a properly grounded receptacle.

Table 24. Power Consumption

	4" printers		6" printers		8" printers	
	203 dpi 10 ips	300 dpi 8 ips	203 dpi 10 ips	300 dpi 8 ips	203 dpi 8 ips	300 dpi 6 ips
Energy Star (Power Saver Mode)	24 Watts	24 Watts	24 Watts	24 Watts	24 Watts	24 Watts
Standby	50 Watts	50 Watts	50 Watts	50 Watts	50 Watts	50 Watts
25% Print Density	142 Watts	143 Watts	205 Watts	175 Watts	213 Watts	212 Watts
50% Print Density	234 Watts	235 Watts	360 Watts	300 Watts	375 Watts	373 Watts

Environmental

Table 25. Environmental Information

Operating Temperature:	41° F to 104° F (5° C to 40° C)
Storage Temperature:	-40° F to 150° F (-40° C to 60° C)
Operating Humidity: Storage Humidity:	20% to 85%, non-condensing 5% to 85% non-condensing
Ventilation:	Free air movement
Dust:	Non-conducting, non-corrosive

Physical

Table 26. Physical Dimensions

	T5X04	T5X06	T5X08
Outside Dimensions (in.)	13H x 11.7W x 20.5D	13H x 13.4W x 20.5D	13H x 15.4W x 20.5D
Max. Weight (lbs/kg)	39 lbs. 17.55 kg	45 lbs. 20.25 kg	48.5 lbs. 21.83 kg
Add 1.75" D with media guide installed Add 7.5" D and 6" H for validator option Add 1.4" D for media cutter option			

Acoustic Specifications

Table 27. T5000 Acoustic Noise Levels per ISO 9296

	T5X04	T5X06	T5X08
Printing @ 6 IPS	68 dBA	62 dBA	62 dBA
Standby:	37 dBA	37 dBA	37 dBA

B

Printer Options

Options are offered with the printer to enhance its capabilities and to provide a large degree of application flexibility. A description of the option complement is given below. For field-installable options, installation instructions are provided with each option.

Hardware Options

Memory Expansion

The printer internal DRAM and Flash memories can be expanded to 16MB and 10MB respectively using SIMM modules.

Media Cutter

The printer may be ordered with a cutter mechanism installed (for cutting tags and labels), or the option can be installed by an authorized service representative at a later date. Once installed, the printer can be configured to automatically cut media after each label is printed or via the software command to cut media after a specified number of labels is printed.

Media Cutter Tray

This option is used exclusively with the media cutter option to collect cut labels or tag stock. This option is field installable by the operator.

Online Data Validator (ODV™)

This option provides the capability for verifying printed barcode quality during the printing process.

The printer may be ordered with the Online Barcode Validator installed, or the option can be field installed by an authorized service representative.

Internal Rewinder

The internal rewinder is a factory-installed option.

Interface Options

Coax/Twinax Host Interface

The coax/twinax host interface option mounts inside the printer and functions as a protocol converter to allow the direct connection of the printer to an IBM host computer that uses either a coax or a twinax data interface. The printer may be ordered with the Coax/Twinax option installed, or it can be field installed by an authorized service representative.

Network Interface Card (NIC)

This option permits placing the printer on a LAN rather than attaching it directly to a host system. It is mounted inside the printer. The printer may be ordered with a NIC installed, or it can be field installed by an authorized service representative. The parallel port is no longer accessible when the NIC option is installed.

IPDS for Use with Twinax Host Interface

This option supports the Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS) language to allow direct connection of the printer to an IBM host computer that uses the Twinax data interface. The printer may be ordered with this option installed and the required hardware to support it or it can be field installed by an authorized service representative at a later date. The printer must have a Coax/Twinax interface, 300 DPI Printhead, and 16 MB DRAM installed to support this field installed option.

IPDS for Use with a NIC

This option supports the IPDS language to allow a LAN connection. The printer may be ordered with this option and the required hardware to support it or it can be field installed by an authorized service representative. The printer must have a NIC, 300 DPI Printhead, and 16 MB DRAM installed to support this field installed option.

IPDS for Use with a NIC and Twinax Host Interface

This option supports the IPDS language to allow a LAN connection as well as a direct connection of the printer to an IBM host computer that uses the Twinax data interface. The printer may be ordered with this option installed and the required hardware to support it or it can be field installed by an authorized service representative. The printer must have a NIC, Coax/Twinax interface, 300 DPI printhead, and 16 MB DRAM installed to support this field installed option.

Supplies And Accessories

The best printing solution is achieved when the printer, ribbon, and media are matched to the application requirements. The use of Genuine Printronix Thermal Media and Ribbons will ensure optimum image quality, consistent bar code performance, and extended life of the printhead.

Please refer to the Printronix Media Selection Guide for details concerning the application suitability for all Media and Ribbon products. To obtain a copy of this Guide, or for any other questions concerning Genuine Printronix Thermal Supplies, please call:

Americas:	(800) 733-1900	Fax: (714) 368-2354
Europe, Middle East, Africa:	(33) 1-46-25-1900	Fax: (33) 1-47-28-9993
Asia:	(65) 548-4116	Fax: (65) 546-1588

Or visit our website at www.primtronix.com.

Genuine Printronix Thermal Transfer Ribbons

The following is a list of Genuine Printronix Thermal Transfer ribbons:

Printronix Wide Spectrum Wax Ribbon 8300

Provides superior print quality for coated and uncoated paper and tag stocks.

Printronix Wax Resin Blend Ribbon 8500

Provides excellent high speed print quality with premium durability performance on a wide range of thermal transfer receptive papers and films.

Printronix Flood-Coat Specialty Wax Resin Blend Ribbon 8550

Designed for use on spot-coated and flood-coated labels. With this ribbon, the need for protective varnishes on flood-coated labels is eliminated, which can reduce the cost of labels.

Printronix Specialty Resin Ribbon 8600

A premium resin formula for excellent image and scuff resistance, while achieving premium print quality on a wide range of synthetic films and coated papers.

Printronix Care Label Specialty Resin Ribbon 8630

This ribbon is for applications requiring high heat resistance and wash resistance.

Printronix Harsh Environment Resin Ribbon 8700

Provides highest heat, chemical, and abrasion resistance for use with high-end synthetic facestocks. When used with the proper polyester media, meets UL/CSA regulatory requirements.

Printronix Gasoline Resistant Specialty Resin Ribbon 8725

Designed for high temperature and solvent resistance applications using synthetic facestocks media such as polypropylene, polyethylene, and polyester.

All ribbons are available in widths of: 2.36" (60mm), 3.15" (80mm), 4.33" (110mm), 5.12" (130mm), 6.00" (152.4mm), 6.70" (171mm), and 8.67" (220mm).

Genuine Printronix Media

Printronix provides a wide variety of sizes, colors, and shapes of labels and tags readily available to meet all of your labelling needs. The Printronix Expanded Die Library details hundreds of label sizes and configurations which are quickly obtainable through the Printronix custom order system without the typical added costs and delays associated with the creation and tooling of a special die to match your requirements.

Genuine Printronix ThermaLine Media		
ThermaLine Media Type	Description	Typical Applications
Media 110	Premium coated thermal transfer paper Permanent acrylic adhesive	Compliance shipping, general warehouse, address, AIAG, LOGMARS, product ID, hardware parts supply
Media 120R	Premium coated thermal transfer paper Removable adhesive	Temporary product ID, pricing, point of sale, shelf marking labels which can be cleanly removed
Media 180T	7.0 mil coated thermal transfer paper tagstock	Retail hangtag, warehouse bin and pouch inserts, inventory control, work in process, general purpose tag
Media 210	Economy direct thermal paper Permanent acrylic adhesive	Short life deli, grocery, shipping, work in process
Media 220	Premium direct thermal paper Permanent acrylic adhesive	Compliance shipping, general warehouse, address, AIAG, LOGMARS, product ID
Media 270	Infra-Red scannable direct paper Permanent acrylic adhesive	Infra-red scannability for overnight shipping and grocery environments
Media 280T	7 mil direct thermal paper tagstock	Economical ticket and tag stock for general retail and industrial use
Media 410	3.3 mil direct thermal film Permanent acrylic adhesive	Excellent moisture resistance and tear strength for applications such as baggage tags, etc.
Media 510	4.0 mil white thermal transfer polyolefin Permanent acrylic adhesive	Durable satin finish for chemical pails and drums and general outdoor and industrial use

Genuine Printronix ThermaLine Media		
ThermaLine Media Type	Description	Typical Applications
Media 520	Smudge proof white thermal transfer polyolefin Permanent acrylic adhesive	Outdoor exposures especially chemical drums, etc. provides a markable soundproof topcoat
Media 580T	8.5 mil smudge proof thermal transfer Poly tagstock	Outdoor nursery, lumberyard, and industrial environment hangtag and insert tag
Media 700s	2.0 mil polyester labelstock thermal transfer White, bright & matte chrome	UL/CSA compliant nameplate labels, harsh environment and laboratory labels

Besides the standard roll label configuration, Genuine Printronix ThermaLine labels are also available in fanfold configurations.

Type	Media (Stock)	Ribbon	Features	Typical Applications
Direct Thermal	Paper Label Tag Synthetic Label	Not Used	Low cost. Ease of use. Low environmental durability. Limited label life. Will fade and/or discolor when exposed to heat, sunlight, or chemicals.	Shipping. Inventory Tracking.
Thermal Transfer	Paper Label Tag	Printronix Wide Spectrum Wax	Lowest cost thermal transfer combination. Most commonly used. Low environmental durability. Low abrasion resistance. Longer life than direct thermal.	Shipping. Inventory Tracking. Product Labelling. Compliance Labeling.
Thermal Transfer	Paper Label Tag Synthetic Label Tyvek® and Valeron®	Printronix Wax Resin Blend	Mid-range wax resin performance and characteristics at economy wax prices. Darker, razor-sharp, smudge-proof images.	Same as economy applications with advantage of supporting Polypropylene, Polyethylene, Polyolefin, and Valeron media.
Thermal Transfer	Paper Label Tag Synthetic Label	Printronix Specialty Resin	Better environmental durability. Better abrasion resistance than wax. More expensive than wax. Good aesthetic appearance.	Retail applications where labels are handled. Excellent for most applications. Compliance Labelling.
Thermal Transfer	Synthetic Label	Printronix Harsh Environment Resin	High environmental durability. High physical durability. Excellent aesthetic appearance. Most expensive label/tag combination.	High temperature environments. Medical applications. Outdoor environments. Environments with chemicals. Compliance labelling.

Accessories

Field installable accessories available for your thermal printer are listed below. Contact your authorized supplier for more details.

- Media Cutter
- Media Cutter Tray (used with a Media Cutter option)
- Coax/Twinax Host Interface
- Network Interface Card
- Online Barcode Validator
- Memory Expansion, DRAM and Flash
- *Maintenance Manual*
- *LP+ Programmer's Reference Manual*
- *IGP/PGL Programmer's Reference Manual*
- *IGP/VGL Programmer's Reference Manual*
- *C/T Programmer's Reference Manual*
- *Network Interface Card User's Manual*
- *Remote Management Software User's Manual*

C

ASCII Control Codes

Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex
NUL	0	00		32	20	@	64	40	`	96	60
SOH	1	01	!	33	21	A	65	41	a	97	61
STX	2	02	+	34	22	B	66	42	b	98	62
EXT	3	03	#	35	23	C	67	43	c	99	63
EOT	4	04	\$	36	24	D	68	44	d	100	64
ENQ	5	05	%	37	25	E	69	45	e	101	65
ACK	6	06	&	38	26	F	70	46	f	102	66
BEL	7	07	+	39	27	G	71	47	g	103	67
BS	8	08	(	40	28	H	72	48	h	104	68
HT	9	09	)	41	29	I	73	49	i	105	69
LF	10	0A	*	42	2A	J	74	4A	j	106	6A
VT	11	0B	+	43	2B	K	75	4B	k	107	6B
FF	12	0C	,	44	2C	L	76	4C	l	108	6C
CR	13	0D	-	45	2D	M	77	4D	m	109	6D
SO	14	0E	.	46	2E	N	78	4E	n	110	6E
SI	15	0F	/	47	2F	O	79	4F	o	111	6F
DLE	16	10	0	48	30	P	80	50	p	112	70
DC1	17	11	1	49	31	Q	81	51	q	113	71
DC2	18	12	2	50	32	R	82	52	r	114	72
DC3	19	13	3	51	33	S	83	53	s	115	73
DC4	20	14	4	52	34	T	84	54	t	116	74
NAK	21	15	5	53	35	U	85	55	u	117	75
SYN	22	16	6	54	36	V	86	56	v	118	76
ETB	23	17	7	55	37	W	87	57	w	119	77
CAN	24	18	8	56	38	X	88	58	x	120	78
EM	25	19	9	57	39	Y	89	59	y	121	79
SUB	26	1A	:	58	3A	Z	90	5A	z	122	7A
ESC	27	1B	;	59	3B	[	91	5B	{	123	7B
FS	28	1C	<	60	3C	\	92	5C	|	124	7C
GS	29	1D	=	61	3D	]	93	5D	}	125	7D

Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex	Char	Dec	Hex
RS	30	1E	>	62	3E	^	94	5E	~	126	7E
US	31	1F	?	63	3F	_	95	5F		127	7F
Ç	128	80	á	160	A0		192	C0	+	224	E0
ü	129	81	í	161	A1		193	C1	_	225	E1
é	130	82	ó	162	A2		194	C2	+	226	E2
â	131	83	ú	163	A3		195	C3	+	227	E3
ä	132	84	ñ	164	A4		196	C4	_	228	E4
à	133	85	Ñ	165	A5		197	C5	+	229	E5
å	134	86	ª	166	A6	_	198	C6		230	E6
ç	135	87	_	167	A7	+	199	C7	•	231	E7
ê	136	88	¿	168	A8		200	C8	_	232	E8
ë	137	89	«	169	A9		201	C9	+	233	E9
è	138	8A		170	AA		202	CA	_	234	EA
ï	139	8B	1/2	171	AB		203	CB	+	235	EB
î	140	8C	1/4	172	AC		204	CC	_	236	EC
ì	141	8D	¡	173	AD		205	CD	_	237	ED
Ä	142	8E		174	AE		206	CE		238	EE
Å	143	8F		175	AF		207	CF		239	EF
É	144	90		176	B0	_	208	D0		240	F0
æ	145	91		177	B1	+	209	D1	_	241	F1
Æ	146	92	@	178	B2	+	210	D2		242	F2
ô	147	93	#	179	B3	+	211	D3	3/4	243	F3
ö	148	94		180	B4	+	212	D4		244	F4
ò	149	95	+	181	B5		213	D5		245	F5
û	150	96	+	182	B6	-	214	D6	_	246	F6
ù	151	97	+	183	B7	+	215	D7		247	F7
ÿ	152	98	_	184	B8	+	216	D8	°	248	F8
Ö	153	99	1	185	B9		217	D9	¿	249	F9
Ü	154	9A		186	BA		218	DA	l	250	FA
°	155	9B	»	187	BB		219	DB		251	FB
£	156	9C		188	BC		220	DC		252	FC
+	157	9D	¢	189	BD		221	DD		253	FD
x	158	9E	¥	190	BE	+	222	DE		254	FE
_	159	9F		191	BF		223	DF		255	FF

NOTE: For the hardware handshake XON/XOFF commands:

XON = Ctrl Q (DC1)

XOFF = Ctrl S (DC3)

D

Standard And Heavy-Duty Media Cutter Installation

Prepare The Printer

NOTE: Before you begin, please note that steps 1 through 3 below are applicable for *both* the standard and heavy-duty media cutters. When you get to step 4, you will be directed to separate instructions specific to the standard or heavy-duty cutter.

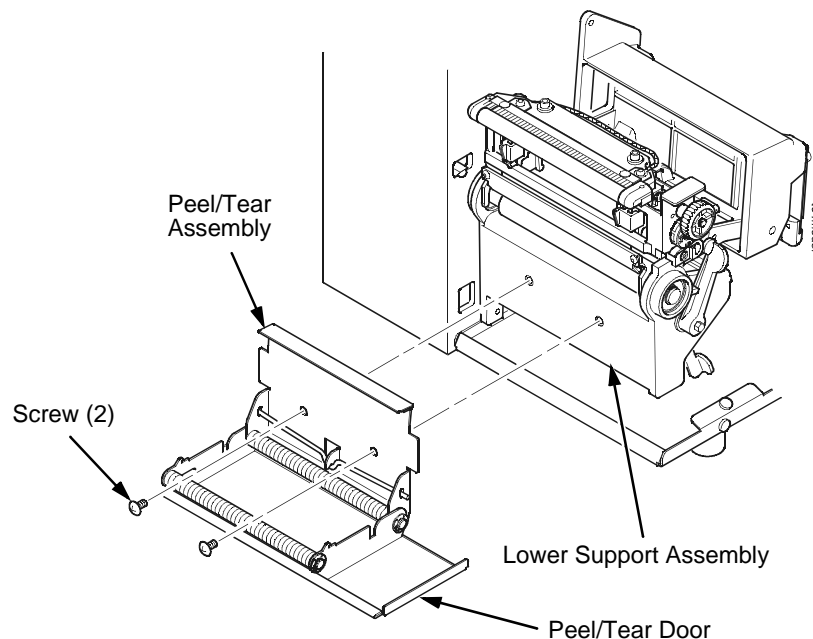


Figure 1. Peel/Tear Assembly

1. Set the printer power switch to O (OFF).
2. Open the peel/tear door by pulling it upward, then forward.
3. Using the appropriate metric hex key, remove the two screws attaching the peel/tear assembly to the lower support assembly.

NOTE: Keep the two screws you have removed; you will use them to attach the cutter assembly to the lower support assembly.

4. **To install a standard cutter**, go to "Installing The Standard Cutter" on page 284. **To install a heavy-duty cutter**, go to "Installing The Heavy-Duty Cutter" on page 286.

Installing The Standard Cutter

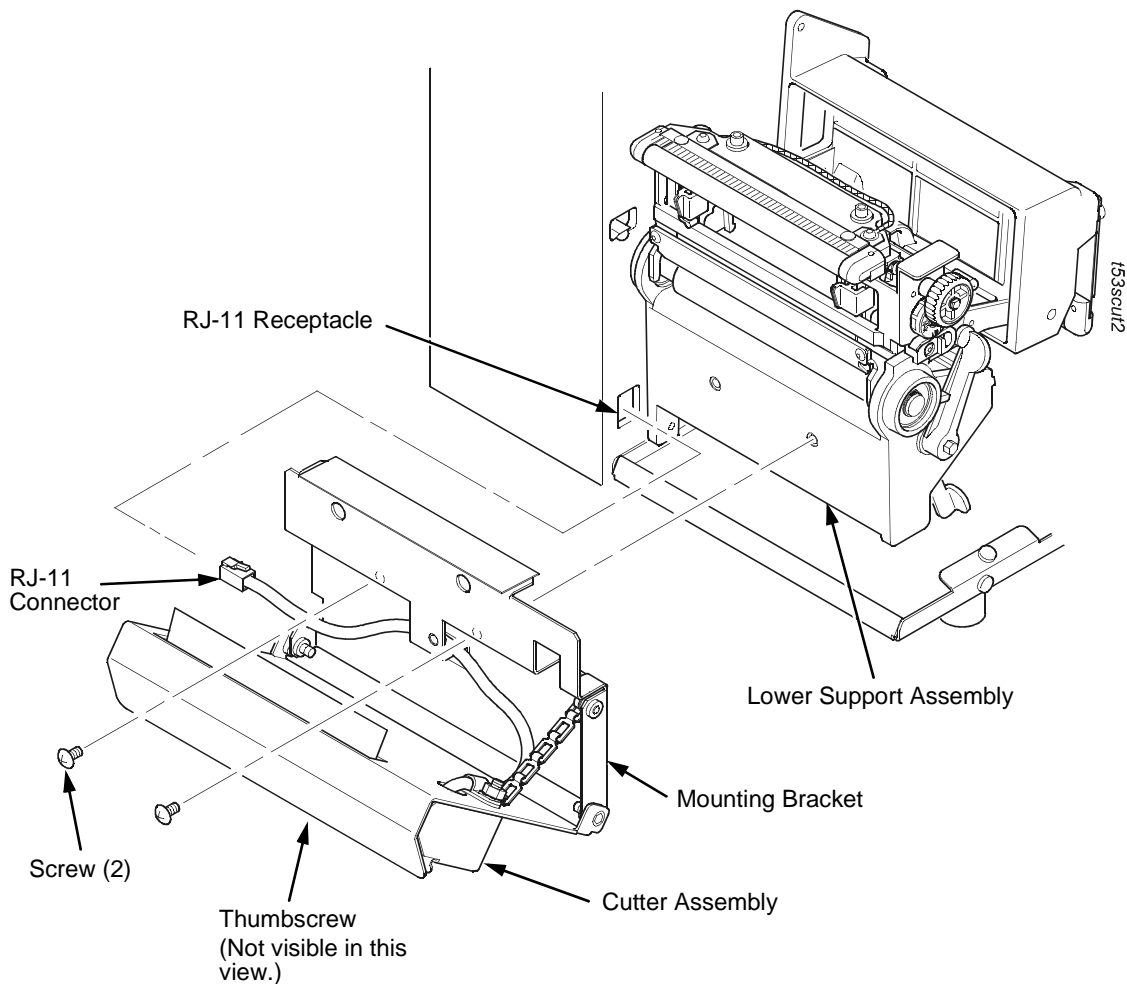





Figure 2. Standard Cutter Assembly

1. Loosen the knurled thumbscrew on the front of the cutter and swing open the cutter assembly from the cutter assembly mounting bracket.
2. Place the cutter assembly in position.
3. Install the two screws using the appropriate metric hex key.
4. Plug the RJ-11 connector into the RJ-11 receptacle.
5. Place the cutter assembly into the up (closed) position and secure it by tightening the knurled thumbscrew.

Restore The Printer To Operation

1. Set the printer power switch to | (ON).
2. Press  to place the printer in Menu Mode.
3. Press the  and  keys at the same time until "ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED" appears on the printer display.

4. Press \equiv until "PRINTER CONTROL" displays.
5. Press \uparrow until "Advanced User" displays.
6. Press + or - until "Enable" displays.
7. Press \downarrow to select the "Enable" option. An asterisk (*) appears next to "Enable."
8. Press \equiv until "MEDIA CONTROL" displays.
9. Press \downarrow until "Media Handling" displays.
10. Press + or - until "Cut" displays.
11. Press \downarrow to select "Cut." An asterisk (*) displays next to "Cut."
12. Press \downarrow until "Cutter Type" displays.
13. Press + or - until "Standard" displays.
14. Press \downarrow to select "Standard." An asterisk (*) displays next to "Standard."
15. Relock the \downarrow key by pressing \downarrow and \downarrow at the same time, then press PAUSE to put the printer back online.
16. If the bar code validator is installed, adjust the validator beam. (Refer to "VALIDATOR" on page 84.)
17. Make sure any media sticking out of the platen goes in the cutter entrance slot.
18. Test the printer cutting operation and print quality by selecting the **Diagnostics** \rightarrow **Printer Tests** menu and printing one of the test patterns. (Refer to "DIAGNOSTICS" on page 200.)
19. To save the configuration parameters, refer to "Saving A Configuration" on page 72.

Installing The Heavy-Duty Cutter

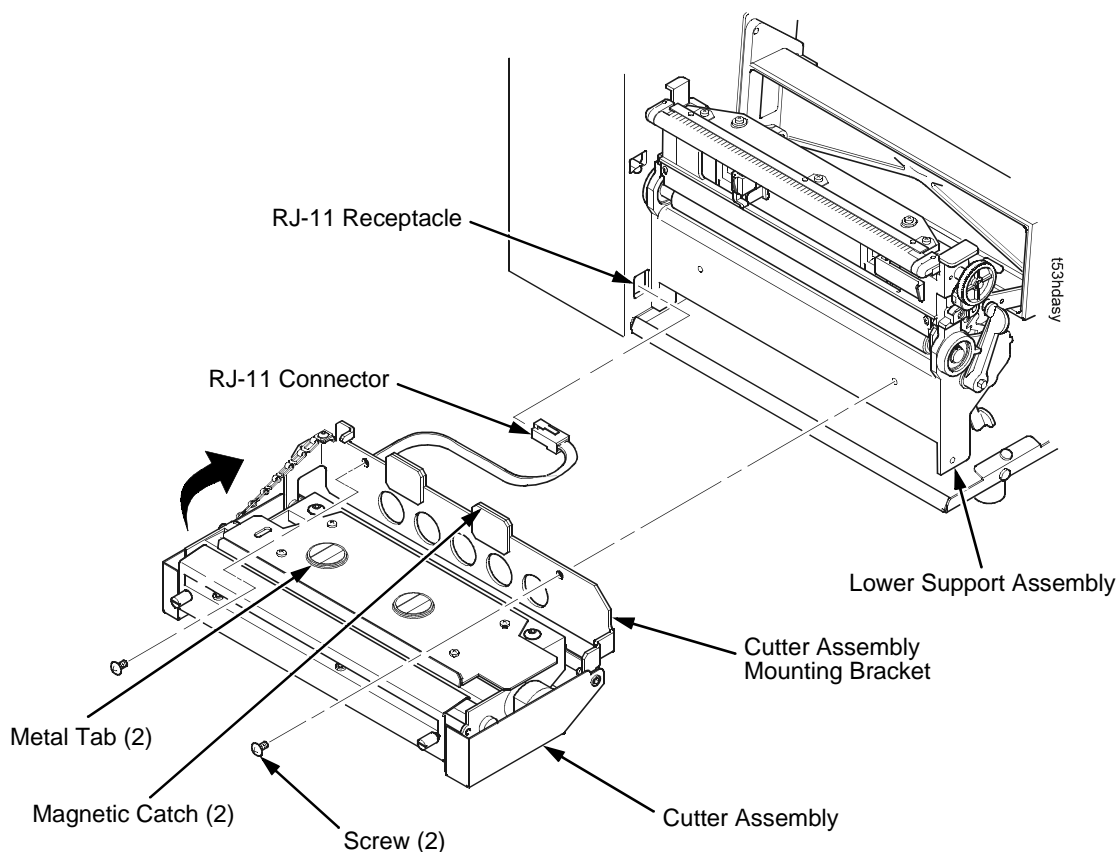





Figure 3. Heavy-Duty Cutter Assembly

1. Plug the RJ-11 connector into the RJ-11 receptacle.
2. Pull the metal tabs from the magnetic catches and swing open the cutter assembly mounting bracket from the cutter assembly.
3. Place the cutter assembly in position.
4. Install the two screws using the appropriate metric hex key.
5. Place the cutter assembly into the up (closed) position.

NOTE: The printer cannot detect the presence of the cutter unless the cutter is in the up (closed) position and the cutter top cover is installed when the printer is powered on.

Restore The Printer To Operation

1. Set the printer power switch to | (ON).
2. Press  to place the printer in Menu Mode.
3. Press the  and  keys at the same time until "ENTER SWITCH UNLOCKED" appears on the printer display.

4. Press \equiv until "PRINTER CONTROL" displays.
5. Press \uparrow until "Advanced User" displays.
6. Press + or - until "Enable" displays.
7. Press \downarrow to select the "Enable" option. An asterisk (*) appears next to "Enable."
8. Press \equiv until "MEDIA CONTROL" displays.
9. Press \downarrow until "Media Handling" displays.
10. Press + or - until the "Cut" option displays.
11. Press \downarrow to select "Cut." An asterisk (*) displays next to "Cut."
12. Press \downarrow until "Cutter Type" displays.
13. Press + or - until "Heavy-Duty" displays.
14. Press \downarrow to select "Heavy-Duty." An asterisk (*) displays next to "Heavy-Duty."
15. Relock the \downarrow key by pressing \downarrow and \downarrow at the same time, then press PAUSE to put the printer back online.
16. If the bar code validator is installed, adjust the validator beam. (Refer to "VALIDATOR" on page 84.)
17. Make sure any media sticking out of the platen goes in the cutter entrance slot.
18. Test the printer cutting operation and print quality by selecting the **Diagnostics** \rightarrow **Printer Tests** menu and printing one of the test patterns. (Refer to "DIAGNOSTICS" on page 200.)
19. To save the configuration parameters, refer to "Saving A Configuration" on page 72.

Removing The Media Cutter

1. Set the printer power to O (OFF).
2. Pull the cutter assembly to the down (open) position.
3. Using the appropriate metric hex key, remove the two screws securing the cutter bracket to the lower support assembly.
4. Unplug the RJ-11 connector from the RJ-11 receptacle.
5. Remove the media cutter from the printer.
6. Install the front door assembly on the printer lower support assembly.

E

Media Cutter Tray Installation

Assembling The Media Cutter Tray

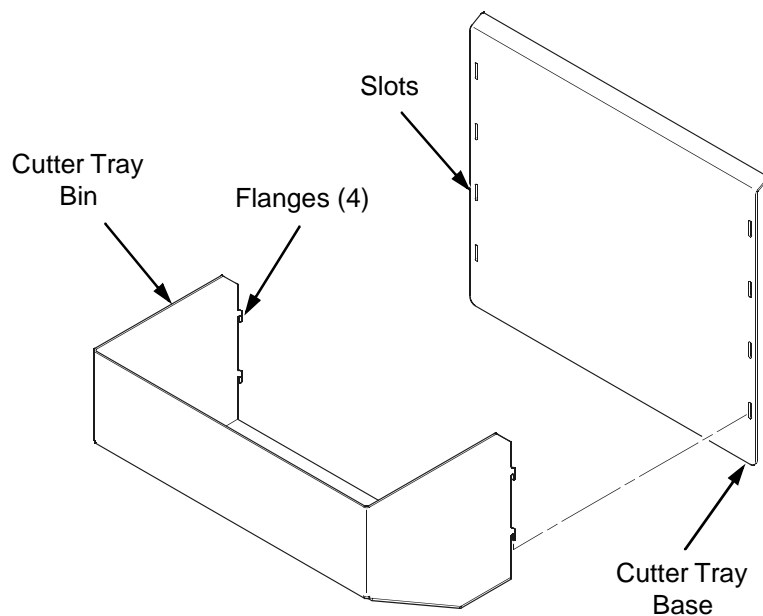


Figure 1. Attaching the Cutter Tray Bin to the Cutter Tray Base

1. Align the flanges of the cutter tray bin with the slots in the cutter tray base.
2. Push the flanges into the slots, then push the cutter tray bin downward to secure it.
3. Attach the cutter tray bin in a position so that the labels will not interfere with cutter operation. (For longer labels, attach the cutter tray bin to a lower position; for shorter labels, attach it to a higher position.)

Installing The Media Cutter Tray

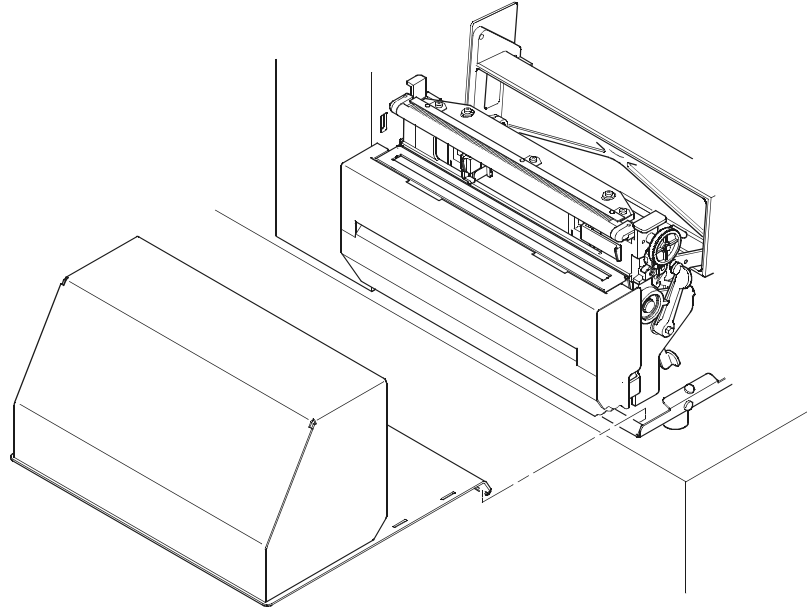


Figure 2. Placing the Media Tray Cutter in Position

1. Position the output area of the printer adjacent to the edge of the supporting table or stand.
2. Open the media cover and slide the lip of the media cutter tray over the lip of the printer base pan.

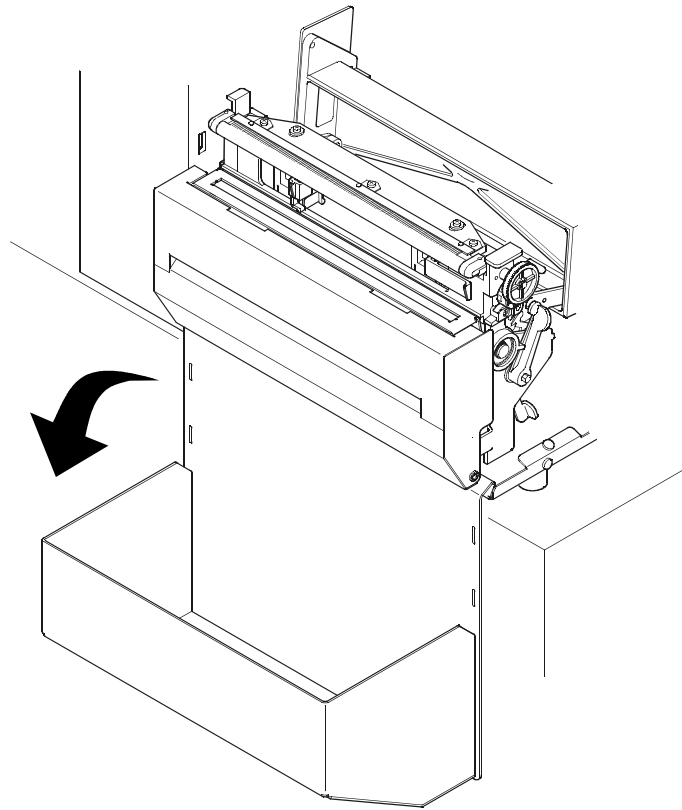


Figure 3. Installing the Media Cutter Tray

3. Rotate the media cutter tray into position with the tray resting against the table.
4. Close the media cover.

F

Glossary

Baud (rate)	Baud Rate is the number of information bits that can be transmitted between the printer and the computer in one second. For example, one baud equals one bit per second in a series of binary signals. Both the printer and the computer must be configured to the same baud rate.
BIT	Binary digIT. A digit in the binary number system, represented by a 0 or a 1. A bit is the smallest unit of storage in a digital computer.
Boot-up	The start-up procedure which causes a computer operating system to be loaded into main memory.
Buffer	An area of storage into which data are read or written temporarily during data transfers.
Coax	Coaxial cable. A type of cable with a single wire surrounded by insulation and a braided shield.
Configuration	Refers to the operating properties that define how the printer responds to signals and commands received from the host computer at the printer interface. These properties are called configuration parameters and are set to match the operating characteristics of the host computer system.
Continuous Media	Media comprised of one continuous length without a gap, notch, hole or black mark to establish a predetermined label or tag length. With this media type, the Host Form Length or user selected Label Length sets the desired length of each label.
Continuous Media Handling Mode	A media handling mode that advances media in the forward direction only.
Controller	An independent functional logic unit in a data processing system that controls data paths between one or more units of peripheral equipment.

Data Bits	Binary information sent to the printer; a character set grouping containing letters, digits, and punctuation marks to be printed.
Default	A value, parameter, attribute, or option that is assigned by a program or system when another has not been specified by the user.
Diagnostic	Pertaining to the detection and isolation of a printer malfunction or mistake.
Direct Thermal Media	Media coated with special chemicals that act as an accelerator, acceptor dye and binder. In Direct Thermal mode the heat from the selected rectangular elements in the thermal printhead makes direct contact with the media (no ribbon is used) and causes a chemical reaction that creates the image on the media.
Direct Thermal Printing	A printing method in which no ribbon is used to transfer data from the printhead to the media to create an image. The thermal printhead selectively heats small rectangular elements which make direct contact with the coated media.
DRAM	Dynamic Random Access Memory. Can be read from or written to at any time. DRAM is volatile: Whatever is in DRAM is lost when power is turned off.
EPROM	Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory. Programs, instructions, and routines permanently stored in the printer that cannot be written to. Files in EPROM are not lost when power is turned off. (Resident fonts are fonts permanently stored in EPROM and available at any time, via software commands.)
Fanfold Media	Media supplied in a fanfold stack instead of a roll format.
Flash Memory	Nonvolatile memory. See Nonvolatile Memory.
Font	A collection of printing characteristics for printing alphanumeric characters, all of which combine to produce a distinctive style of print.

Host Computer	The computer that stores, processes, and sends data to be printed, which communicates directly with the printer. The term “host” is used to indicate the controlling computer, since modern printers are themselves microprocessor-controlled computer systems.
Interface	The hardware component used to link two devices by common physical interconnection, signal, and functional characteristics.
IPS	The speed at which the media is printed based on a rate of Inches-Per-Second.
Label Liner (backing)	The material labels are attached to during their manufacturing process. Attachment is usually accomplished with an adhesive. After printing, labels can be easily removed from the liner and the liner discarded or recycled.
Label Taken Sensor	A sensor located at the front of the printer to detect the presence of a label extended out the front of the printer. The sensor is used only during Peel-Off and Tear-Off Media Handling to sense a label and then detect its removal prior to printing the next label.
Media	Material onto which data is printed by the printer. The types of media supported by the printer are die-cut labels or tag stock, supplied in roll or fanfold format. Media is further described by the type of sensing used to detect the Top of Form position based on the label length indicators used. Transmissive (Gap) media uses a liner gap, notch, or hole between labels, and Reflective (Mark) media uses a horizontal black mark located on the underside of the tag stock or label liner. Continuous media (with no label length indicators) uses no sensing method and the operator determines which label length is desired.
Media Sensor	The sensor used to detect the presence of media in the paper path, as well as, the gap, notch, or hole position of Transmissive media or the horizontal black mark on Reflective media.
Memory	See RAM, Nonvolatile Memory, DRAM, and Flash Memory.

Nonvolatile Memory	Nonvolatile memory stores variables that must be preserved when the printer is turned off, such as configuration parameters and printer usage statistics. Nonvolatile memory is preserved because RAM is housed on the controller board, which contains an independent, battery-operated power supply. When printer power is turned off, the battery supplies the power needed to keep stored data active. Nonvolatile memory also includes storage in disk.
NOVRAM	Acronym of Nonvolatile Random-Access Memory. See Nonvolatile Memory.
Parity (check)	Parity checking is the addition of a non-data bit to data, resulting in the number of "1 bits" being either always even or always odd. Parity is used to detect transmission errors. Parity represents value in the check digit of the received or transmitted data.
PCBA	Printed Circuit Board Assembly. A PCB with components (ICs, resistors, capacitors, etc.) installed.
Port	A data channel used for receiving data from or transmitting data to one or more external devices.
Protocol	The rules and conventions that govern communication between a printer and a host computer. A protocol includes codes for printing text and graphics and codes instructing the printer to perform special operations.
RAM	Random-Access Memory. Also called "main memory" or "working memory". It is the active memory of the printer, into which programs are loaded. RAM is saved to volatile memory because data in RAM is lost when power is turned off or interrupted.
Resolution	A measure expressing the number of component units in a given range used to create an image; in printing, expressed as the number of dots per inch (dpi) horizontally and vertically.
Roll Media	Media supplied in a roll format, usually wound on a 1 inch or 3 inch cardboard core. The T5000 media hanger assembly accepts both core sizes.

Sensed Distance

Gap/Mark Sensor = Gap: The Sensed Distance value is the physical length of one label plus the length of one gap.

Gap/Mark Sensor = Mark: The Sensed Distance value is the physical distance from the leading edge of one black mark to the leading edge of the next.

Gap/Mark Sensor = Disable: Not applicable. If Gap/Mark Sensor is set to Disable, the Sensed Distance value will not be updated.

Slew

Vertical paper movement.

Stop Bits

The signal which indicates the end of a character or element.

Thermal Transfer Media

Media specifically designed to work with a ribbon for image transfer. In Thermal Transfer mode, compatibility between the ribbon and the media is critical in producing a high quality long lasting image.

Thermal Transfer Printing

A printing method in which the printhead presses a specially coated ribbon against the media. The printhead elements react with the ribbon and bond the image to the media.

Twinax

Twinaxial. A type of cable with two wires surrounded by insulation and a braided shield.

Index

Symbols

^Dnn Dot Slew, 156

Numerics

06 HOST REQUEST fault message, 266
08 HOLD PRINT TIMEOUT fault message, 266
1284 parallel interface, 235
15 COMM CHECK fault message, 266
20 CPI Condensed, 156
203 DPI fault message, 267
22 INVALID ADDR fault message, 266
27 CU TIMED OUT fault message, 266
28 CU NOT ENAB fault message, 267
300 DPI fault message, 267
33 HEAD OPEN Timeout fault message, 267
40V POWER FAIL fault message, 267
5225 World Trade, 156

A

Absorb After ^PN, 156
Absorb After ^PY, 157
Accessories, 277
ACK / NAK, 210
Acoustic noise levels, 274
Active Char Set, 157
Active IGP Emul, 117
Advanced User, 120
AI 00 Spaces, 157
Alarm, 119
Alarm, printer, 256
Alt. Char Set, 157
Alt. Set 80-9F (Coax, Twinax), 158
Alt. Set 80-9F (P-Series, Serial Matrix, Epson FX), 157

Append Rotated, 158
ASCII Data Port option, 221
Auto Calibrate, 109
Auto Calibrate, running, 63
Auto FF at ^PN, 158
Auto Label Width, 103
Auto LF (P-Series, P-Series XQ), 158
Auto LF (Serial Matrix, Proprinter XL, Epson FX), 158
Auto Locking, 121
Auto Map Select, 101
Auto Report, 86
Auto Skip at End, 159
Auto switching, 233
Auto Uppercase, 159
Autoeject (PGL), 159
Autoeject (VGL), 159
Autowrap, 159
Average BWD, 86

B

BAD VFU CHANNEL fault message, 257
BAR CODE IMPROPER Data Format fault message, 257
BAR CODE QUIET Zone too small fault message, 257
Barcode Errors, 160
Barcode var., 160
Batch Counter, 123
Batch Rewind mode, 49
Baud Rate, 209
Beam Shift, 90
Bold, 160
Bold Chars., 123
Bottom Margin, 160

Btm Margin Ctl, 160
BUFFER OVERFLOW fault message, 257
BUFFER OVERRUN fault message, 257
Buffer Print, 161
Buffer Reprint, 161
Buffer Size in K (Parallel Port), 205
Buffer Size in K (Serial), 211
Busy on Strobe, 207
Busy signal, Centronics parallel interface, 235
Byte mode, 236

C

C/T PORT
 Menu, 216
 Submenus, 216
Cable length
 Centronics parallel interface, 234
 IEEE 1284 parallel, 237
 RS-232 interface, 239
 RS-422 interface, 239
 serial, 239
Cal in Peel Mode option, 113
CALIBRATE CTRL
 Menu, 108
 Submenus, 109
CALIBRATION Warning fault message, 257
Cancel IGP/DCU, 161
Cancel Key, 120
CANNOT CALIBRATE Disable Peel-Off fault message, 257
Centronics
 acknowledge signal, 235
 busy signal, 235
 data lines 1 through 8 signals, 235
 data strobe signal, 235
 interface signals, 235
 online signal, 235
 Paper Empty signal, 235
 Paper Instruction (PI) signal, 235
 parallel interface, 234
 pin assignments, 234
Change Case, 161
Changing printer settings, 71

Character Group (Epson FX), 162
Character Group (PGL), 164
Character Group (Proprinter XL), 165
Character Group (P-Series, Serial Matrix), 163
Character Group (VGL), 166
Character Set, 167
Cleaning, 67
Clear Data, 86
Clear Error Log, 202
Clear To Send (CTS) signal, RS-232 serial interface, 239
CLEARING PROGRAM FROM FLASH fault message, 257
Clip Page, 106
Cmd Resolution, 167
COAX SETUP Menu, 128
Coax Type, 167
Coax/twinax host interface, 276
Code Page Subset, 167
Communication
 Centronics parallel, 234
 Dataproducts Long Lines, 234
 IEEE 1284 parallel (bidirectional), 235
Compatibility, 120
Compatibility Mode
 IEEE 1284 interface, 235
Compressed Print, 167
CONFIG. CONTROL
 Menu, 91
 Submenus, 92
Configuration
 menu overview, 78
Configuration menu
 moving within, 70
 moving within (ill.), 70
Configuration printout, 76
Configurations
 modifying saved, 74
 printing, 75
 printout (sample), 76
 saving, 72
 specifying power-up, 73
Configuring the printer, 69

CONTRAST TOO LOW Check media fault message, 258
Control Code 06, 167
Control Code 08, 167
Control panel, 29
Control panel keys, 31
Controlling print quality, 244
Controls, 29
Copy Count, 168
CR at MPP+1, 168
CR Edit, 168
CR, EM, & NL, 168
Create and send download file - offline, 232
Create and send download file - online (PGL only), 232
CSC, 17
CTHI, 276
CTHI Emulation, 116
Customer Solutions Center, 17
Customer support, 17
CUTTER FAULT Check Cutter fault message, 258
Cutter Type option, 107

D

Data Bit 8, 168, 205
Data Carrier Detect (DCD) signal, RS-232 serial interface, 239
Data exchange, 242
Data lines 1 through 8 signal, Centronics parallel interface, 235
Data Polarity, 207
Data Protocol, 210
Data Set Ready (DSR) signal, RS-232 serial interface, 239
Data strobe signal, Centronics parallel interface, 235
Data Term Ready, 212
Decodeability, 88
Default Code Pag, 169
Default Font, 169
Defects, 88
Define CR code, 169

Define LF code (PGL, Serial Matrix, Proprinter XL, Epson FX), 169
Define LF code (P-Series, P-Series XQ), 170
Del Char frm Flsh, 118
Del Char frm RAM, 118
Del Set frm Flsh, 118
Del Set from RAM, 119
Delete Config, 92
Delete Files, 120
Device Address, 216
DHCP option, 222
DIAGNOSTICS
 Menu, 200
 Submenus, 201
Diagnostics, 241
DIAGNOSTICS PASSED fault message, 258
Direct thermal printing, 22
Display indicators, 30
Display Language, 118
Display Ribbon, 106
Do FF at TOF, 170
DO NOT POWER OFF fault message, 258
Downloading Optional Font Files to Flash Memory, 229
Downloading software, 223, 227
Downloading true type fonts, 232
DRAM Installed, 202
DTR, 211
Dynamic print control, 22

E

Early Print Cmpl (Coax), 170
Early Print Comp (IPDS), 170
EC SOFTWARE FAIL fault message, 258
Elong./Alt. Font, 171
Emulation, 171
Emulation Submenus, 156
Emulations Overview, 124
E-NET INIT fault message, 258
E-NET READY fault message, 258
E-NET RESET fault message, 258
Environmental information, 274
EPSON FX SETUP Menu, 154

Epson Set, 171
ERROR DC PROGRAM NOT VALID fault
message, 258
ERROR DRAM AT ADDRESS XXXXXXXX fault
message, 258
ERROR FLASH DID NOT PROGRAM fault
message, 258
ERROR IPDS needs 300 DPI Head fault
message, 259
Error Markers, 171
Error Msgs, 171
ERROR NO DRAM DETECTED fault
message, 259
ERROR OCCURRED FLUSHING QUEUES fault
message, 260
ERROR PROGRAM NEEDS MORE DRAM fault
message, 259
ERROR PROGRAM NEEDS MORE FLASH fault
message, 259
ERROR PROGRAM NOT COMPATIBLE fault
message, 259
ERROR PROGRAM NOT VALID fault
message, 259
Error Recover, 106
Error Report, 172
ERROR SECURITY PAL NOT DETECTED fault
message, 259
ERROR SHORT AT ADDRESS XXXX fault
message, 259
ERROR WRITING TO FLASH fault message, 259
ERROR WRONG CHECKSUM fault message, 259
ESC d command, 172
ETHERNET PARAMS
 Menu, 218
 Submenus, 220
Ethernet Speed option, 222
ETX / ACK, 210
EVFU Select, 172
Exchange, data, 242
Expanded Font (PGL), 172
Expanded Font (VGL), 173
Expanded Fonts option (IPDS), 173
Ext Execute Copy, 173

Extended Subset, 173
Extra Bold Char., 123

F

F/W Revision, 89
Fanfold media, 41
Fault, 235
Fault message
 06 HOST REQUEST, 266
 08 HOLD PRINT TIMEOUT, 266
 15 COMM CHECK, 266
 203 DPI, 267
 22 INVALID ADDR, 266
 27 CU TIMED OUT, 266
 28 CU NOT ENAB, 267
 300 DPI, 267
 33 HEAD OPEN Timeout, 267
 40V POWER FAIL, 267
 BAD VFU CHANNEL, 257
 BAR CODE IMPROPER Data Format, 257
 BAR CODE QUIET Zone too small, 257
 BUFFER OVERFLOW, 257
 BUFFER OVERRUN, 257
 CALIBRATION Warning, 257
 CANNOT CALIBRATE Disable Peel-Off, 257
 CLEARING PROGRAM FROM FLASH, 257
 CONTRAST TOO LOW Check media, 258
 CUTTER FAULT Check Cutter, 258
 DIAGNOSTICS PASSED, 258
 DO NOT POWER OFF, 258
 EC SOFTWARE FAIL, 258
 E-NET INIT, 258
 E-NET READY, 258
 E-NET RESET, 258
 ERROR DC PROGRAM NOT VALID, 258
 ERROR DRAM AT ADDRESS
 XXXXXXXX, 258
 ERROR FLASH DID NOT PROGRAM, 258
 ERROR IPDS needs 300 DPI Head, 259
 ERROR NO DRAM DETECTED, 259
 ERROR OCCURRED FLUSHING
 QUEUES, 260

ERROR PROGRAM NEEDS MORE
 DRAM, 259
 ERROR PROGRAM NEEDS MORE
 FLASH, 259
 ERROR PROGRAM NOT COMPATIBLE, 259
 ERROR PROGRAM NOT VALID, 259
 ERROR SECURITY PAL NOT
 DETECTED, 259
 ERROR SHORT AT ADDRESS XXXX, 259
 ERROR WRITING TO FLASH, 259
 ERROR WRONG CHECKSUM, 259
 FILE EXISTS Enable Overwrite, 260
 FILE SYS INVALID Optimize&Reboot, 260
 FILE SYS WRITE Check Flash, 260
 FILE SYSTEM FULL Add Flash, 260
 FILE SYSTEM FULL Delete Files, 260
 FILE SYSTEM FULL Optimize & Reboot, 260
 FRAMING ERROR, 260
 GAP NOT DETECTED See Manual, 260
 GRF CHK ERROR PRESS PAUSE, 261
 Half Speed Mode, 261
 HEAD POWER FAIL, 261
 IGP/PGL ERROR, 261
 INSUFFICIENT RAM Reboot/Add RAM, 261
 LOADING PROGRAM FROM PORT XX%, 261
 LOADING PROGRAM INTO FLASH, 261
 NON VOLATILE MEMORY FAILED, 262
 OPTION NOT INSTALLED, 262
 PAPER OUT Load Paper, 262
 PAPER OUT TIMEOUT, 263
 PARITY ERROR, 263
 POOR SCANNING Check Head&Heat, 263
 POOR SCANNING Check media, 263
 POOR SCANNING Inspect head, 263
 POWER SAVER MODE, 263
 PRINT HEAD COLD See Manual, 263
 PRINT HEAD HOT, 263
 PRINT HEAD UP Close Print Head, 263
 PRINTER HOT, 264
 PWR SUPPLY HOT, 264
 RBN TAKEUP FULL Remove Used Rbn, 264
 Remove Label, 264
 RESETTING PLEASE WAIT, 264
 RESTORING BOOT CODE, 264
 RIBBON BROKEN Reload Ribbon, 264
 RIBBON DETECTED In Direct Mode, 265
 RIBBON FAULT Timeout, 265
 Ribbon Low, 265
 RIBBON OUT Load Ribbon, 265
 SECURITY CODE VIOLATION, 265
 SIGNAL Clipping, 265
 SOFTWARE ERROR Recycle Power, 265
 Speed Exceeds Validator Limit, 266
 TESTING HARDWARE PLEASE WAIT, 266
 Unscannable Code Check media, 266
 Fault Message Troubleshooting Table, 257
 Fault messages, 256
 Fault Message Troubleshooting Table, 257
 operator-correctable, 256
 requiring field service attention, 256
 Fault mode, 33
 FF After Job, 174
 FF valid at TOF, 174
 FF Validity, 174
 FILE EXISTS Enable Overwrite fault message, 260
 FILE SYS INVALID Optimize&Reboot fault
 message, 260
 FILE SYS WRITE Check Flash fault message, 260
 FILE SYSTEM FULL Add Flash fault message, 260
 FILE SYSTEM FULL Delete Files fault
 message, 260
 FILE SYSTEM FULL Optimize & Reboot fault
 message, 260
 Font download utility, 232
 Fonts, 20
 Downloading, 229
 downloading true type fonts, 232
 Form Length (lines), 175
 Form Spacing, 89
 Form Width (char.), 175
 Form Width (in.), 175
 Form Width (mm.), 175
 Format Control, 175
 Forms Length (in.), 174
 Forms Length (mm), 175
 FRAMING ERROR fault message, 260

Framing Errors, 215

G

Gap Length option, 112
GAP NOT DETECTED See Manual fault message, 260
Gap Windowing option, 112
Gap/Mark Sensor, 109
Gap/Mark Thresh, 110
Gateway Address option, 220
General cleaning, 67
Glob Mem Adjust, 122
Good Barcodes, 86
Good Forms, 86
Gothic Typeface, 176
Graphic Chek Cod, 176
Graphic Chek Err, 176
GRF CHK ERROR PRESS PAUSE fault message, 261

H

Half Speed Mode fault message, 261
Handshaking, 242
 hardware, 242
 software, 242
Hardware options, 275
Head On Time, 202
HEAD POWER FAIL fault message, 261
Head Print Dist, 202
Head Type, 203
Head Voltage, 203
Hex Dump Mode, 202
Hexdump mode, 176
Hor Image Shift, 99
Horizontal DPI, 177
Host Command, 178
Host Form Length (IPDS), 178
Host Form Length (PGL), 178
Host Forms Length (VGL), 178
Host Interface, 117
Host interface characteristics, 273
Host Override, 179
Host PI, 179

I

I-2/5 Selection, 179
I2of5 Checksum, 90
Idle Response, 213
IEEE 1284
 interface, 235
 operating modes, 235
Ignore Ch#1, 179
Ignore Ch#2, 180
Ignore Chars, 180
Ignore Dots, 180
Ignore Mode, 180
Ignore Spaces, 180
Ignore Text, 181
IGP/PGL ERROR fault message, 261
IGP/PGL SETUP Menu, 140
IGP/VGL SETUP Menu, 142
IGP100 Compatibl., 181
Image Buf Size, 216
Improving processing time, 242
Indicators, 29
Indicators and switches, 272
Installing the media guide, 50
INSUFFICIENT RAM Reboot/Add RAM fault message, 261
Interface options, 276
Interfaces, 233
 Centronics parallel, 234
 Dataproducts Long Lines, 234
 IEEE 1284, 235
Interfacing, 243
Internal label rewinder, 20
Internal rewinder, 49, 275
Intervention Req, 181
IPDS Data Port option, 221
IPDS for use with PrintNet 10/100 Base-T (UTP Ethernet) and Twinax Host Interface, 276
IPDS for use with PrintNet 10/100 Base-T (UTP Ethernet) Interface, 276
IPDS for use with Twinax Host Interface, 276
IPDS SETUP Menu, 136
Italic Print, 181

J

Job Control option, 222
Job In Process indicator, 29

K

Keep Alive Timer option, 221

L

Label Length, 97
Label Peel-Off, 55
Label Width, 98
Labels, printing test, 241
LAC Approx., 181
LAC Option, 181
Last BWD, 87
Last Char = FF, 182
Latch Data On, 207
LCD, 29
LCD Fault Message Troubleshooting Table, 257
Ld Char at PwrUp, 118
Ld Char from Fls, 118
Ld Set at PwrUp, 119
Ld Set from Flsh, 118
Lead-in Chars, 182
Left Margin, 182
Limited software product warranty, 4
Liquid Crystal Display, 29
Load Config., 92
Loading media, 34
 fanfold, 41
 roll, 35
LOADING PROGRAM, 261
LOADING PROGRAM FROM PORT XX% fault message, 261
Loading ribbon, 34, 45
Logical Buf Size, 182
LP+ Emulation, 116
LPI, 183

M

MAC Address, 223
MAC Address option, 220
Main Menu, 79

Manual Calibrate, 111
Manual conventions, 18
Max Cache Memory, 122
Max Cached Char, 122
Max PI 16, 183
Max. Print Width, 183
Media, 23, 278
 fanfold, 41
 loading, 34
 Printronix, 278
 roll, 35
MEDIA CONTROL
 Menu, 94
 Submenus, 96
Media cutter, 20, 275, 283
 installing, 283
Media cutter tray, 20, 275, 289
 installing, 289
Media dimensions, 271
Media guide
 installing, 50
 removing, 48
Media Handling, 96
Media handling modes, 33
 continuous, 33
 cut, 34
 peel-off, 34
 tear-off, 33
 tear-off strip, 33
Media Profile, 110
Media profile, 64
Media sensor, 61
 calibrating, 63
 disable, 62
 gap, 62
 mark, 62
 positioning, 61
 sensing different media types, 62
Media specifications matrix, 271
Media, general information, 270
Memory expansion, 275
Memory expansion (for non-IPDS printers only), 20
Memory specifications, 272

Menu mode, 33
Menu options, selecting, 71
Menu overview, 78
Midline PY (includes ^PN), 183
Min. Code Height, 89
Modifying saved configurations, 74

N

Name Config (1-8), 93
Nest Serv Type option, 221
NetBIOS Protocol option, 221
Network Interface Card, 20
Network Interface Card (NIC), 276
Nibble mode, 236
NL at MPP+1, 183
NON VOLATILE MEMORY FAILED fault message, 262
Novell Frame option, 221
Novell Protocol option, 221
Null Handling, 183
Null Suppression (Coax), 184
Null Suppression (IPDS), 184
Num Auto Labels, 104
Num Retry option, 90
Number of Codes, 87

O

Offline mode, 33
Offpage Errors, 184
One Char Enquiry, 214
Online Auto-Cal option, 112
Online barcode validator, 21
Online data validator, 275
Online mode, 33
Online signal, Centronics parallel interface, 235
Online Status indicator, 29
On-site maintenance service, 9
Operating modes, 33
Optimize&Reboot, 120
Optimized Ratio, 184
OPTION NOT INSTALLED fault message, 262
Optional features, 20
Optional host interfaces, 233

Options
 fonts, 20
 hardware, 275
 internal label rewinder, 20
 internal rewinder, 275
 IPDS, 21
 media cutter, 20, 275
 media cutter tray, 20, 275
 memory expansion, 275
 memory expansion (for non-IPDS printers only), 20
 Network Interface Card, 20
 NIC, 20
 online barcode validator, 21, 275
 printer, 275
 TN5250, 21
 twinax/coax host interface, 20
Orientation, 99
Overstrike, 184
Overstrike Forms, 86
Overstrike Style, 89
Overwrite Files, 119

P

PA1, 185
PA2, 185
Page Rotation, 185
Paper Empty (PE) signal, Centronics parallel interface, 235
Paper Feed Shift, 97
Paper Instruction (PI) signal, Centronics interface, 235
PAPER OUT Load Paper fault message, 262
Paper Out Thresh, 110
PAPER OUT TIMEOUT fault message, 263
Parallel interfaces, Centronics, 234
PARALLEL PORT
 Menu, 204
 Submenus, 205
Parity, 209
PARITY ERROR fault message, 263
Percent Decode, 88
PGL, 125

PGL Normal, 185
Physical dimensions, 274
PI Ignored, 205
PI Slew Range, 185
Pin assignments, Centronics parallel interface, 234
Poll Character, 213
Poll Response, 213
POOR SCANNING Check Head&Heat fault message, 263
POOR SCANNING Inspect head fault message, 263
POR, 216
Port Type (C/T Port), 216
Port Type (Parallel Port), 205
Port Type (Serial), 209
Position Aft FF, 185
Positioning the media sensor, 61
Power consumption, 273
Power on IGP/PGL, 186
Power On Reset, 216
POWER SAVER MODE fault message, 263
Power Saver Time, 118
Power source and grounding, 273
Power switch, 29
Powering on the printer, 33
Power-on, 33
Power-up ^F, 186
Power-up ^PY, 186
Power-up ^X, 186
Power-Up Config., 92
Power-up State, 119
Pre-Peel Adjust, 105
Pre-Peel Mode, 105
Primary Subset, 186
Prime Signal (Parallel Port), 206
Print Char. Set, 187
Print Config., 92
Print Direction, 104
Print Error Log, 202
Print File List, 120
PRINT HEAD COLD See Manual fault message, 263
PRINT HEAD HOT fault message, 263
PRINT HEAD UP Close Print Head fault message, 263
Print Intensity, 96
Print Mode, 96
Print quality, 244
Print Speed, 96
Printer
 alarms, 256
 dynamic print control, 22
 installation, 26
 interfaces, 233
 problems, 249
 problems and solutions, 249
 self-test, 241
 set-up, 24
 the printing process, 22
PRINTER CONTROL
 Menu, 114
 Submenus, 116
PRINTER HOT fault message, 264
Printer installation, 26
Printer model specifications, 19
Printer options, 275
Printer PI, 187
Printer Select, 187
Printer settings, changing, 71
Printer Status, 214
Printer Tests, 201
Printer warranty, 9
Printhead
 cleaning, 67
 pressure adjustment, 59
 pressure block adjustments, 60
Printhead pressure adjustment, 59
Printhead pressure block adjustments, 60
Printing a configuration, 75
Printing adjustments, 59
Printing specifications, 269
Printing test labels, 241
Printronix media, 278
Printronix windows driver, 232
Processing time, improving, 242
Prop Line Length, 187

Prop. Spacing, 187
PROPRINTER SETUP Menu, 152
Protect Configs., 92
P-SER XQ SETUP Menu, 148
P-Series Dbl High, 188
P-SERIES SETUP Menu, 145
Ptr Media Dist, 202
Ptr On Time, 202
Ptx Setup Parse, 121
Ptx Setup SFCC, 119
Pwr Save Control option, 118
PWR SUPPLY HOT fault message, 264
Pwr Up Auto-Cal, 111

Q

Quiet Zones, 88

R

RAM Disk Size, 121
Rbn Takeup Full, 107
RBN TAKEUP FULL Remove Used Rbn fault message, 264
Received Data (RD) signal
 RS-232 serial interface, 239
 RS-422 serial interface, 240
Remove Label fault message, 264
Removing media from the rewinder, 54
Removing the media guide, 48
Repeat Form Opt, 188
Report Status (C/T Port), 217
Report Status (Parallel Port), 206
Report Status (Serial), 212
Request to Send, 213
Request To Send (RTS) signal, RS-232 serial interface, 239
Reset Cfg Names, 93
Reset Cmd CFG Ld, 188
Reset Head Data, 203
RESETTING PLEASE WAIT fault message, 264
Resistors, configuration, 238
Resp. Polarity, 207
RESTORING BOOT CODE fault message, 264
Rewinder, 275
 removing printed media from, 54

Ribbon, 23
 loading, 34, 45
 Printronix, 277
 Ribbon 8300, 277
 Ribbon 8500, 277
 Ribbon 8550, 277
 Ribbon 8600, 277
 Ribbon 8630, 277
 Ribbon 8700, 278
 Ribbon 8725, 278
 ribbon specifications, 272
RIBBON BROKEN Reload Ribbon fault message, 264
RIBBON DETECTED In Direct Mode fault message, 265
RIBBON FAULT Timeout fault message, 265
Ribbon Low, 107
Ribbon Low fault message, 265
RIBBON OUT Load Ribbon fault message, 265
Ribbon specifications, 272
Ribbon Width, 106
Right Margin, 188
Roll media, 35
Rot. Char Size, 189
RS-232 serial interface
 Clear To Send (CTS), 239
 Data Carrier Detect (DCD), 239
 Data Set Ready (DSR), 239
 Received Data (RD), 239
 Request To Send (RTS), 239
 Transmitted Data (TD), 239
RS-422 serial interface
 received data (RD), 240
 transmitted data (TD), 240
Running auto calibrate, 63
Running media profile, 64

S

Save Char to Fls, 118
Save Config., 92
Save Set to Flsh, 119
Saving new configurations, 72
Scalable Size, 189

Scanner Settings, 89
 SCS Buffer Cntrl, 189
 SECURITY CODE VIOLATION fault message, 265
 Select Char, 189
 Select CPI, 189
 Select LPI, 189
 Select SFCC (PGL), 190
 Select SFCC (P-Series), 190
 Select SO Char, 190
 Selecting a menu option, 71
 Self-test, printer, 241
 Sensed Distance, 110
 SER MATRIX SETUP Menu, 150
 SERIAL PORT
 Menu, 208
 Submenus, 209
 Series1 1 Char, 210
 Series1 2 Char, 211
 Set Label Length, 107
 Set Lock Key, 121
 Set Text Orientn, 191
 Setting printer configuration parameters, 69
 Setting up the printer, 24
 SFCC, 191
 SFCC Char (SPC Coax, SPC Twinax), 191
 SFCC d command, 191
 SIGNAL Clipping fault message, 265
 Signals, Centronics parallel interface, 235
 Simple Protocol Converter, 116, 125
 Skip Cmd Prefix, 191
 Skip Labels, 89
 Slash 0, 192
 Slashed Zero, 192
 Slew Relative, 192
 Slew Speed, 104
 Software Build, 202
 SOFTWARE ERROR Recycle Power fault message, 265
 Software handshaking, 242
 Software, downloading, 223, 227
 Solving printer problems, 249
 SPC, 125
 SPC Char Set, 192
 SPC COAX SETUP Menu, 134
 SPC Null Supp, 192
 SPC TWINAX SETUP Menu, 135
 SPC Type (SPC Coax Setup), 193
 SPC Type (SPC Twinax Setup), 193
 Specifications, 269
 acoustic noise levels, 274
 environmental information, 274
 host interface, 273
 indicators and switches, 272
 media, 270
 media dimensions, 271
 memory, 272
 physical dimensions, 274
 power, 273
 power consumption, 273
 printer model, 19
 printing, 269
 ribbon, 272
 Specifying a power-up configuration, 73
 Speed Exceeds Validator Limit fault message, 266
 Standard C/T Interface, 124
 Standard Chars., 123
 Standard features, 19
 Standard host interfaces, 233
 Standard Sets, 193
 Status and Display Indicators matrix, 30
 Status indicators, 30
 Stop Bits, 209
 Subnet Mask option, 220
 Supplies information, 9
 Symbol Contrast, 88

T

Tear-Strip Time, 105
 Technical support, 17
 Telemetry Data, 87
 Telemetry Path, 87
 Terminating resistor configuration, 238
 Test Count, 201
 Test labels, printing, 241
 TESTING HARDWARE PLEASE WAIT fault message, 266

Text Length, 193
Text Position, 194
Thermal consumables, 23
Thermal Printer Series Product Line, 19
Thermal printer technology, 22
Thermal transfer printing, 22
Thermal transfer ribbons, 277
Time processing, improving, 242
Timeout (C/T Port), 217
Timeout (Parallel Port), 206
Timeout (Serial), 212
TN5250, 21
TN5250 SETUP menu, 138
Top Margin, 194
Training classes for T5000, 17
Translate Table, 194
Translation Tbl (Coax), 194
Translation Tbl (SPC Coax), 195
Translation Tbl (SPC Twinax), 195
Translation Tbl option (Twinax, TN5250), 195
Transmitted Data (TD) signal
 RS-232 serial interface, 239
 RS-422 serial interface, 240
Trickle Time (Parallel Port), 206
Trickle Time (Serial), 212
Troubleshooting, 241
 control panel, 249
 Fault Message Troubleshooting Table, 257
 fault messages, 256
 LCD Messages, 257
 power failures, 250
 print quality, 250
 printer operation, 254
 printer problems and solutions, 249
 ribbon, 255
True Vert 1/10, 195
Truncate Alpha, 195
TWINAX SETUP Menu, 131

Twinax Type, 195
Twinax/coax host interface, 20
Typeface, 196

U

Uniform Fonts, 196
Units, 107
Unpacking the printer, 24
Unscannable Code Check media fault message, 266
UPC Descenders (PGL), 196
UPC Descenders (VGL), 196
Upr. Case Select, 197
User-Def Ratio, 197
Using downloaded true type fonts, 232
Using the internal rewinder, 49

V

VALIDATOR
 Menu, 84
 Submenus, 86
Validator Action, 88
Validator Funct., 87
Validator Report, 86
Var Form Adjust, 197
Var Form Type option, 197
Ver Image Shift, 99
Vertical DPI, 197
VGL, 126
View File List, 119
VPA Check, 198

W

Warranty information, 9
Width Limit, 198
Word Length, 209

X

XON / XOFF, 210

PRINTRONIX, Inc.

14600 MYFORD ROAD
P.O. Box 19559
IRVINE, CA 92623-9559
PHONE: 714-368-2300
FAX: 714-368-2600

PRINTRONIX

NEDERLAND BV
P.O. BOX 163, NIEUWEWEG 283
NL-6600 AD WIJCHEN
THE NETHERLANDS
PHONE: 31-24-6489489
FAX: 31-24-6489499

PRINTRONIX Schweiz GmbH

42 CHANGI SOUTH STREET 1
CHANGI SOUTH INDUSTRIAL ESTATE
SINGAPORE 486763
PHONE: 65-542-0110
FAX: 65-543-0220

Visit our website at:

<http://www.printronix.com>

750926-001G

